

# 2007 Acura MDX Online Reference Owner's Manual

Use these links (and links throughout this manual) to navigate through this reference.  
For a printed owner's manual, click on authorized manuals or go to [www.helminc.com](http://www.helminc.com).

## Contents

---

### Owner's Identification Form

<b>Introduction</b> .....	<b>i</b>
<b>A Few Words About Safety</b> .....	<b>iii</b>
<b>Your Vehicle at a Glance</b> .....	<b>3</b>
<b>Driver and Passenger Safety</b> .....	<b>5</b>
Proper use and care of your vehicle's seat belts, and Supplemental Restraint System.	
<b>Instruments and Controls</b> .....	<b>61</b>
Instrument panel indicator and gauge, and how to use dashboard and steering column controls.	
<b>Comfort and Convenience Features</b> .....	<b>167</b>
How to operate the climate control system, the audio system, and other convenience features.	
<b>Before Driving</b> .....	<b>315</b>
What gasoline to use, how to break-in your new vehicle, and how to load luggage and other cargo.	
<b>Driving</b> .....	<b>329</b>
The proper way to start the engine, shift the transmission, and park, plus towing a trailer.	
<b>Maintenance</b> .....	<b>373</b>
The Maintenance Schedule shows you when you need to take your vehicle to the dealer.	
<b>Taking Care of the Unexpected</b> .....	<b>417</b>
This section covers several problems motorists sometimes experience, and how to handle them.	
<b>Technical Information</b> .....	<b>443</b>
ID numbers, dimensions, capacities, and technical information.	
<b>Warranty and Customer Relations (U.S. and Canada)</b> .....	<b>459</b>
A summary of the warranties covering your new Acura, and how to contact us.	
<b>Authorized Manuals (U.S. only)</b> .....	<b>463</b>
How to order manuals and other technical literature.	
<b>Index</b> .....	<b>I</b>
<b>Service Information Summary</b>	
A summary of information you need when you pull up to the fuel pump.	

## Owner's Identification

---

OWNER \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

ADDRESS \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

STREET

\_\_\_\_\_ CITY

\_\_\_\_\_ STATE/PROVINCE

\_\_\_\_\_ ZIP CODE/  
POSTAL CODE

V. I. N. \_\_\_\_\_

DELIVERY DATE \_\_\_\_\_

(Date sold to original retail purchaser)

DEALER NAME \_\_\_\_\_ DEALER NO. \_\_\_\_\_

ADDRESS \_\_\_\_\_  
\_\_\_\_\_

STREET

\_\_\_\_\_ CITY

\_\_\_\_\_ STATE/PROVINCE

\_\_\_\_\_ ZIP CODE/  
POSTAL CODE

OWNER'S SIGNATURE \_\_\_\_\_

DEALER'S SIGNATURE \_\_\_\_\_

This owner's manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle and should remain with the vehicle when it is sold.

This Owner's Manual covers all models of the MDX. You may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular model.

The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation whatsoever.

**POUR CLIENTS CANADIEN  
AVIS IMPORTANT: Si vous avez  
besoin d'un Manuel du Conducteur  
en français, veuillez demander à  
votre concessionnaire de  
commander le numéro de pièce  
33STXC00**

Congratulations! Your selection of a 2007 Acura MDX was a wise investment. It will give you years of driving pleasure.

One of the best ways to enhance the enjoyment of your new vehicle is to read this manual. In it, you will learn how to operate its driving controls and convenience items. Afterwards, keep this owner's manual in your vehicle so you can refer to it at any time.

Several warranties protect your new vehicle. Read the warranty booklet thoroughly so you understand the coverages and are aware of your rights and responsibilities.

Maintaining your vehicle according to the maintenance minder shown in the instrument panel helps to keep your driving trouble-free while it preserves your investment. When your vehicle needs maintenance, keep in mind that your dealer's staff is specially trained in servicing the many systems unique to your vehicle. Your dealer is dedicated to your satisfaction and will be pleased to answer any questions and concerns.

As you read this manual, you will find information that is preceded by a **NOTICE** symbol. This information is intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property, or the environment.

# Introduction

---

## California Proposition 65 Warning

**WARNING:** This product contains or emits chemicals known to the state of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.

## Event Data Recorders

This vehicle is equipped with one or more devices commonly referred to as event data recorders. These devices record front seat belt use, front passenger seat occupancy, airbag deployment data, and the failure of any airbag system component. This data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

## Service Diagnostic Recorders

This vehicle is equipped with service-related devices that record information about powertrain performance. The data can be used to verify emissions law requirements and/or help technicians diagnose and solve service problems. It may also be combined with data from other sources for research purposes, but it remains confidential and is never linked to the vehicle owner.

## California Perchlorate Contamination Prevention Act

The airbags, seat belt tensioners, and CR type batteries in this vehicle contain perchlorate materials - special handling may apply. See [www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate](http://www.dtsc.ca.gov/hazardouswaste/perchlorate).

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. And operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.

To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgement.

You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- **Safety Labels** – on the vehicle.
- **Safety Messages** – preceded by a safety alert symbol  and one of three signal words: **DANGER**, **WARNING**, or **CAUTION**. These signal words mean:

 **DANGER**

You **WILL** be **KILLED** or **SERIOUSLY HURT** if you don't follow instructions.

 **WARNING**

You **CAN** be **KILLED** or **SERIOUSLY HURT** if you don't follow instructions.

 **CAUTION**

You **CAN** be **HURT** if you don't follow instructions.

- **Safety Headings** – such as Important Safety Reminders or Important Safety Precautions.
- **Safety Section** – such as Driver and Passenger Safety.
- **Instructions** – how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information – please read it carefully.

## Important Handling Information

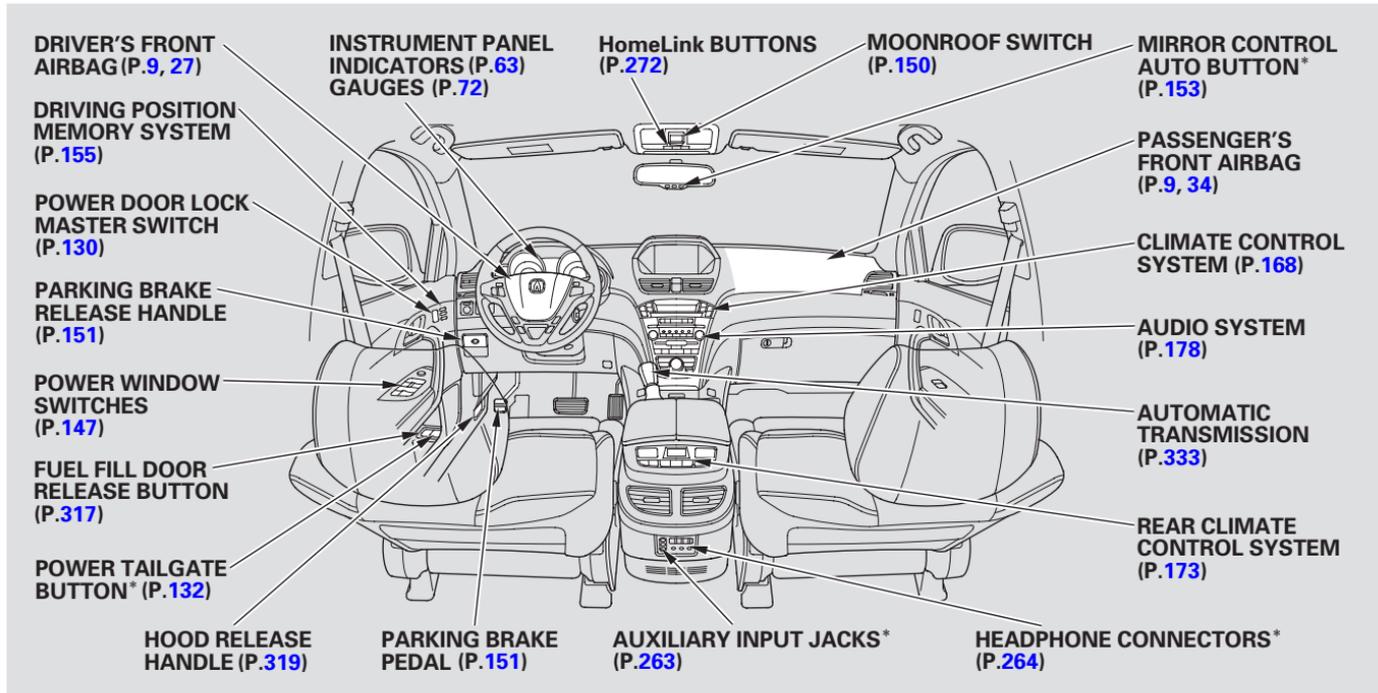
---

Your MDX has higher ground clearance than a passenger vehicle designed for use only on pavement. Higher ground clearance has many advantages for off-highway driving. It allows you to travel over bumps, obstacles, and rough terrain. It also provides good visibility so you can anticipate problems earlier.

These advantages come at some cost. Because your vehicle is taller and rides higher off the ground, it has a high center of gravity. This means your vehicle can tip or roll over if you make abrupt turns. Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. As a reminder, make sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts.

For information on how to reduce the risk of rollover, read “Driving Guidelines” on page 330 of this manual and the *Off-Highway Driving Guidelines* section on page 369. Failure to operate your vehicle correctly might result in loss of control or an accident.

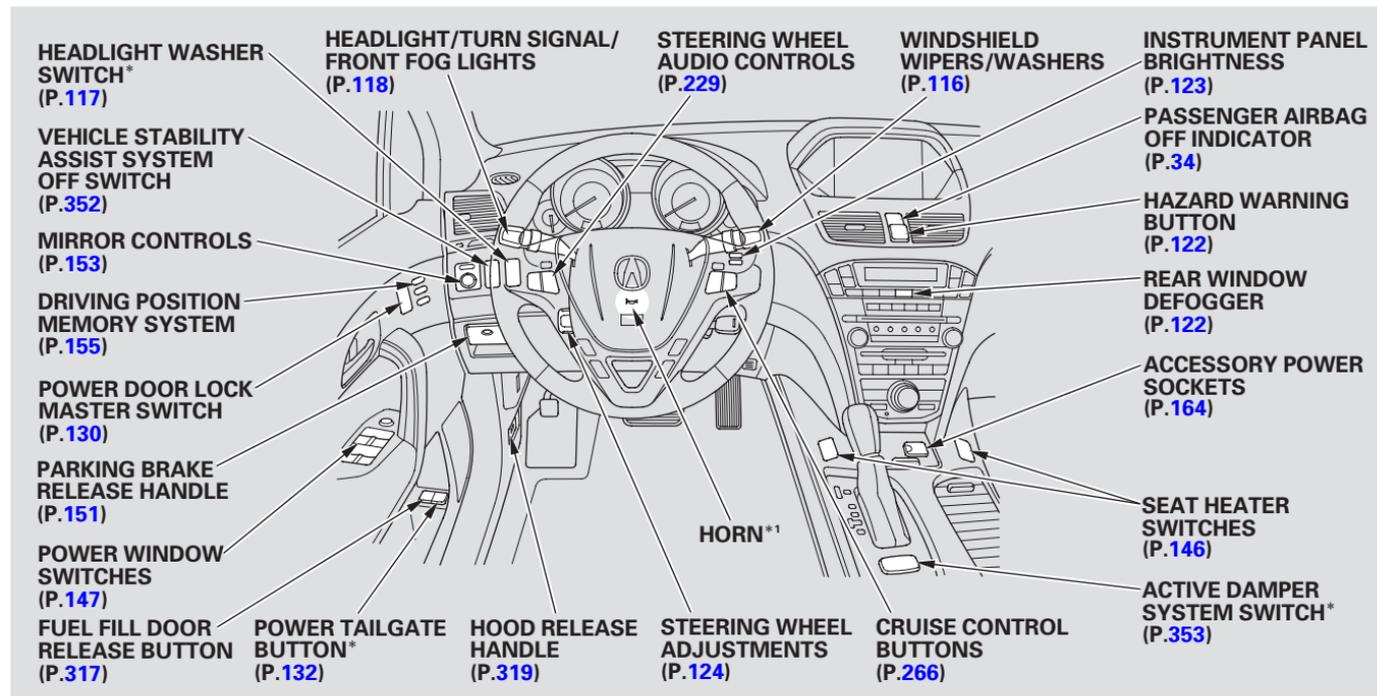
# Your Vehicle at a Glance



\*: If equipped

CONTINUED

# Your Vehicle at a Glance



\*: If equipped

\* 1: To use the horn, press the center pad of the steering wheel.

This section gives you important information about how to protect yourself and your passengers. It shows you how to use seat belts properly. It explains how your airbags work, and it tells you how to properly restrain infants and children in your vehicle.

Important Safety Precautions .....	6
Your Vehicle's Safety Features.....	7
Protecting Adults and Teens.....	11
1. Close and Lock the Doors .....	11
2. Adjust the Front Seats .....	12
3. Adjust the Seat-Backs .....	13
4. Adjust the Head Restraints ...	14
5. Fasten and Position the Seat Belts .....	15
6. Maintain a Proper Sitting Position .....	17
Advice for Pregnant Women.....	18
Additional Safety Precautions....	19

Additional Information About Your Seat Belts .....	20
Seat Belt System Components...	20
Lap/Shoulder Belt.....	21
Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners.....	22
Seat Belt Maintenance.....	23
Additional Information About Your Airbags .....	24
Airbag System Components.....	24
How Your Front Airbags Work.....	27
Advanced Airbag .....	29
How Your Side Airbags Work....	30
How Your Side Curtain Airbags Work.....	32
How the SRS Indicator Works...	33
How The Side Airbag Off Indicator Works.....	33
How the Passenger Airbag Off Indicator Works.....	34
Airbag Service .....	35
Additional Safety Precautions....	35
Protecting Children – General Guidelines.....	37
All Children Must Be Restrained .....	37

All Children Should Sit in a Back Seat .....	38
The Passenger's Front Airbag Can Pose Serious Risks .....	38
If You Must Drive with Several Children .....	40
If a Child Requires Close Attention .....	40
Additional Safety Precautions....	41
Protecting infants and Small Children.....	42
Protecting Infants.....	42
Protecting Small Children .....	43
Selecting a Child Seat.....	45
Installing a Child Seat .....	46
With LATCH .....	47
With a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt..	50
With a Tether .....	51
Protecting Larger Children .....	54
Checking Seat Belt Fit .....	54
Using a Booster Seat.....	55
When Can a Child Sit in Front ...	56
Additional Safety Precautions....	57
Carbon Monoxide Hazard .....	58
Safety Labels.....	59

## Important Safety Precautions

---

You'll find many safety recommendations throughout this section, and throughout this manual. The recommendations on this page are the ones we consider to be the most important.

### **Always Wear Your Seat Belt**

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly (see page 15).

### **Restrain All Children**

Children age 12 and under should ride properly restrained in a back seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in a child seat. Larger children should use a booster seat and a lap/shoulder belt until they can use the belt properly without a booster seat (see pages 37 – 57).

### **Be Aware of Airbag Hazards**

While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

### **Don't Drink and Drive**

Alcohol and driving don't mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with

every additional drink. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive, either.

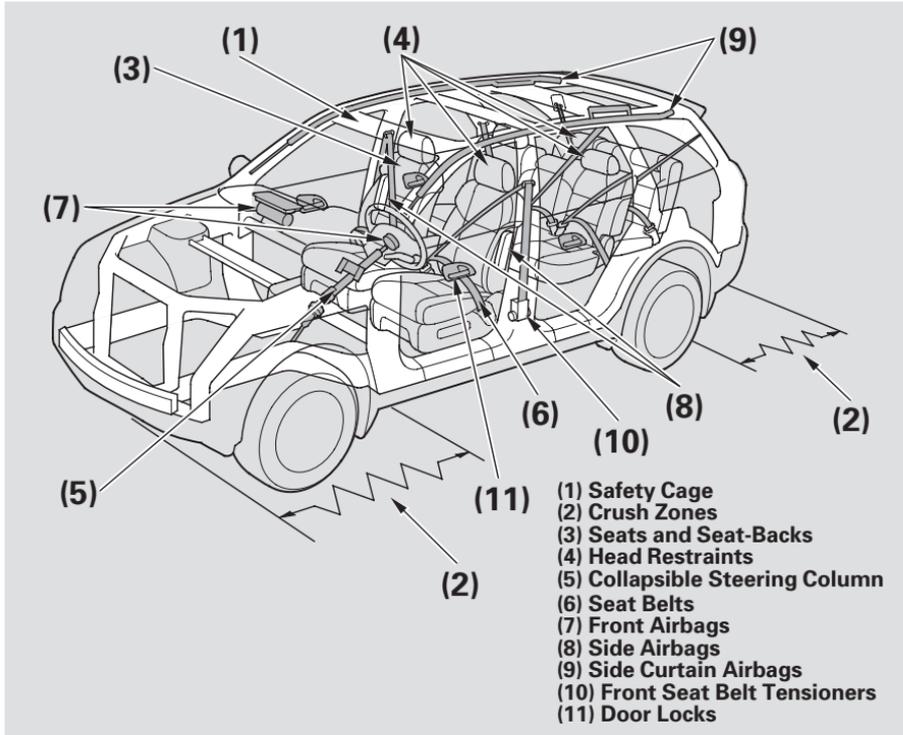
### **Control Your Speed**

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

### **Keep Your Vehicle in Safe Condition**

Having a tire blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous. To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tire pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance (see page 409).

## Your Vehicle's Safety Features



Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to protect you and your passengers during a crash.

Some features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment; front and rear crush zones; a collapsible steering column; and tensioners that tighten the front seat belts in a crash.

However, you and your passengers can't take full advantage of these features unless you remain sitting in a proper position and ***always wear your seat belts***. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.

The following pages explain how you can take an active role in protecting yourself and your passengers.

## Your Vehicle's Safety Features

---

### Seat Belts

Your vehicle is equipped with seat belts in all seating positions.

Your seat belt system also includes an indicator on the instrument panel and a beeper to remind you and your passengers to fasten your seat belts.

#### *Why Wear Seat Belts*

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device for adults and larger children. (Infants and smaller children must be properly restrained in child seats.)

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.

In addition, most states and all Canadian provinces require you to wear seat belts.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.

Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.

When properly worn, seat belts:

- Keep you connected to the vehicle so you can take advantage of the vehicle's built-in safety features.
- Help protect you in almost every type of crash, including frontal, side, and rear impacts and rollovers.

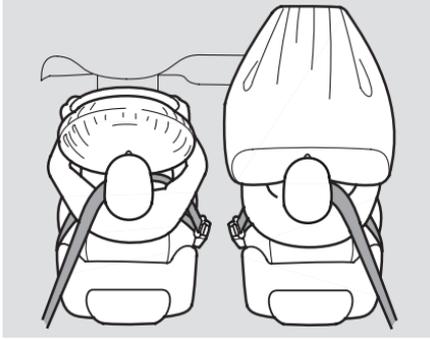
- Help keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle and against other occupants.
- Keep you from being thrown out of the vehicle.
- Help keep you in a good position should the airbags ever deploy. A good position reduces the risk of injury from an inflating airbag and allows you to get the best advantage from the airbag.

Of course, seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

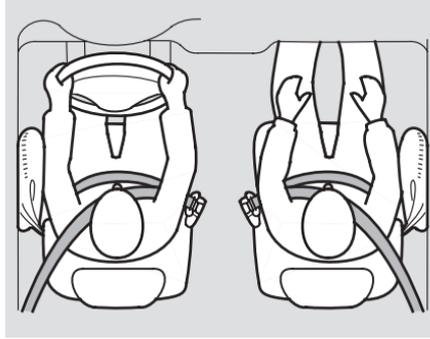
***What you should do:*** Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly.

# Your Vehicle's Safety Features

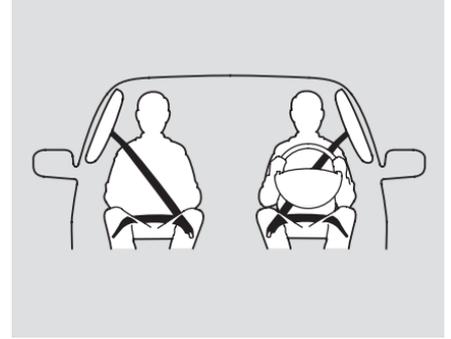
## Airbags



Your vehicle has a supplemental restraint system (SRS) with front airbags to help protect the heads and chests of the driver and a front seat passenger during a moderate to severe frontal collision (see page [27](#) for more information on how your front airbags work).



Your vehicle also has side airbags to help protect the upper torso of the driver or a front seat passenger during a moderate to severe side impact (see page [30](#) for more information on how your side airbags work).



In addition, your vehicle has side curtain airbags to help protect the heads of the driver, front passenger, and passengers in the outer rear seating positions during a moderate to severe side impact or rollover (see page [32](#) for more information on how your side curtain airbags work).

CONTINUED

## Your Vehicle's Safety Features

---

The most important things you need to know about your airbags are:

- ***Airbags do not replace seat belts.*** They are designed to supplement the seat belts.
- ***Airbags offer no protection in rear impacts, or minor frontal or side collisions.***
- ***Airbags can pose serious hazards.*** To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force. So while airbags help save lives, they can cause minor injuries or more serious or even fatal injuries if occupants are not properly restrained or sitting properly.

***What you should do:*** Always wear your seat belt properly, and sit upright and as far back from the steering wheel as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. A front passenger should move their seat as far back from the dashboard as possible.

The rest of this section gives more detailed information about how you can maximize your safety.

Remember, however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in a severe crash, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.

### Introduction

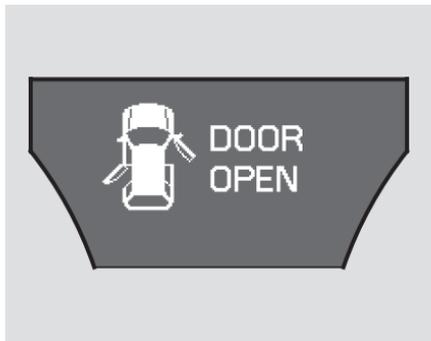
The following pages provide instructions on how to properly protect the driver, adult passengers, and teenage children who are large enough and mature enough to drive or ride in the front.

See pages 37 – 41 for important guidelines on how to properly protect infants, small children, and larger children who ride in your vehicle.

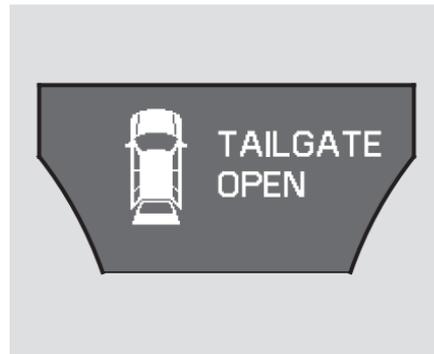
### 1. Close and Lock the Doors

After everyone has entered the vehicle, be sure the doors and the tailgate are closed and locked.

Your vehicle has a door and tailgate monitor on the multi-information display to indicate when a specific door or the tailgate is not tightly closed. You will see the appropriate indicator and the message for each condition.



When one or more doors are not tightly closed, the “DOOR OPEN” message will come on.



When the tailgate is not tightly closed, the “TAILGATE OPEN” message will come on.

CONTINUED

## Protecting Adults and Teens



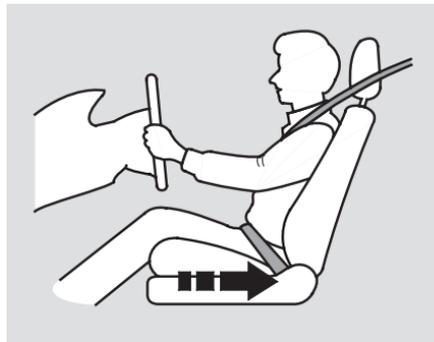
When both tailgate and one or more doors are not tightly closed, the “DOOR & TAILGATE OPEN” message will come on.

Locking the doors reduces the chance of someone being thrown out of the vehicle during a crash, and it helps prevent passengers from accidentally opening a door and falling out.

Locking the doors also helps prevent an outsider from unexpectedly opening a door when you come to a stop.

Your vehicle has the auto door locking/unlocking feature. For more information, see page [130](#) .

### 2. Adjust the Front Seats



Adjust the driver’s seat as far to the rear as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. Have a front passenger adjust their seat as far to the rear as possible.

If you sit too close to the steering wheel or dashboard, you can be seriously injured by an inflating front airbag, or by striking the steering wheel or dashboard.

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and Transport Canada recommend that drivers allow at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the center of the steering wheel and the chest. In addition to adjusting the seat, you can adjust the steering wheel up and down, and in and out (see page [124](#)).

If you cannot get far enough away from the steering wheel and still reach the controls, we recommend that you investigate whether some type of adaptive equipment may help.

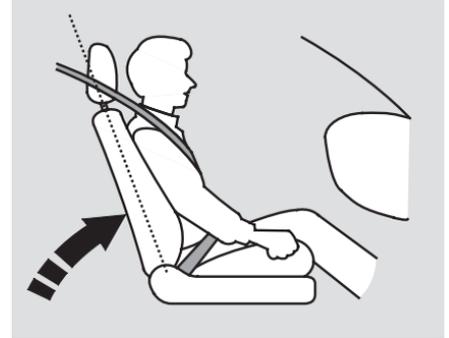
### **⚠ WARNING**

Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.

Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible.

See page [140](#) for how to adjust the front seats.

### 3. Adjust the Seat-Backs



Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the center of the steering wheel.

Passengers with adjustable seat-backs should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.

*CONTINUED*

## Protecting Adults and Teens

### **⚠️ WARNING**

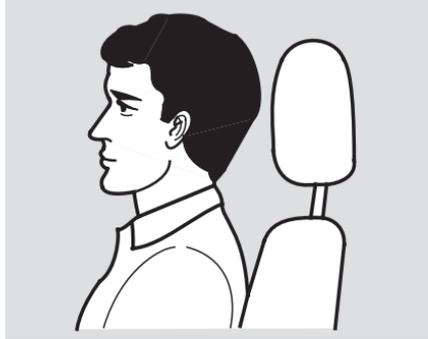
Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

See page [140](#) for how to adjust the seat-backs.

### 4. Adjust the Head Restraints



Adjust the driver's head restraint so the back of your head rests against the center of the restraint.

Have passengers adjust their head restraints properly as well. Taller persons should adjust their restraint as high as possible.

### **⚠️ WARNING**

Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and you can be seriously injured in a crash.

Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.

Properly adjusted head restraints will help protect occupants from whiplash and other crash injuries.

See page [141](#) for how to adjust the head restraints.

### 5. Fasten and Position the Seat Belts

Insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the belt is securely latched. Check that the belt is not twisted, because a twisted belt can cause serious injuries in a crash.

The second row center seat, and both third row seats, have a detachable shoulder belt that can be unlatched and retracted, to allow the seats to be folded down. See page [144](#) for how to unlatch and relatch the seat belts.



Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips, then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.

If necessary, pull up on the shoulder belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the center of your chest and over your shoulder.

This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.

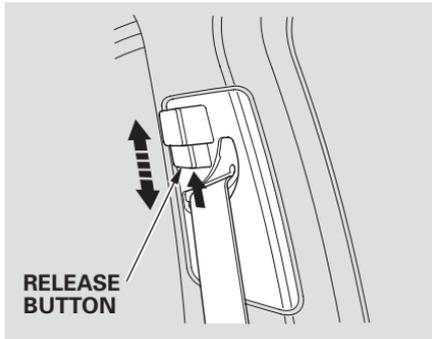
Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.

*CONTINUED*

## Protecting Adults and Teens

---

If the seat belt touches or crosses your neck, or if it crosses your arm instead of your shoulder, you need to adjust the seat belt anchor height.



The front seats have adjustable seat belt anchors. To adjust the height of an anchor, squeeze the release button and slide the anchor up or down as needed (it has four positions).

***Never place the shoulder portion of a lap/shoulder belt under your arm or behind your back.*** This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.

If a seat belt does not seem to work properly, it may not protect the occupant in a crash.

***No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt.*** Using a seat belt that is not working properly can result in serious injury or death. Have your dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

See page [20](#) for additional information about your seat belts and how to take care of them.

### 6. Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and put on seat belts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, well back in their seats, with their feet on the floor, until the vehicle is parked and the engine is off.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury during a crash. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

In addition, an occupant who is out of position in the front seat can be seriously or fatally injured in a crash by striking interior parts of the vehicle or being struck by an inflating front airbag.

#### **WARNING**

Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.

## Protecting Adults and Teens

---

### Advice for Pregnant Women



If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt, and keep the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.

When driving, remember to sit upright and adjust the seat as far back as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. When riding as a front passenger, adjust the seat as far back as possible.

This will reduce the risk of injuries to both you and your unborn child that can be caused by a crash or an inflating front airbag.

Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it's okay for you to drive.

### Additional Safety Precautions

- **Never let passengers ride in the cargo area or on top of a folded-down back seat.** If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- **Passengers should not stand up or change seats while the vehicle is moving.** A passenger who is not wearing a seat belt during a crash or emergency stop can be thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against other occupants, or out of the vehicle.
- **Two people should never use the same seat belt.** If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- **Do not put any accessories on seat belts.** Devices intended to improve occupant comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can reduce the protective capability of the belt and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- **Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag.** Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your front airbag inflates.
- **Keep your hands and arms away from the airbag covers.** If your hands or arms are close to an airbag cover, they could be injured if the airbag inflates.
- **Do not attach or place objects on the front airbag covers.** Objects on the covers marked “SRS AIRBAG” could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags or be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone if the airbags inflate.
- **Do not attach hard objects on or near a door.** If a side airbag or a side curtain airbag inflates, a cup holder or other hard object attached on or near the door could be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone.

## Additional Information About Your Seat Belts

---

### Seat Belt System Components

Your seat belt system includes lap/shoulder belts in all seven seating positions. The front seat belts are also equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners.

This system uses the same sensors as the front airbags to monitor whether the front seat belts are latched or unlatched, and how much weight is on the front passenger's seat (see pages [29](#) and [30](#)).



The seat belt system includes an indicator on the instrument panel and a beeper to remind you and your passengers to fasten your seat belts.

This system monitors the front seat belts. If you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position before your seat belt is fastened, the beeper will sound and the indicator will flash. If your seat belt is not fastened before the beeper stops, the indicator will stop flashing but remain on.

If a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt, the indicator will come on about 6 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to the ON (II) position.

If either the driver or a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt while driving, the beeper will sound and the indicator will flash again at regular intervals.

You will also see a “FASTEN SEAT BELT” or “FASTEN PASSENGER SEAT BELT” message on the multi-information display (see page [81](#)).

When no one is sitting in the front passenger's seat, or a child or small adult is riding there, the indicator should not come on and the beeper should not sound.

## Additional Information About Your Seat Belts

If the indicator comes on or the beeper sounds when the driver's seat belt is latched and there is no front seat passenger and no items on the front seat, something may be interfering with the monitoring system. Look for and remove:

- Any items under the front passenger's seat.
- Any objects hanging on the seat or in the seat-back pocket.
- Any objects, such as a folded-down back seat, that are touching the rear of the seat-back.

If no obstructions are found, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

### Lap/Shoulder Belt

The lap/shoulder belt goes over your shoulder, across your chest, and across your hips.

To fasten the belt, insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is latched (see page 15 for how to properly position the belt).

To unlock the belt, press the red PRESS button on the buckle. Guide the belt across your body so that it retracts completely. After exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is out of the way and will not get closed in the door.

All seat belts have an emergency locking retractor. In normal driving, the retractor lets you move freely in your seat while it keeps some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop, the retractor automatically locks the belt to help restrain your body.

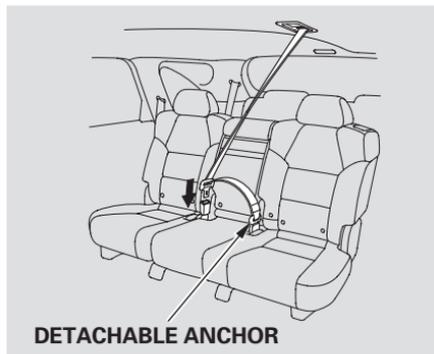
The seat belts in all positions except the driver's have an additional lockable retractor that must be activated to secure a child seat (see page 50).

If the shoulder part of the belt is pulled all the way out, the lockable retractor will activate. The belt will retract, but it will not allow the passenger to move freely.

To deactivate the lockable retractor, unlatch the buckle and let the seat belt fully retract. To refasten the seat belt, pull it out only as far as needed.

*CONTINUED*

## Additional Information About Your Seat Belts



The lap/shoulder belts in the center seat of the second row and both of the third row seats are equipped with a detachable anchor that has two parts: a small latch plate and a buckle.

The detachable seat belt should normally be latched whenever the seat-backs are in an upright position. For more information about the detachable seat belt, see page [144](#).

### Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners



For added protection, the front seat belts are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners. When activated, the tensioners immediately tighten the belts to help hold the driver and a front passenger in position.

The tensioners are designed to activate in any collision severe enough to cause the front airbags to deploy, or if a sensor detects your vehicle is about to roll over (see page [32](#)).

If a side airbag or side curtain airbag deploys during a side impact, the tensioner on that side of the vehicle will also deploy.

The tensioners can also be activated during a collision in which the front airbags *do not* deploy. In this case, the airbags would not be needed, but the additional restraint could be helpful.

When the tensioners are activated, the seat belts will remain tight until they are unbuckled.

## Additional Information About Your Seat Belts

### Seat Belt Maintenance

For safety, you should check the condition of your seat belts regularly.

Pull each belt out fully, and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear. Check that the latches work smoothly and the belts retract easily. If a belt does not retract easily, cleaning the belt may correct the problem (see page 403 ). Any belt that is not in good condition or working properly will not provide good protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.

Acura provides a limited warranty on seat belts. See your *Acura Warranty Information* booklet for details.

If a seat belt is worn during a crash, it must be replaced by the dealer. A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash.

The dealer should also inspect the anchors for damage and replace them if needed. If the automatic seat belt tensioners activate during a crash, they must be replaced.

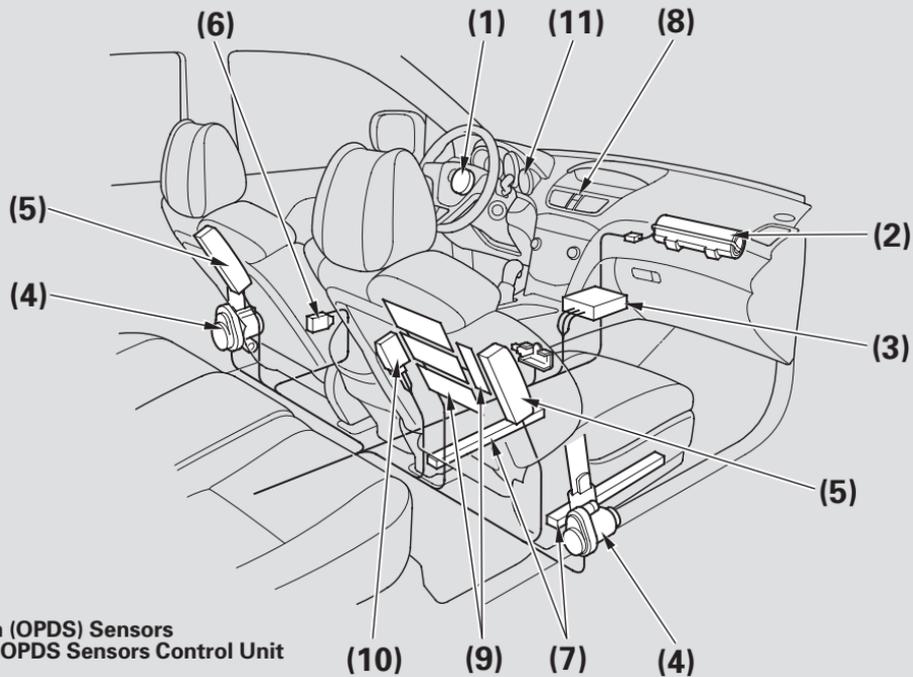
### WARNING

Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.

Check your seat belts regularly and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.

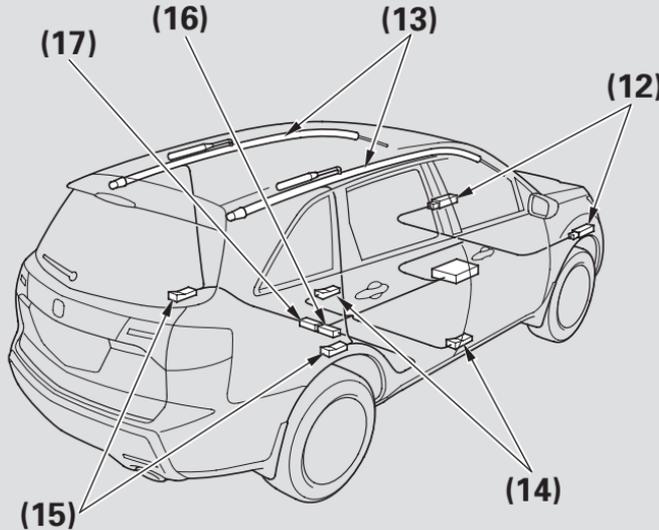
## Additional Information About Your Airbags

### Airbag System Components



- (1) Driver's Front Airbag
- (2) Passenger's Front Airbag
- (3) Control Unit
- (4) Front Seat Belt Tensioners
- (5) Side Airbags
- (6) Driver's Seat Position Sensor
- (7) Front Passenger's Weight Sensors
- (8) Passenger Airbag Off Indicator
- (9) Occupant Position Detection System (OPDS) Sensors
- (10) Front Passenger's Weight Sensors/OPDS Sensors Control Unit
- (11) SRS Indicator

## Additional Information About Your Airbags



- (12) Front Impact Sensors
- (13) Side Curtain Airbags
- (14) Side Impact Sensors (First)
- (15) Side Impact Sensors (Second)
- (16) Roll Rate Sensor
- (17) Safing Sensor

Your Airbag System (SRS) includes:

- Two SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) front airbags. The driver's airbag is stored in the center of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked "SRS AIRBAG" (see page 27 ).
- Two side airbags, one for the driver and one for a front passenger. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seat-backs. Both are marked "SIDE AIRBAG" (see page 30 ).
- Two side curtain airbags, one for each side of the vehicle. The airbags are stored in the roof above the side windows. The front and rear pillars are marked "SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG" (see page 32 ).

CONTINUED

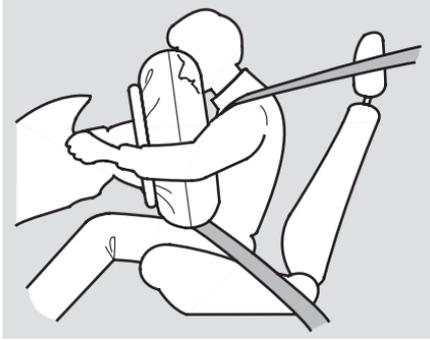
## Additional Information About Your Airbags

---

- Automatic front seat belt tensioners (see page 22).
- Sensors that can detect a moderate to severe front impact, side impact, or if your vehicle is about to rollover.
- Sensors that can detect whether a child is in the passenger's side airbag path and signal the control unit to turn the airbag off (see page 31).
- Sensors that can detect whether the driver's seat belt and a front passenger's seat belt is latched or unlatched (see page 20).
- A driver's seat position sensor that monitors the distance of the seat from the front airbag. If the seat is too far forward, the airbag will inflate with less force (see page 29).
- Weight sensors that monitor the weight on the front passenger's seat. If the weight is about 65 lbs (29 kg) or less (the weight of an infant or small child), the passenger's front airbag will be turned off (see page 29).
- A rollover sensor that can detect if your vehicle is about to roll over and signal the control unit to deploy both side curtain airbags and front seat belt tensioners (see page 32).
- A sophisticated electronic system that continually monitors and records information about the sensors, the control unit, the airbag activators, the seat belt tensioners, and driver and front passenger seat belt use when the ignition switch is in the ON (II) position.
- An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with your airbags, sensors, or seat belt tensioners (see page 33).
- An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you that the passenger's side airbag has been turned off (see page 33).
- An indicator on the dashboard that alerts you that the passenger's front airbag has been turned off (see page 34).
- Emergency backup power in case your vehicle's electrical system is disconnected in a crash.

## Additional Information About Your Airbags

### How Your Front Airbags Work



If you ever have a moderate to severe frontal collision, sensors will detect the vehicle's rapid deceleration.

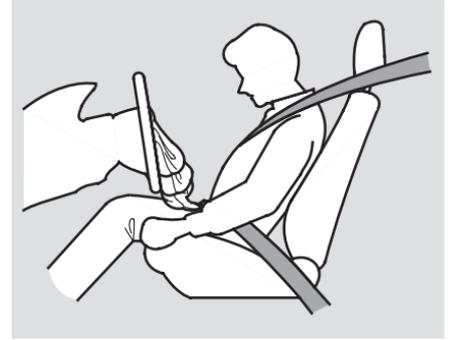
If the rate of deceleration is high enough, the control unit will instantly inflate the driver's and front passenger's airbags, at the time and with the force needed.

During a frontal crash, your seat belt restrains your lower body and torso, and the front airbag helps protect your head and chest.

Although both airbags normally inflate within a split second of each other, it is possible for only one airbag to deploy.

This can happen if the severity of a collision is at the margin, or threshold, that determines whether or not the airbags will deploy. In such cases, the seat belt will provide sufficient protection, and the supplemental protection offered by the airbag would be minimal.

Only the driver's airbag can deploy if there is no passenger in the front seat, or if the advanced airbag system has turned the passenger's airbag off (see page 29).



After inflating, the front airbags will immediately deflate, so they won't interfere with the driver's visibility, or the ability to steer or operate other controls.

CONTINUED

## Additional Information About Your Airbags

---

The total time for inflation and deflation is one-tenth of a second, so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in their laps.

After a crash, you may see what looks like smoke. This is actually powder from the airbag's surface. Although the powder is not harmful, people with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

### *Dual-Stage Airbags*

Your front airbags are dual-stage airbags. This means they have two inflation stages that can be ignited sequentially or simultaneously, depending on crash severity.

In a *more severe* crash, both stages will ignite simultaneously to provide the quickest and greatest protection.

In a *less severe* crash, one stage will ignite first, then the second stage will ignite a split second later. This provides longer airbag inflation time with a little less force.

### *Dual-Threshold Airbags*

Your front airbags are also dual-threshold airbags. Airbags with this feature have two deployment thresholds that depend on whether sensors detect the occupant is wearing a seat belt or not.

If the occupant's belt is *not latched*, the airbag will deploy at a slightly lower threshold, because the occupant would need extra protection.

If the occupant's belt is *latched*, the airbag will inflate at a slightly higher threshold, when the airbag would be needed to supplement the protection provided by the seat belt.

## Additional Information About Your Airbags

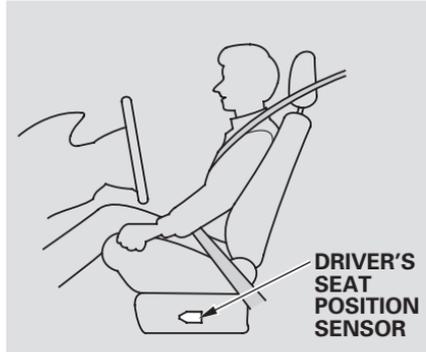
### Advanced Airbags

Your front airbags are also advanced airbags. The main purpose of this feature is to help prevent airbag-caused injuries to short drivers and children who ride in front.

For both advanced airbags to work properly:

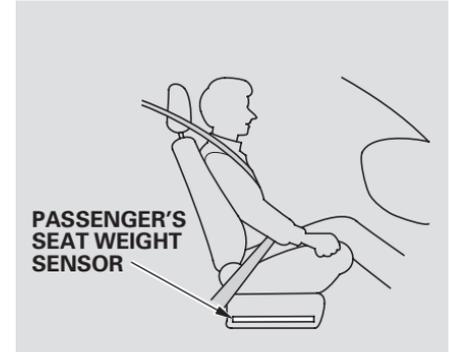
- Occupants must sit upright and wear their seat belts properly.
- Do not spill any liquids on or under the seats, cover the sensors, or put any objects or metal items under the front seats.
- Second-row passengers should not put their feet under the front seats.

Failure to follow these instructions could damage the sensors or prevent them from working properly.



The driver's advanced front airbag system includes a seat position sensor under the seat. If the seat is too far forward, the airbag will inflate with less force, regardless of the severity of the impact.

If there is a problem with the sensor, the SRS indicator will come on, and the airbag will inflate in the normal manner regardless of the driver's seating position.



The passenger's advanced front airbag system has weight sensors under the seat. Although Acura does not encourage carrying an infant or small child in front, if the sensors detect the weight of an infant or small child (up to about 65 lbs or 29 kg), the system will automatically turn the passenger's front airbag off.

CONTINUED

## Additional Information About Your Airbags

---

Be aware that objects placed on the passenger's seat can also cause the airbag to be turned off.

When the airbag is turned off, a "passenger airbag off" indicator in the center of the dashboard comes on (see page 34).

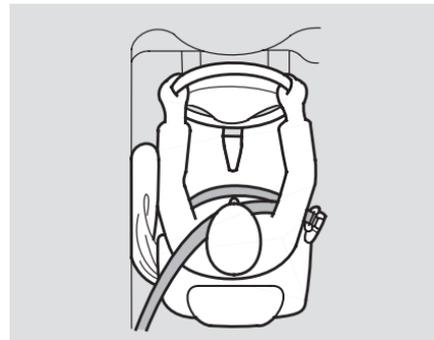
If the weight sensors detect there is no passenger in the front seat, the airbag will be off. However, the passenger airbag off indicator will not come on.

To ensure that the passenger's advanced front airbag system will work properly, ***do not do anything that would increase or decrease the weight on the front passenger's seat.*** This includes:

- A second-row passenger pushing or pulling on the back of the front passenger's seat.

- Moving the front seat forcibly back against cargo on the seat or floor behind it.
- Hanging heavy items on the front passenger seat, or placing heavy items in the seat-back pocket.
- Moving the front passenger's seat or seat-back forcibly back against the folded right-side second-row seat.
- Also, make sure the floor mat behind the front passenger's seat is hooked to the floor mat anchor (see page 404). If it is not, the mat may interfere with the proper operation of the sensors and operation of the seat.

### How Your Side Airbags Work



If you ever have a moderate to severe side impact, sensors will detect rapid acceleration and signal the control unit to instantly inflate either the driver's or the passenger's side airbag and activate the seat belt tensioner.

## Additional Information About Your Airbags

Only one airbag will deploy during a side impact. If the impact is on the passenger's side, the passenger's side airbag will deploy even if there is no passenger.

To get the best protection from the side airbags, front seat occupants should wear their seat belts and sit upright and well back in their seats.

### ***Side Airbag Cutoff System***

Your vehicle has a side airbag cutoff system designed primarily to protect a child riding in the front passenger's seat.

Although Acura does not encourage children to ride in front, if the sensors in the seat detect a child has leaned into the side airbag's deployment path, the airbag will shut off.

The side airbag may also shut off if a short adult leans sideways, or a larger adult slouches and leans sideways into the airbag's deployment path.

Objects placed on the front passenger seat can also cause the side airbag to be shut off.

If the side airbag off indicator comes on (see page 33), have the passenger sit upright. Once the passenger is out of the airbag's deployment path, the system will turn the airbag back on, and the indicator will go out.

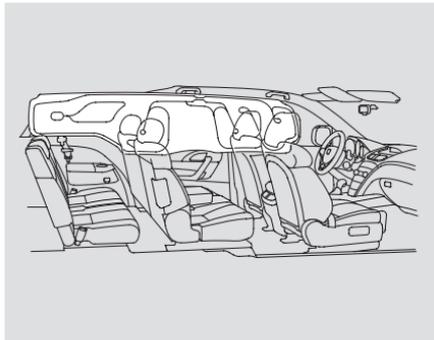
There will be some delay between the moment the passenger moves into or out of the airbag deployment path and when the indicator comes on or goes off.

A front seat passenger should not use a cushion or other object as a backrest. It may prevent the cutoff system from working properly.

## Additional Information About Your Airbags

---

### How Your Side Curtain Airbags Work



#### *In a Side Impact*

In a moderate to severe side impact, sensors will detect rapid acceleration and signal the control unit to instantly inflate the side curtain airbag and activate the seat belt tensioner on the driver's or the passenger's side of the vehicle.

If the impact is on the passenger's side, the passenger's side curtain airbag will inflate even if there are no occupants on that side of the vehicle.

#### *In a Rollover*

If the rollover sensor detects your vehicle is about to roll over, it signals the control unit, which immediately deploys both side curtain airbags and activates both front seat belt tensioners.

The airbag on the passenger's side will deploy, and the seat belt tensioner will activate, even if there are no passengers on that side of the vehicle.

To get the best protection from the side curtain airbags, occupants should wear their seat belts and sit upright and well back in their seats.

## Additional Information About Your Airbags

### How the SRS Indicator Works



The SRS indicator alerts you to a potential problem with your airbags or seat belt tensioners.

When you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, this indicator comes on briefly then goes off. This tells you the system is working properly.

If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, you should have the system checked by your dealer. For example:

- If the SRS indicator does not come on after you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.
- If the indicator stays on after the engine starts.
- If the indicator comes on or flashes on and off while you drive.

You will also see a “CHECK AIRBAG SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display (see page 81).

If you see any of these indications, the airbags and seat belt tensioners may not work properly when you need them.

### WARNING

Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbag systems or tensioners do not work properly.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a possible problem.

### How the Side Airbag Off Indicator Works



U.S.



Canada

This indicator alerts you that the passenger's side airbag has been automatically shut off. It does *not* mean there is a problem with your side airbags.

When you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, the indicator should come on briefly and go out (see page 66). If it does not come on, stays on, or comes on while driving without a passenger in the front seat, you will also see a “PASSENGER SIDE AIRBAG OFF” message on the multi-information display. Have the system checked (see page 81).

## Additional Information About Your Airbags

### How the Passenger Airbag Off Indicator Works



This indicator alerts you that the passenger's front airbag has been shut off because weight sensors detect about 65 lbs (29 kg) or less (the weight of an infant or small child) on the front passenger's seat. It does **not mean** there is a problem with the airbag.

Be aware that objects placed on the front seat can cause the indicator to come on.

If no weight is detected on the front seat, the airbag will be automatically shut off. However, the indicator will not come on.

The passenger airbag off indicator may come on and off repeatedly if the total weight on the seat is near the airbag cutoff threshold.

If an adult or teenage passenger is riding in front, move the seat as far to the rear as possible, and have the passenger sit upright and wear the seat belt properly.

If the indicator comes on with no front seat passenger and no objects on the seat, or with an adult riding there, something may be interfering with the weight sensors. Look for and remove:

- Any items under the front passenger's seat.
- Any objects hanging on the seat or in the seat-back pocket.
- Any object, such as a folded-down back seat, that is touching the rear of the seat-back.

If no obstructions are found, have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

## Additional Information About Your Airbags

### Airbag Service

Your airbag systems are virtually maintenance free, and there are no parts you can safely service. However, you must have your vehicle serviced if:

- **An airbag ever inflates.** Any airbag that has deployed must be replaced along with the control unit and other related parts. Any seat belt tensioner that activates must also be replaced.
- Do not try to remove or replace any airbag by yourself. This must be done by an authorized dealer or a knowledgeable body shop.
- **The SRS indicator alerts you to a problem.** Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer as soon as possible. If you ignore this indication, your airbags may not operate properly.

- **If your vehicle has a moderate to severe impact.** Even if your airbags do not inflate, your dealer should inspect the driver's seat position sensor, the front passenger's weight sensors, the front seat belt tensioners, and all seat belts worn during the crash to make sure they are operating properly.

### Additional Safety Precautions

- **Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags.** Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.
- **Do not tamper with airbag components or wiring for any reason.** Tampering could cause the airbags to deploy, possibly causing very serious injury.
- **Do not expose the front passenger's seat-back to liquid.** If water or another liquid soaks into a seat-back, it can prevent the side airbag cutoff system from working properly.

CONTINUED

## Additional Information About Your Airbags

---

- ***Do not remove or modify a front seat without consulting your dealer.*** This could make the driver's seat position sensor or the front passenger's weight sensors ineffective. If it is necessary to remove or modify a front seat to accommodate a person with disabilities, first contact Acura Client Services at 800-382-2238.
- ***Do not cover or replace front seat-back covers without consulting your dealer.*** Improperly replacing or covering front seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from inflating during a side impact.



Children depend on adults to protect them. However, despite their best intentions, many adults do not know how to *properly* protect child passengers.

If you have children, or ever need to drive with a child in your vehicle, be sure to read this section. It begins with important general guidelines, then presents special information for infants, small children, and larger children.

### **All Children Must Be Restrained**

Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, vehicle accidents are the number one cause of the death of children ages 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, every state and Canadian province requires that infants and children be properly restrained when they ride in a vehicle.

***Infants and small children must be restrained in an approved child seat that is properly secured to the vehicle*** (see pages 42 – 53 ).

### **⚠ WARNING**

Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.

Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in a child seat. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt and use a booster seat if necessary.

***Larger children must be restrained with a lap/shoulder belt and ride on a booster seat until the seat belt fits them properly*** (see pages 54 – 57 ).

## Protecting Children – General Guidelines

---

### All Children Should Sit in a Back Seat

According to accident statistics, children of all ages and sizes are safer when they are restrained in a back seat.

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and Transport Canada recommend that all children aged 12 and under be properly restrained in a back seat. Some states have laws restricting where children may ride.

Children who ride in the back are less likely to be injured by striking interior vehicle parts during a collision or hard braking. Also, children cannot be injured by an inflating front airbag when they ride in the back.

### The Passenger's Front Airbag Can Pose Serious Risks

Front airbags have been designed to help protect adults in a moderate to severe frontal collision. To do this, the passenger's front airbag is quite large, and it can inflate with enough force to cause very serious injuries.

Even though your vehicle has an advanced front airbag system that automatically turns the passenger's front airbag off (see page 34), please follow these guidelines:

#### *Infants*

***Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front seat of a vehicle equipped with a passenger's front airbag.*** If the airbag inflates, it can hit the back of the child seat with enough force to kill or very seriously injure an infant.

#### *Small Children*

***Placing a forward-facing child seat in the front seat of a vehicle equipped with a passenger's front airbag can be hazardous.*** If the vehicle seat is too far forward, or the child's head is thrown forward during a collision, an inflating front airbag can strike the child with enough force to kill or very seriously injure a small child.

#### *Larger Children*

***Children who have outgrown child seats are also at risk of being injured or killed by an inflating passenger's front airbag.*** Whenever possible, larger children should sit in the back seat, on a booster seat if needed, and be properly restrained with a seat belt. (See page 54 for important information about protecting larger children.)

## Protecting Children – General Guidelines

To remind you of the passenger's front airbag hazards, and that children must be properly restrained in a back seat, your vehicle has warning labels on the dashboard (U.S. models) and on the front visors. Please read and follow the instructions on these labels.

### U.S. Models

#### SUN VISORS



### Canadian Models

#### SUN VISORS

**CAUTION**  
TO AVOID SERIOUS INJURY:

- FOR MAXIMUM SAFETY PROTECTION IN ALL TYPES OF CRASHES, YOU MUST ALWAYS WEAR YOUR SAFETY BELT.
- DO NOT INSTALL REARWARD-FACING CHILD SEATS IN ANY FRONT PASSENGER SEAT POSITION.
- DO NOT SIT OR LEAN UNNECESSARILY CLOSE TO THE AIR BAG.
- DO NOT PLACE ANY OBJECTS OVER THE AIR BAG OR BETWEEN THE AIR BAG AND YOURSELF.
- SEE THE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR FURTHER INFORMATION AND EXPLANATIONS.

**PRECAUTIONS:**  
POUR EVITER DES BLESSURES GRAVES:

- POUR PROFITER D'UNE PROTECTION MAXIMALE LORS D'UNE COLLISION BOUCLEZ TOUJOURS VOTRE CEINTURE DE SECURITE.
- N'INSTALLEZ JAMAIS UN SIEGE POUR ENFANTS FAISANT FACE A L'ARRIERE SUR LE SIEGE DU PASSAGER AVANT.
- NE VOUS APPUYEZ PAS ET NE VOUS ASSOYEZ PAS PRES DU COUSSIN GONFLABLE.
- NE DEPOSEZ AUCUN OBJET SUR LE COUSSIN GONFLABLE OU ENTRE LE COUSSIN GONFLABLE ET VOUS.
- LISEZ LE GUIDE UTILISATEUR POUR DE PLUS AMPLES RENSEIGNEMENTS.

#### DASHBOARD

This Vehicle is Equipped with  
Advanced Air Bags

#### Even with Advanced Air Bags

Children can be killed or seriously injured by the air bag.  
The back seat is the safest place for children.  
Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front.  
Always use seat belts and child restraints.  
See owner's manual for more information about air bags.

To be removed by owner only.

## Protecting Children – General Guidelines

---

### **If You Must Drive with Several Children**

Your vehicle has two rows of back seats where children can be properly restrained. If you ever have to carry a group of children, and a child must ride in front:

- Place the largest child in the front seat, provided the child is large enough to wear the lap/shoulder belt properly (see page [54](#) ).
- Move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible (see page [12](#) ).
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat (see page [17](#) ).
- Make sure the seat belt is properly positioned and secured (see page [15](#) ).

### **If a Child Requires Close Attention**

Many parents say they prefer to put an infant or a small child in the front passenger seat so they can watch the child, or because the child requires attention.

Placing a child in the front seat exposes the child to hazards in a frontal collision, and paying close attention to a child distracts the driver from the important tasks of driving, placing both of you at risk.

If a child requires close physical attention or frequent visual contact, we strongly recommend that another adult ride with the child in a back seat. The back seat is far safer for a child than the front.

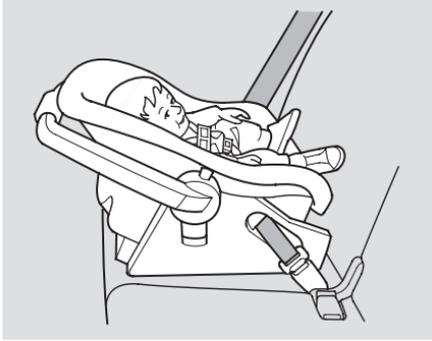
### Additional Safety Precautions

- **Never hold an infant or child on your lap.** If you are not wearing a seat belt in a crash, you could be thrown forward and crush the child against the dashboard or a seat-back. If you are wearing a seat belt, the child can be torn from your arms and be seriously hurt or killed.
  - **Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child.** During a crash, the belt could press deep into the child and cause serious or fatal injuries.
  - **Use childproof door locks to prevent children from opening the doors.** This can prevent children from accidentally falling out (see page 131).
  - **Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled, the lockable retractor is activated, and the belt is fully retracted and locked.** If a child wraps a loose seat belt around their neck, they can be seriously or fatally injured. (See pages 50 and 51 for how to activate and deactivate the lockable retractor.)
  - **Never let two children use the same seat belt.** If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
  - **Do not leave children alone in a vehicle.** Leaving children without adult supervision is illegal in most states and Canadian provinces, and can be very hazardous.
- For example, infants and small children left in a vehicle on a hot day can die from heatstroke. A child left alone with the key in the ignition switch can accidentally set the vehicle in motion, possibly injuring themselves or others.
- **Lock all doors and the tailgate when your vehicle is not in use.** Children who play in vehicles can accidentally get trapped inside. Teach your children not to play in or around vehicles.
  - **Keep vehicle keys/remote transmitters out of the reach of children.** Even very young children learn how to unlock vehicle doors, turn on the ignition switch, and open the tailgate, which can lead to accidental injury or death.

# Protecting Infants and Small Children

---

## Protecting Infants



### ***Child Seat Type***

An infant must be properly restrained in a rear-facing, reclining child seat until the child reaches the seat maker's weight or height limit for the seat, and the child is at least one year old.

Only a rear-facing child seat provides proper support for a baby's head, neck, and back.

Two types of seats may be used: a seat designed exclusively for infants, or a convertible seat used in the rear-facing, reclining mode.

***Do not put a rear-facing child seat in a forward-facing position.*** If placed facing forward, an infant could be very seriously injured during a frontal collision.

### ***Rear-facing Child Seat Placement***

A rear-facing child seat can be placed in any seating position in the back seat, but not in the front. ***Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front seat.***

If the passenger's front airbag inflates, it can hit the back of the child seat with enough force to kill or seriously injure an infant.

When properly installed in the second row, a rear-facing child seat may prevent the driver or a front passenger from moving their seat as far back as recommended, or from locking their seat-back in the desired position.

It can also interfere with proper operation of the passenger's advanced front airbag system.

In any of these situations, we strongly recommend that you install the child seat directly behind the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far forward as needed, and leave it unoccupied. Or, you may wish to get a smaller rear-facing child seat.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Placing a rear-facing child seat in the front seat can result in serious injury or death during a collision.

Always place a rear-facing child seat in the back seat, not the front.

### **Protecting Small Children**



#### ***Child Seat Type***

A child who is at least one year old, and who fits within the child seat maker's weight and height limits, should be restrained in a forward-facing, upright child seat.

Of the different seats available, we recommend those that have a five-point harness system as shown.

We also recommend that a small child use the child seat as long as possible, until the child reaches the weight or height limit for the seat.

*CONTINUED*

## Protecting Infants and Small Children

---

### *Child Seat Placement*

We strongly recommend placing a forward-facing child seat in a back seat, not the front.

***Placing a forward-facing child seat in the front seat of a vehicle equipped with a passenger's airbag can be hazardous.*** If the vehicle seat is too far forward, or the child's head is thrown forward during a collision, an inflating airbag can strike the child with enough force to cause very serious or fatal injuries.

Even with advanced front airbags, which can automatically turn the passenger's front airbag off (see page 34), a back seat is the safest place for a small child.

If it is necessary to put a forward-facing child seat in the front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, be sure the child seat is firmly secured to the vehicle and the child is properly strapped in the seat.

### **WARNING**

Placing a forward-facing child seat in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbag inflates.

If you must place a forward-facing child seat in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and properly restrain the child.

When buying a child seat, you need to choose either a conventional child seat, or one designed for use with the lower anchors and tethers for children (LATCH) system.

Conventional child seats must be secured to a vehicle with a seat belt, whereas LATCH-compatible seats are secured by attaching the seat to hardware built into the second-row seats.

Since LATCH-compatible child seats are easier to install and reduce the possibility of improper installation, we recommend selecting this style.

In seating positions and vehicles not equipped with LATCH, a LATCH-compatible child seat can be installed using a seat belt.

Whatever type of seat you choose, to provide proper protection, a child seat should meet three requirements:

- 1. The child seat should meet U.S. or Canadian Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 213.*** Look for FMVSS 213 or CMVSS 213 on the box.
- 2. The child seat should be of the proper type and size to fit the child.*** Rear-facing for infants, forward-facing for small children.
- 3. The child seat should fit the vehicle seating position (or positions) where it will be used.***

Before purchasing a conventional child seat, or using a previously purchased one, we recommend that you test the seat in the specific vehicle seating position or positions where the seat will be used.

## Installing a Child Seat

---

After selecting a proper child seat and a good place to install the seat, there are three main steps in installing the seat:

- 1. Properly secure the child seat to the vehicle.** All child seats must be secured to the vehicle with the lap part of a lap/shoulder belt or with the LATCH (lower anchors and tethers for children) system. A child whose seat is not properly secured to the vehicle can be endangered in a crash.
- 2. Make sure the child seat is firmly secured.** After installing a child seat, push and pull the seat forward and from side-to-side to verify that it is secure.

A child seat secured with a seat belt should be installed as firmly as possible. However, it does not need to be “rock solid.” Some side-to-side movement can be expected and should not reduce the child seat’s effectiveness.

If the child seat is not secure, try installing it in a different seating position, or use a different style of child seat that can be firmly secured.

- 3. Secure the child in the child seat.** Make sure the child is properly strapped in the child seat according to the child seat maker’s instructions. A child who is not properly secured in a child seat can be seriously injured in a crash.

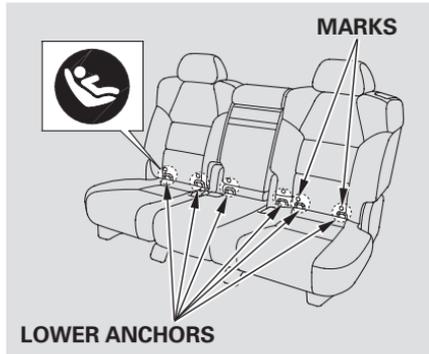
The following pages provide guidelines on how to properly install a child seat. A forward-facing child seat is used in all examples, but the instructions are the same for a rear-facing child seat.

## Installing a Child Seat with LATCH

Your vehicle is equipped with LATCH (lower anchors and tethers for children) at each of the second row seats.

The lower anchors are located between the seat-back and seat bottom, and are to be used only with a child seat designed for use with LATCH.

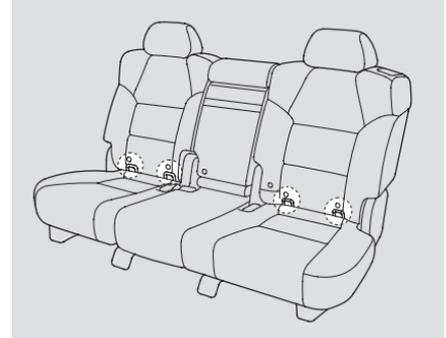
The location of each lower anchor is indicated by a small button above the anchor point.



When you install a child seat in rear seating position, use the lower anchors as shown in the illustration. You can install up to three child seats at a time with LATCH.

Do not attach two child seat connectors to a single lower anchor at a time.

## Using the Outer LATCH

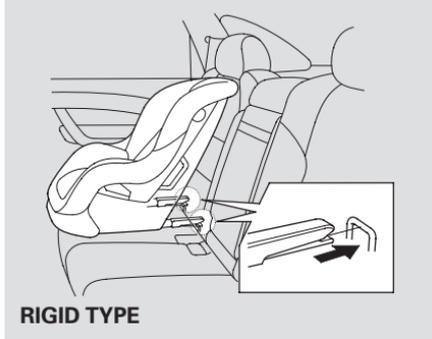


To install a LATCH-compatible child seat in either outer second row seat:

1. Move the seat belt buckle or tongue away from the lower anchors.
2. Make sure there are no objects near the anchors that could prevent a secure connection between the child seat and the anchors.

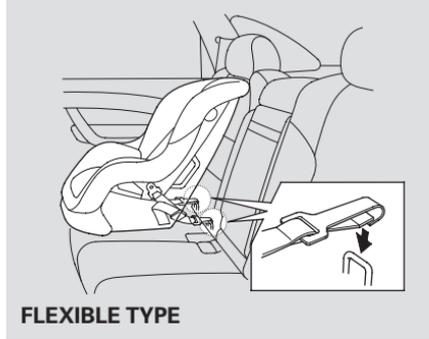
*CONTINUED*

## Installing a Child Seat



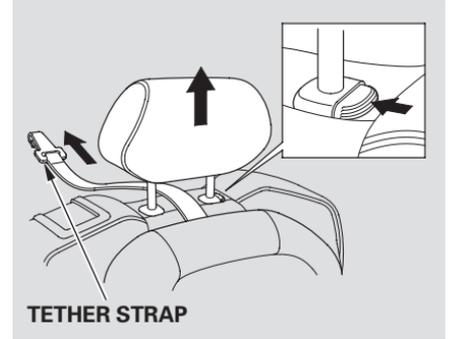
3. Place the child seat on the vehicle seat, then attach the seat to the lower anchors according to the child seat maker's instructions.

Some LATCH-compatible seats have a rigid-type connector as shown above.

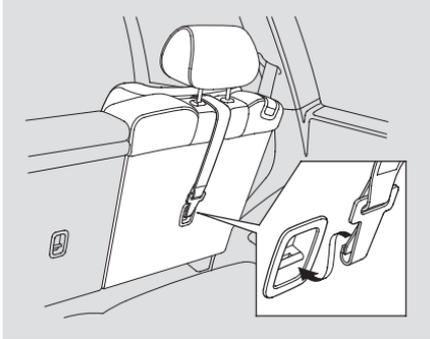


Other LATCH-compatible seats have a flexible-type connector as shown above.

4. Whatever type you have, follow the child seat maker's instructions for adjusting or tightening the fit.

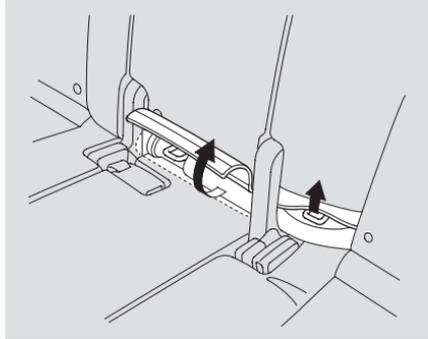


5. Lift the head restraint (see page 141), then route the tether strap through the legs of the head restraint and over the seat-back, making sure the strap is not twisted.



6. Attach the tether strap hook to the tether anchor, then tighten the strap as instructed by the child seat maker.
7. Push and pull the child seat forward and from side to side to verify that it is secure.

### *Using the Center LATCH*



To install a LATCH-compatible child seat in the center seating position on the second row seat, use the center lower anchors as shown above.

1. Pull up the cover below the armrest and find one of the anchors. The other anchor is located underneath the flap at the bottom of the outer seat's inner bolster.

2. Follow step 1 through 4 as described previously to secure the child seat.
3. Lower the head restraint first. Route the tether strap over the head restraint and seat-back, then attach the tether strap hook to the anchor, making sure the strap is not twisted.
4. Push and pull the child seat forward and from side-to-side to verify that it is secure.

## Installing a Child Seat

### Installing a Child Seat with a Lap/Shoulder Belt

When not using the LATCH system, all child seats must be secured to the vehicle with the lap part of a lap/shoulder belt.

In addition, the lap/shoulder belts in all seating positions except the driver's have a lockable retractor that must be activated to secure a child seat.

If you intend to install a child seat in the center seating position of second row seat, make sure the detachable seat belt is securely latched (see page144).



1. With the child seat in the desired seating position, route the belt through the child seat according to the seat maker's instructions, then insert the latch plate into the buckle.



2. To activate the lockable retractor, slowly pull the shoulder part of the belt all the way out until it stops, then let the belt feed back into the retractor.

3. After the belt has retracted, tug on it. If the belt is locked, you will not be able to pull it out. If you can pull the belt out, it is not locked, and you will need to repeat these steps.



4. After confirming that the belt is locked, grab the shoulder part of the belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt. Remember, if the lap part of the belt is not tight, the child seat will not be secure.

To remove slack, it may help to put weight on the child seat, or push on the back of the seat while pulling up on the belt.



5. Push and pull the child seat forward and from side-to-side to verify that it is secure enough to stay upright during normal driving maneuvers. If the child seat is not secure, unlatch the belt, allow it to retract fully, then repeat these steps.

To deactivate the lockable retractor and remove a child seat, unlatch the buckle, unrout the seat belt, and let the belt fully retract.

### Installing a Child Seat with a Tether

A child seat with a tether can be installed in any seating position in the second or third row.

Since a tether can provide additional security to the lap/shoulder belt installation, we recommend using a tether whenever one is required or available.

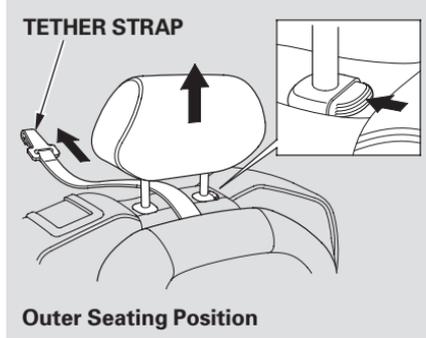
CONTINUED

# Installing a Child Seat

## Second Row Installation

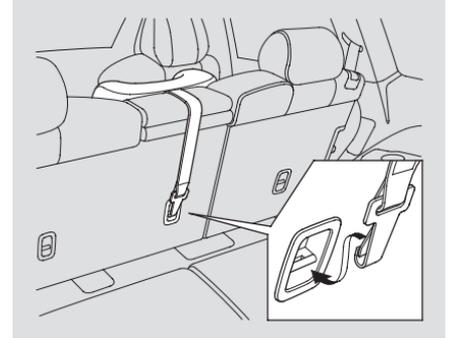


Each second row seat has a tether anchorage point behind the seat-back.

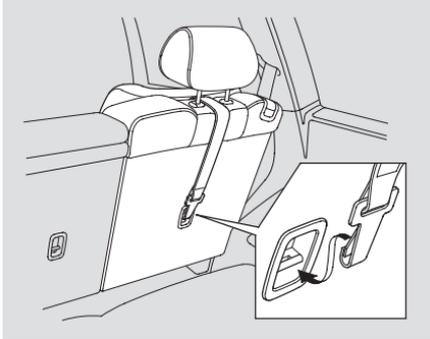


Outer Seating Position

1. After properly securing the child seat in the desired position (see page 50), lift the head restraint, then route the tether strap over the seat-back.

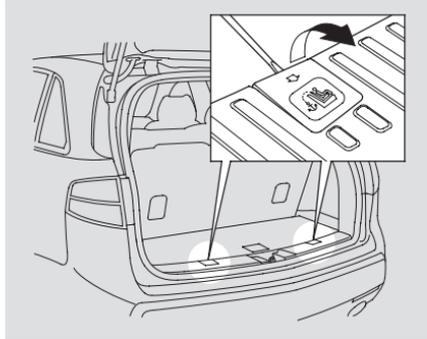


For the center seat, lower the head restraint, then route the tether strap over the head restraint and seat-back.

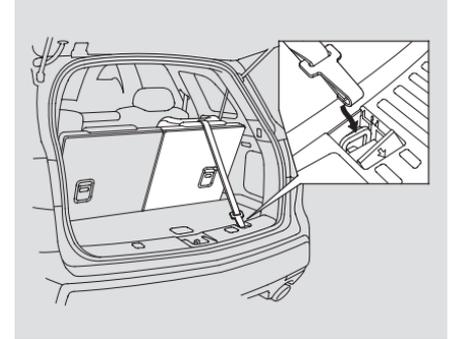


2. Attach the tether strap hook to the anchor, making sure the tether strap is not twisted.
3. Tighten the strap according to the seat maker's instructions.

## *Third Row Installation*



- Each third row seat has a tether anchorage point on the tailgate sill.
1. Select the anchor point you want to use. Then open the anchor cover with a small flat-tip screwdriver.
  2. Secure the child seat in the desired position (see page 50 ).



3. Route the tether strap over the head restraint, then attach the tether strap hook to the anchor, making sure the strap is not twisted.

## Protecting Larger Children

When a child reaches the recommended weight or height limit for a forward-facing child seat, the child should sit in a back seat on a booster seat and wear a lap/shoulder belt.

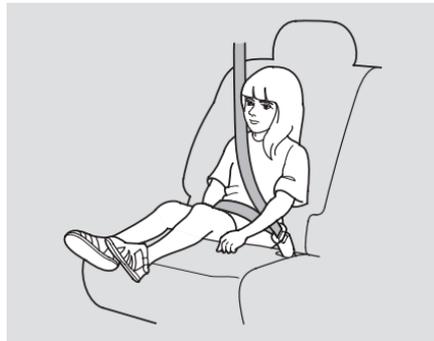
The following pages give instructions on how to check proper seat belt fit, what kind of booster seat to use if one is needed, and important precautions for a child who must sit in front.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Allowing a child age 12 or under to sit in front can result in injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

If a child must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, use a booster seat if needed, have the child sit up properly and wear the seat belt properly.

### Checking Seat Belt Fit



To determine if a lap/shoulder belt properly fits a child, have the child put on the seat belt, then ask yourself:

1. Does the child sit all the way back against the seat?
2. Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the edge of the seat?

3. Does the shoulder belt cross between the child's neck and arm?
4. Is the lap part of the belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs?
5. Will the child be able to stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If you answer yes to all these questions, the child is ready to wear the lap/shoulder belt correctly. If you answer no to any question, the child needs to ride on a booster seat.

### Using a Booster Seat



A child who has outgrown a forward-facing child seat should ride in a back seat and use a booster seat until the lap/shoulder belt fits them properly without the booster.

Some states and Canadian provinces also require children to use a booster seat until they reach a given age or weight (e.g., 6 years or 60 lbs). Be sure to check current laws in the states or provinces where you intend to drive.

Booster seats can be high-back or low-back. Whichever style you select, make sure the booster seat meets federal safety standards and that you follow the booster seat maker's instructions.

*CONTINUED*

## Protecting Larger Children

---

If a child who uses a booster seat must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible and be sure the child is wearing the seat belt properly.

A child may continue using a booster seat until the tops of their ears are even with the top of the vehicle's or booster's seat-back. A child of this height should be tall enough to use the lap/shoulder belt without a booster seat.

### **When Can a Larger Child Sit in Front**

The National Highway Traffic Safety Administration and Transport Canada recommend that all children age 12 and under be properly restrained in a back seat.

If the passenger's front airbag inflates in a moderate to severe frontal collision, the airbag can cause serious injuries to a child who is unrestrained, improperly restrained, sitting too close to the airbag, or out of position.

A side airbag also poses risks. If any part of a larger child's body is in the path of a deploying side airbag, the child could receive possibly serious injuries.

Of course, children vary widely. And while age may be one indicator of when a child can safely ride in front, there are other important factors you should consider.

### ***Physical Size***

Physically, a child must be large enough for the lap/shoulder belt to properly fit (see pages 15 and 54). If the seat belt does not fit properly, with or without the child sitting on a booster seat, the child should not sit in front.

### ***Maturity***

To safely ride in front, a child must be able to follow the rules, including sitting properly, and wearing the seat belt properly throughout a ride.

If you decide that a child can safely ride up front, be sure to:

- Carefully read the owner's manual, and make sure you understand all seat belt instructions and all safety information.
- Move the vehicle seat to the rear-most position.
- Have the child sit up straight, back against the seat, and feet on or near the floor.
- Check that the child's seat belt is properly and securely positioned.
- Supervise the child. Even mature children sometimes need to be reminded to fasten the seat belts or sit properly.

### Additional Safety Precautions

- ***Do not let a child wear a seat belt across the neck.*** This could result in serious neck injuries during a crash.
- ***Do not let a child put the shoulder part of a seat belt behind the back or under the arm.*** This could cause very serious injuries during a crash. It also increases the chance that the child will slide under the belt in a crash and be injured.
- ***Two children should never use the same seat belt.*** If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.

- ***Do not put any accessories on a seat belt.*** Devices intended to improve a child's comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can make the belt less effective and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

## Carbon Monoxide Hazard

---

Your vehicle's exhaust contains carbon monoxide gas. Carbon monoxide should not enter the vehicle in normal driving if you maintain your vehicle properly and follow the information on this page.

Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks whenever:

- The vehicle is raised for an oil change.
- You notice a change in the sound of the exhaust.
- The vehicle was in an accident that may have damaged the underside.

### **WARNING**

Carbon monoxide gas is toxic. Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.

Avoid any enclosed areas or activities that expose you to carbon monoxide.

High levels of carbon monoxide can collect rapidly in enclosed areas, such as a garage. Do not run the engine with the garage door closed. Even with the door open, run the engine only long enough to move the vehicle out of the garage.

With the tailgate open, airflow can pull exhaust gas into your vehicle's interior and create a hazardous condition. If you must drive with the tailgate open, open all the windows, and set the climate control system as shown below.

If you must sit in your parked vehicle with the engine running, even in an unconfined area, adjust the climate control system as follows:

1. Select the fresh air mode.
2. Select the  mode.
3. Turn the fan on high speed.
4. Set the temperature control to a comfortable setting.

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that could cause serious injury or death. Read these labels carefully.

If a label comes off or becomes hard to read (except for the U.S. dashboard label which may be removed by the owner), contact your dealer for a replacement.

## HOOD

**▲WARNING**  
 Accidental deployment can seriously hurt or kill you.  
 Follow Service Manual instructions carefully.

**▲ATTENTION**  
 Un déploiement accidentel risque de causer de graves blessures, voire la mort.  
 Suivre attentivement les instructions du manuel de réparation.

## RADIATOR CAP



## DASHBOARD

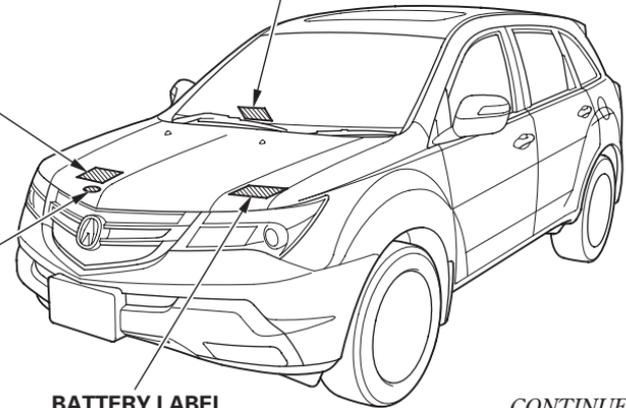
*U.S. models only*

This Vehicle is Equipped with  
 Advanced Air Bags

### Even with Advanced Air Bags

Children can be killed or seriously injured by the air bag.  
 The back seat is the safest place for children.  
 Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front.  
 Always use seat belts and child restraints.  
 See owner's manual for more information about air bags.

To be removed by owner only.



**BATTERY LABEL**

*CONTINUED*

# Safety Labels

## SUN VISOR

### U.S. models

**▲ WARNING**  
**EVEN WITH ADVANCED AIR BAGS**



- Children can be killed or seriously injured by the air bag
- The back seat is the safest place for children
- Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front
- Always use seat belts and child restraints
- See owner's manual for more information about air bags

**AIRBAG WARNING**  
**FLIP VISOR OVER**



### Canadian models

**CAUTION**  
**TO AVOID SERIOUS INJURY:**  
 ● FOR MAXIMUM SAFETY PROTECTION IN ALL TYPES OF CRASHES YOU MUST ALWAYS WEAR YOUR SAFETY BELT.  
 ● DO NOT INSTALL REARWARD-FACING CHILD SEAT BEHIND FRONT PASSENGER SEAT POSITION.  
 ● DO NOT SIT OR LEAN UNNECESSARILY CLOSE TO THE AIR BAG.  
 ● DO NOT PLACE ANY OBJECTS OVER THE AIR BAG OR BETWEEN THE AIR BAG AND YOUR SEAT.  
 ● SEE THE OWNER'S MANUAL FOR FURTHER INFORMATION AND EXPLANATIONS.

**PRECAUTIONS:**  
 ● POUR ÉVITER DES BLESSURES GRAVES:  
 ● POUR PROFITER D'UNE PROTECTION MAXIMALE LORS D'UNE COLLISION BOUTÉE, TOUJOURS PORTER VOTRE CEINTURE DE SÉCURITÉ.  
 ● N'INSTALLEZ JAMAIS UN SIÈGE POUR ENFANTS EN POSITION DE SÉCURITÉ, LE SIÈGE DU PASSENGER AVANT.  
 ● NE VOUS APPUYEZ PAS ET NE VOUS ASSOYEZ PAS PRES DE VOUS SEULEMENT SUR LE COUSSIN GONFLABLE DU CÔTÉ DU PASSENGER.  
 ● NE DÉPOSEZ AUCUN OBJET SUR LE COUSSIN GONFLABLE OU ENTRE LE COUSSIN GONFLABLE ET VOUS.  
 ● VOUS LIREZ LE MANUEL D'INFORMATION POUR DE PLUS AMPLES RENSEIGNEMENTS.

### U.S. models

**▲ WARNING: HIGHER ROLLOVER RISK**



Avoid Abrupt Maneuvers and Excessive Speed.  
 Always Buckle Up.  
 See Owner's Manual For Further Information.



## DOORJAMBS

### U.S. models

**SIDE AIRBAG**

- This car is equipped with side airbags in the front seats and side curtain airbags.
- Do not lean against the door.
- See owner's manual for more information.

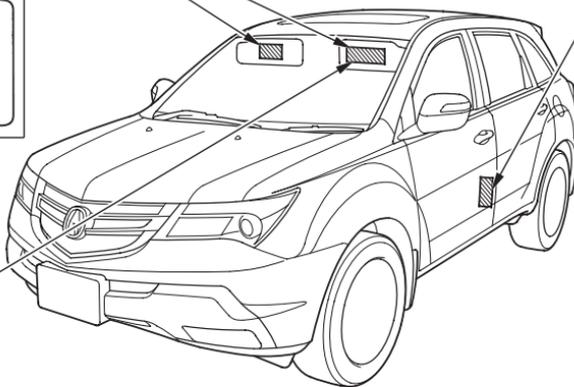
### Canadian models

**SIDE AIRBAG**

- This car is equipped with side airbags in the front seats and side curtain airbags.
- Do not lean against the door.
- See owner's manual for more information.

**COUSSIN GONFLABLE LATÉRAL**

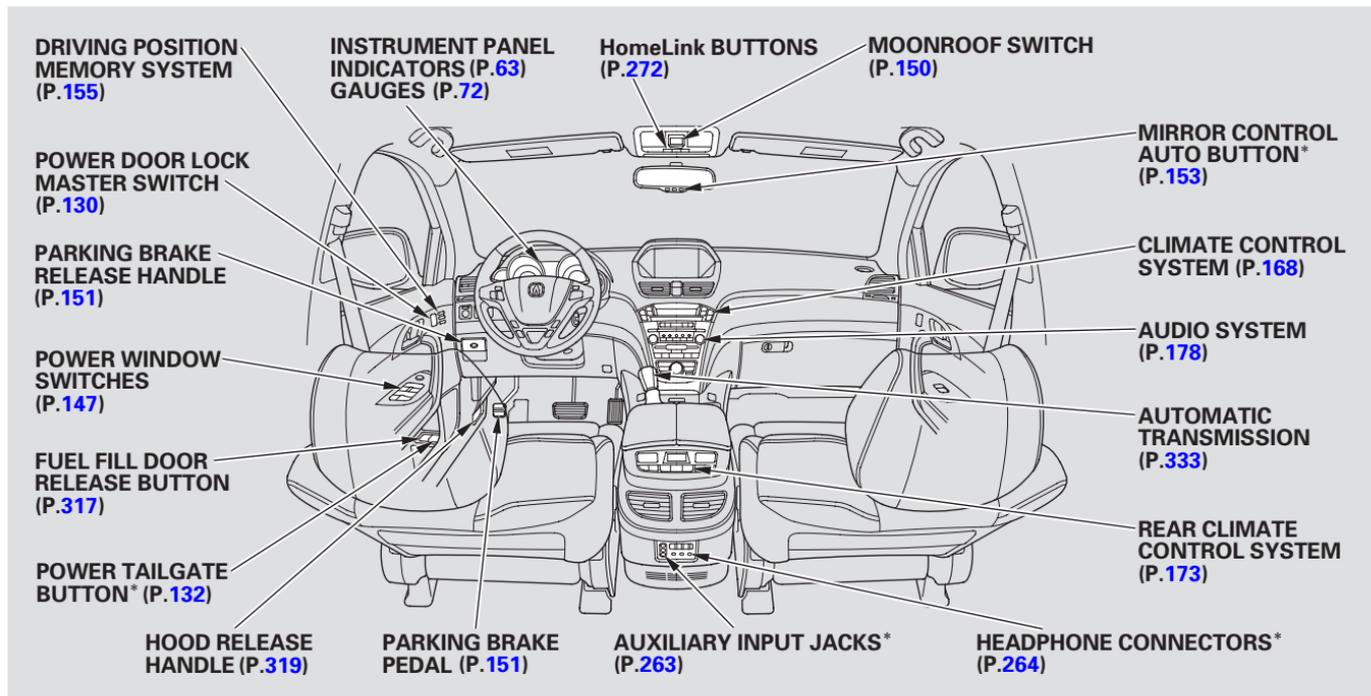
- Cette automobile est équipée de coussins gonflables latéraux dans les sièges avant ainsi que de coussins gonflables latéraux de type rideau.
- Ne vous appuyez pas sur la porte.
- Consultez le Manuel du propriétaire pour en savoir plus.



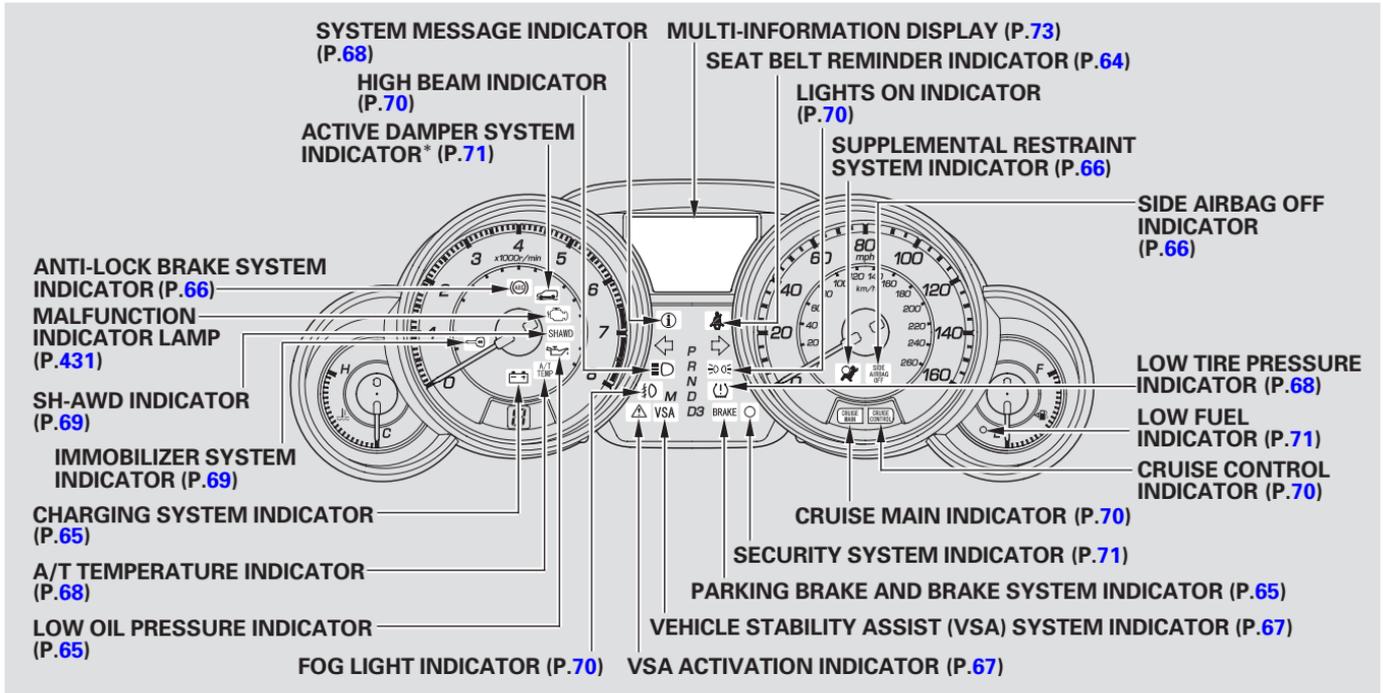
This section gives information about the controls and displays that contribute to the daily operation of your vehicle. All the essential controls are within easy reach.

Control Locations .....	62	Seat Heaters .....	146
Instrument Panel .....	63	Power Windows .....	147
Instrument Panel Indicators.....	64	Moonroof .....	150
Gauges .....	72	Parking Brake .....	151
Multi-Information Display .....	73	Mirrors.....	152
Controls Near the Steering		Driving Position Memory	
Wheel.....	115	System.....	155
Windshield Wipers and		Interior Lights.....	157
Washers.....	116	Interior Convenience Items.....	160
Rear Window Wiper and		Beverage Holders.....	161
Washer.....	117	Console Compartment .....	162
Turn Signal and Headlights.....	118	Storage Compartment.....	162
Hazard Warning Button.....	122	Glove Box .....	162
Rear Window Defogger .....	122	Sunglasses Holder .....	163
Instrument Panel Brightness .....	123	Cargo Hooks .....	163
Steering Wheel Adjustments .....	124	Sun Visor .....	164
Keys and Locks.....	126	Vanity Mirror .....	164
Immobilizer System.....	128	Accessory Power Sockets.....	164
Ignition Switch .....	129	AC Power Outlet.....	165
Door Locks .....	130		
Childproof Door Locks .....	131		
Tailgate .....	131		
Power Tailgate .....	132		
Remote Transmitter .....	135		
Seats .....	140		
Detachable Anchor.....	144		

# Control Locations



\*: If equipped



\* : If equipped

\* : The U.S. instrument panel is shown. Differences for the Canadian models are noted in the text.

## Instrument Panel Indicators

---

The instrument panel has many indicators to give you important information about your vehicle.



### **Seat Belt Reminder Indicator**

This indicator reminds you and your passengers to fasten your seat belts.

If you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position before fastening your seat belts, the beeper sounds, and the indicator flashes. If you do not fasten your seat belts before the beeper stops, the indicator stops flashing but remains on.

If your front passenger does not fasten their seat belt, the indicator comes on about 6 seconds after the ignition switch is turned to the ON (II) position.

If you continue driving without fastening your seat belt, the beeper sounds and the indicator flashes again at regular intervals, and you will also see a “FASTEN SEAT BELT” or “FASTEN PASSENGER SEAT BELT” message on the multi-information display (see page [81](#) ).

For more information, see page [20](#) .



### Low Oil Pressure Indicator

The engine can be severely damaged if this indicator flashes or stays on when the engine is running, or if a “CHECK ENGINE OIL LEVEL” message is on the multi-information display. For more information, see page [430](#).



### Charging System Indicator

If this indicator comes on when the engine is running, the battery is not being charged, and you will also see a “CHECK CHARGING SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display. For more information, see page [430](#).



### Malfunction Indicator Lamp

You will also see a “CHECK EMISSION SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display. For more information, see page [431](#).

U.S.

Canada



### Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator

This indicator has two functions:

1. It comes on when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. It is a reminder to check the parking brake. Driving with the parking brake not fully released can damage the rear brakes, axles, and tires.

If you drive without releasing the parking brake, a beeper will sound, and you will also see a “RELEASE PARKING BRAKE” message on the multi-information display (see page [81](#)).

2. If it stays on after you have fully released the parking brake while the engine is running, or if it comes on while driving, it can indicate a problem in the brake system. You will also see a “LOW BRAKE FLUID” or “CHECK BRAKE SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display (see pages [81](#)). For more information, see page [432](#).

## Instrument Panel Indicators

---



### Supplemental Restraint System Indicator

This indicator comes on briefly when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. If it comes on at any other time, it indicates a potential problem with your front airbags. This indicator will also alert you to a potential problem with your side airbags, passenger's side airbag automatic cutoff system, side curtain airbags, or automatic seat belt tensioners. You will also see a "CHECK AIRBAG SYSTEM" message on the multi-information display (see page 81 ). For more information, see page 33 .

U.S.



Canada



### Side Airbag Off Indicator

This indicator comes on when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. If it comes on at any other time, it indicates that the passenger's side airbag has automatically shut off. You will also see a "PASSENGER SIDE AIRBAG OFF" message on the multi-information display (see page 81 ). For more information, see page 33 .



### Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator

This indicator normally comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. If this indicator comes on at any other time, there is a problem in the ABS. If this happens, take the vehicle to your dealer to have it checked. With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no anti-lock function. You will also see a "CHECK ABS SYSTEM" message on the multi-information display (see page 81 ). For more information, see page 349 .

### **Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator**

This indicator normally comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.

If it comes on and stays on at any other time, or it does not come on when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, there is a problem with the VSA system. You will also see a “CHECK VSA SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display (see page 81). Take your vehicle to a dealer to have it checked. Without VSA, your vehicle still has normal driving ability, but will not have VSA traction and stability enhancement. For more information, see page 351.

This indicator may also come on if there is a problem with the trailer stability assist function (see page 367).

### **VSA Activation Indicator**

This indicator has four functions.

1. It comes on as a reminder that you have turned off the vehicle stability assist (VSA) system.
2. It flashes when VSA is active (see page 351).
3. It flashes when trailer stability assist is activating (see page 367).
4. It comes on along with the VSA system indicator if there is a problem with the VSA system. You will also see a “CHECK VSA SYSTEM” message and a “CHECK TRAILER STABILITY ASSIST” message on the multi-information display (see page 81).

This indicator normally comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II)

position. For more information, see page 351.



### **Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators**

The left or right turn signal indicator blinks when you signal a lane change or turn. If the indicator does not blink or blinks rapidly, it usually means one of the turn signal bulbs is burned out (see page 398). Replace the bulb as soon as possible, since other drivers cannot see that you are signaling.

When you press the hazard warning button, both turn signals blink. All turn signals on the outside of the vehicle should flash.

## Instrument Panel Indicators

---



### Low Tire Pressure Indicator

This indicator normally comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.

If it comes on while driving, it indicates that one or more of your vehicle's tires are extremely low on pressure.

You will also see a "CHECK TIRE PRESSURE" message on the multi-information display (see page 82).

If this happens, pull to the side of the road when it is safe, check which tire has lost pressure on the multi-information display, and determine the cause. If it is because of a flat tire, have the flat tire repaired as soon as possible. If two or more tires are underinflated, call a professional towing service. For more information, see page 433.



### A/T Temperature Indicator

This indicator monitors the temperature of the automatic transmission fluid. It should come on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. If it comes on while driving, it means the transmission fluid temperature is too high. Pull to the side of the road when it is safe, shift to Park, and let the engine idle until the indicator goes out.

You will also see an "A/T TEMP HIGH" message on the multi-information display (see page 82).

### NOTICE

*Continuing to drive with the A/T temperature indicator on may cause serious damage to the transmission.*



### Message Indicator

This indicator comes on when there is a system message on the multi-information display. Press the INFO button on the steering wheel (see page 73) to see the message (see page 81).

Most of the time, this indicator comes on along with other indicators in the instrument panel such as the seat belt reminder indicator, SRS indicator, VSA system indicator, etc.

### SH-AWD Indicator

This indicator normally comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. If this indicator comes on at any other time, there is a problem in the SH-AWD system. You will also see a “CHECK SH-AWD SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display (see page 82). Take your vehicle to a dealer to have it checked. For more information, see page 340.

If the indicator blinks while driving, it indicates the differential temperature is too high. You will also see a “SH-AWD DIFF TEMP. HIGH” message on the multi-information display (see page 82).

Pull to the side of the road when it is safe, shift to Park, and let the engine idle until the indicator goes out.

#### **NOTICE**

*Continuing to drive with the SH-AWD indicator blinking may cause serious damage to the system.*



### Immobilizer System Indicator

This indicator comes on briefly when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. It will then go off if you have inserted a properly-coded ignition key. If it is not a properly-coded key, the indicator will blink, and the engine’s fuel system will be disabled. (see page 128).

## Instrument Panel Indicators

---



### Lights On Indicator

This indicator reminds you that the exterior lights are on. It comes on when the light switch is in either the  or  position. This indicator will also come on when the light switch is in AUTO and the lights turn on automatically. If you turn the ignition switch to the ACCESSORY (I) or the LOCK (0) position without turning off the light switch, this indicator will remain on. A reminder chime will also sound when you open the driver's door.



### Fog Light Indicator

This indicator comes on when you turn on the fog lights. For more information, see page [120](#).



### High Beam Indicator

This indicator comes on with the high beam headlights. For more information, see page [118](#).



### Cruise Main Indicator

This indicator comes on when you turn on the cruise control system by pressing the CRUISE button (see page [266](#)).



### Cruise Control Indicator

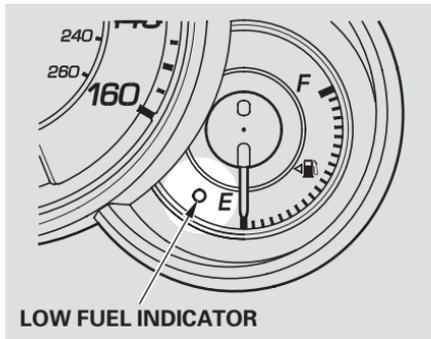
This indicator comes on when you set the cruise control. See page [266](#) for information on operating the cruise control.



### Active Damper System Indicator

This indicator normally comes on when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II), and remains on until the engine starts. If this indicator comes on at any other time, there is a problem in the system. While this indicator is on, the comfort button will not work, and the system will not function. You will also see a "CHECK ADS SYSTEM" message on the multi-information display. Have the vehicle checked by your dealer as soon as possible. For more information, see page [353](#).

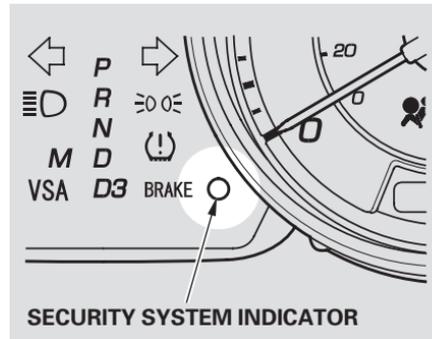
### Low Fuel Indicator



This indicator comes on as a reminder that you must refuel soon.

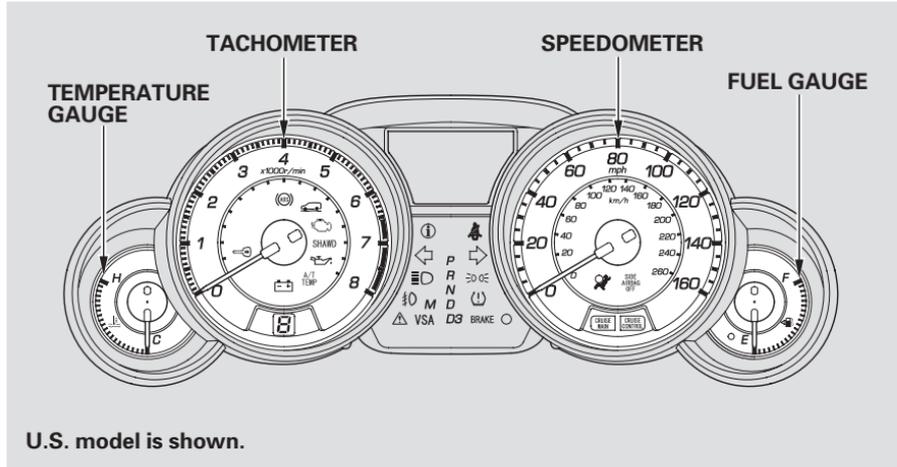
When the indicator comes on, there is about 1.8 US gal (7.0 l) of fuel remaining in the tank before the needle reaches E. There is a small reserve of fuel remaining in the tank when the needle does reach E. You will also see a "LOW FUEL" message on the multi-information display (see page [82](#)).

### Security System Indicator



This indicator comes on when the security system is set. See page [265](#) for more information on the security system.

# Gauges



## Temperature Gauge

This shows the temperature of the engine's coolant. During normal operation, the pointer should rise to about the middle of the gauge. In severe driving conditions, the pointer may rise to the upper zone. If it reaches the red (hot) mark, pull safely to the side of the road. For

instructions and precautions on checking the engine's cooling system, see page [428](#).

## Fuel Gauge

This shows how much fuel you have. It may show slightly more or less than the actual amount.

### NOTICE

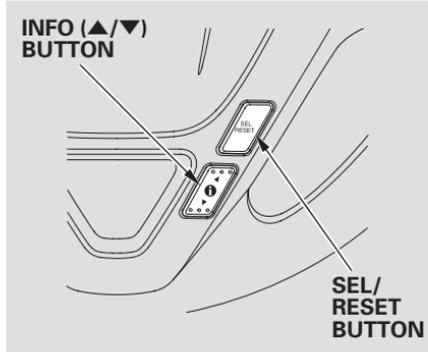
*Avoid driving with an extremely low fuel level. Running out of fuel could cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.*

## Multi-Information Display

The multi-information display in the instrument panel displays various information and messages when the ignition switch is in the ON (II) position. Some of the messages help you operate your vehicle more comfortably.

Others help to keep you aware of the periodic maintenance your vehicle needs for continued trouble-free driving.

When you open the driver's door, a "Welcome" message is shown on the multi-information display. When you turn the ignition switch from the ON (II) position to the ACCESSORY (I) position, a "Goodbye" message is shown on the display.



To change the display, press the INFO (▲/▼) button on the steering wheel repeatedly until the main menu appears (see page 74 ).

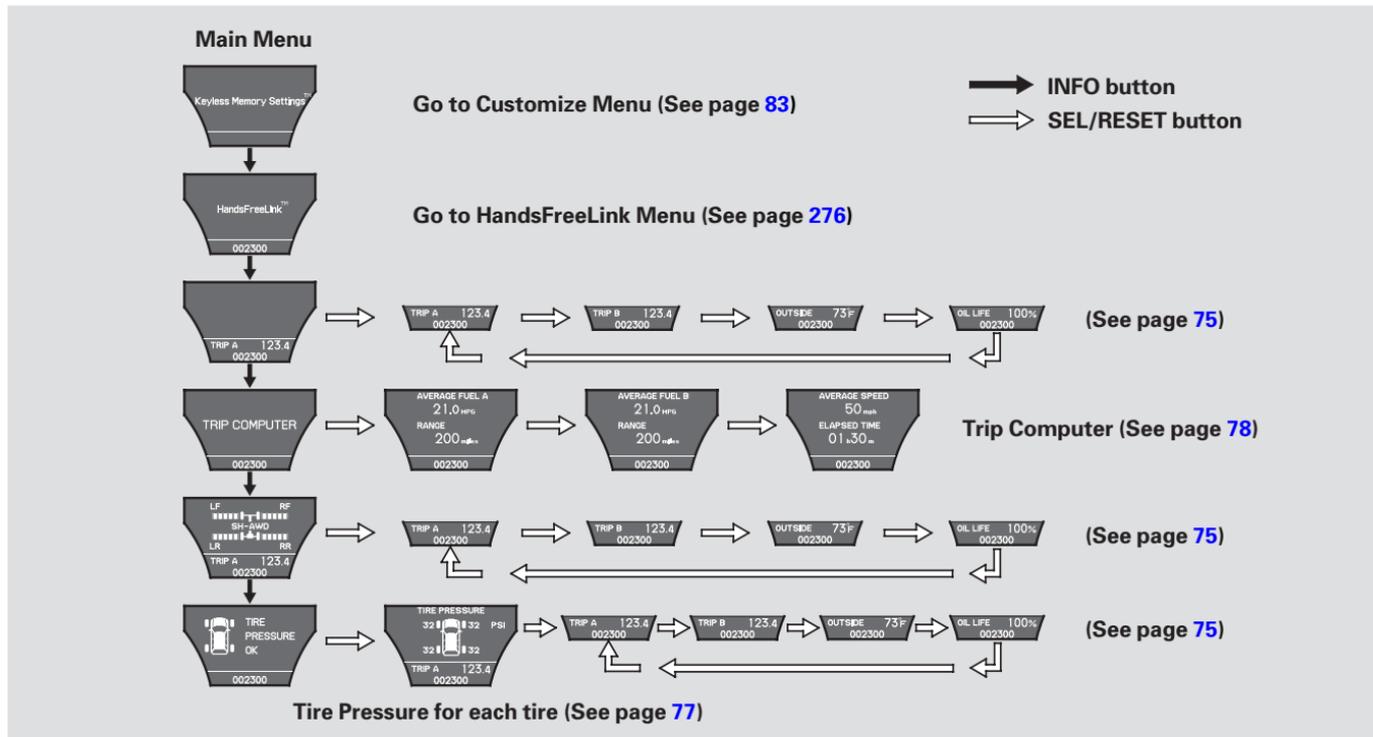
With the ignition switch in the ON (II) position, the multi-information display changes as shown in the next page each time you press the INFO (▲/▼) button or SEL/RESET button.

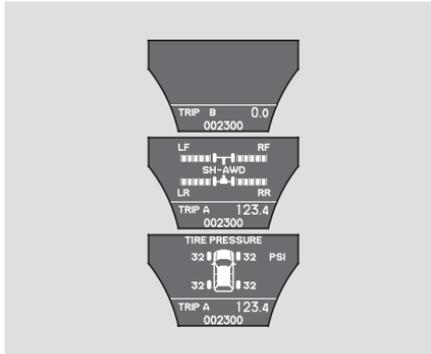
When you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, what you last selected is displayed.

In the multi-information display, the system message is also displayed (see page 80 ) and you can customize your vehicle control settings (see page 83 ).

CONTINUED

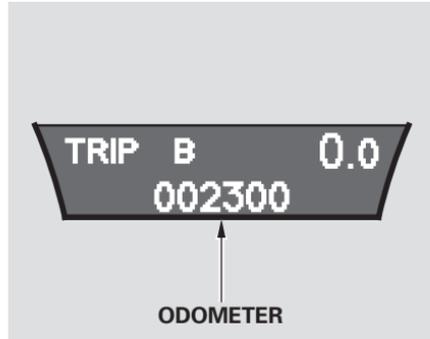
# Multi-Information Display





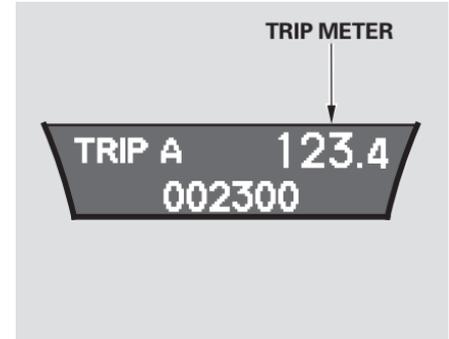
When the main menu is blank, SH-AWD or TIRE PRESSURE, pressing the SEL/RESET button changes the display to “trip meter/odometer” “outside temperature/odometer” and “engine oil life/odometer”.

## Odometer



The odometer shows the total distance your vehicle has been driven. It measures miles in U.S. models and kilometers in Canadian models. It is illegal under U.S. federal law and Canadian provincial regulations to disconnect, reset, or alter the odometer with the intent to change the number of miles or kilometers indicated.

## Trip Meter



This meter shows the number of miles (U.S.) or kilometers (Canada) driven since you last reset it. There are two trip meters: Trip A and Trip B. Each trip meter works independently, so you can keep track of two different distances.

To reset a trip meter, display it, and then press and hold the SEL/RESET button until the number resets to “0.0.”

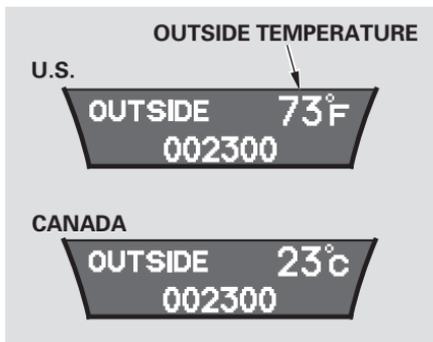
*CONTINUED*

## Multi-Information Display

When you reset Trip A, average fuel economy A is reset at the same time. When you reset Trip B, average fuel economy B is reset.

In the customizing mode, you can set Trip A and average fuel economy A to reset at the same time when you refuel your vehicle (see page 92).

### Outside Temperature

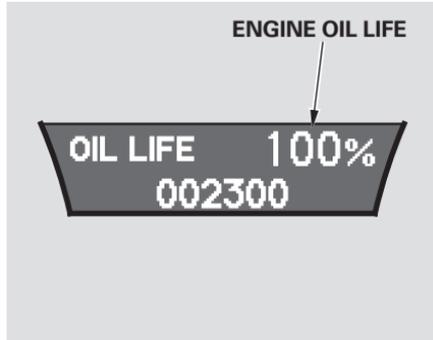


This shows the outside Fahrenheit temperature in U.S. models, and Centigrade temperature in Canadian models.

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. The temperature reading can be affected by heat reflection from the road surface, engine heat, and the exhaust from surrounding traffic. This can cause an incorrect temperature reading when your vehicle speed is under 19 mph (30 km/h). When you start your trip, the sensor is not fully acclimatized, therefore it may take several minutes until the proper temperature is displayed.

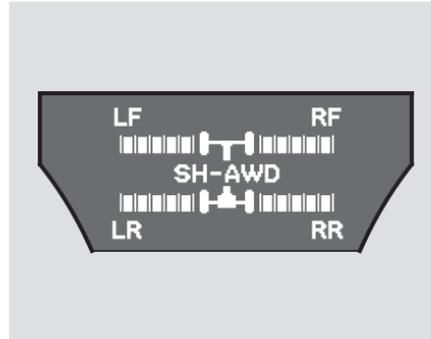
In certain weather conditions, temperature readings near freezing (32°F, 0°C) could mean that ice is forming on the road surface. You can adjust the outside temperature display (see page 91).

## Engine Oil Life



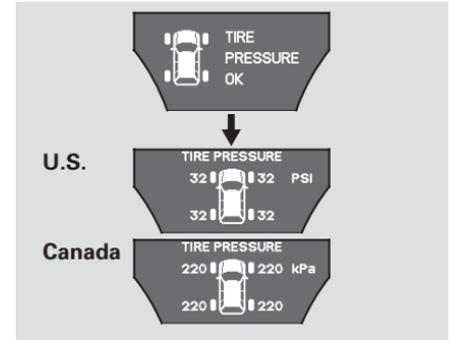
This shows the remaining life of the engine oil. It shows 100% after the engine oil is replaced and the display is reset. The engine oil life is calculated based on engine operating conditions and accumulated engine revolutions. For more information, see page 375.

## SH-AWD Torque Distribution Monitor



This monitor shows how much torque is being delivered to each wheel. For more information, see page 340.

## Tire Pressure Monitor

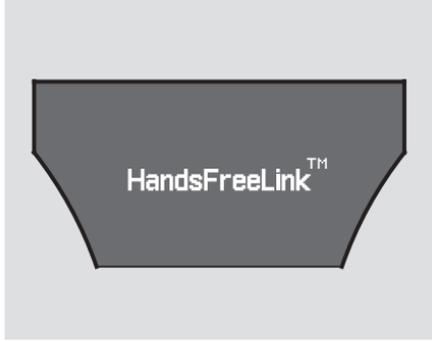


When the tire pressure monitor is shown on the multi-information display, press the SEL/RESET button. The display changes as shown. You can see the pressure of each tire in this monitor. If one or more tires are low, inflate them to the correct pressure. For more information, see page 343.

## Multi-Information Display

---

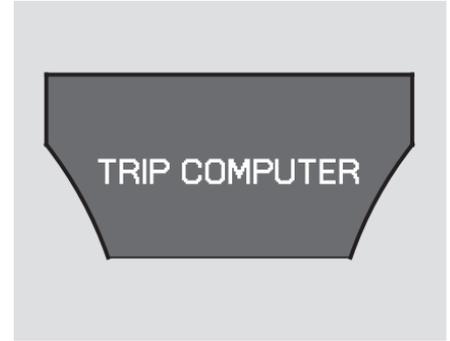
### HandsFreeLink™



You can receive or make phone calls from your cellphone through your vehicle's HandsFreeLink (HFL) system without touching your cellphone.

To use the system, your cellphone and the HFL system must be linked. Not all cellphones are compatible with this system. Refer to page [276](#) for instructions on how to link your cellphone to the HFL and how to receive or make phone calls, or visit the [handsfreelink.com](http://handsfreelink.com) website.

### Trip Computer



When the main menu displays Trip Computer, pressing the SEL/RESET button changes the display to "AVERAGE FUEL A/RANGE" to "AVERAGE FUEL B/RANGE" and to "AVERAGE SPEED/ELAPSED TIME".

### ***AVERAGE FUEL A/B***

This shows your vehicle's average fuel economy in mpg (U.S. models) or liter/100 km (Canadian models) since you last reset the Trip A or Trip B.

You can customize the Trip A and AVERAGE FUEL A reset condition in the multi-information display (see page [92](#) ).

### ***RANGE***

This shows the estimated distance you can travel on the fuel remaining in the fuel tank. This distance is estimated from the fuel economy you received over the last several miles (U.S.) or kilometers (Canada), so it will vary with changes in speed, traffic, etc.

### ***AVERAGE SPEED***

This shows the average speed you are traveling in miles per hour (mph) for U.S. models or kilometers per hour (km/h) for Canadian models.

To reset the AVERAGE SPEED you have traveled, press and hold the SEL/RESET button until the number resets.

### ***ELAPSED TIME***

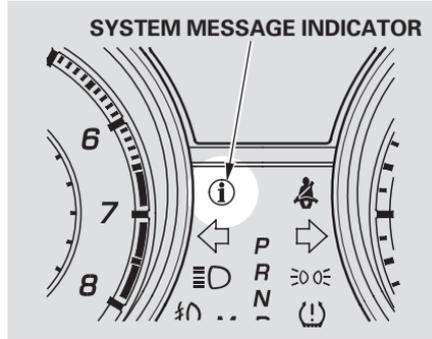
This shows the time passed traveled since you last reset it. When you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, ELAPSED TIME is reset.

If you want to reset the ELAPSED TIME manually, go to the trip computer's ELAPSED TIME display, and press and hold the SEL/RESET button until the number resets.

You can customize the ELAPSED TIME reset condition in the multi-information display (see page [94](#) ).

# Multi-Information Display

## System Messages



If there is a problem with your vehicle, for example, the engine oil level is low or a door is not fully closed, the multi-information display will show you the problem. It does this by interrupting the current display with one or more messages.

The system message(s) triggers the appropriate indicator(s) on the instrument panel, including the system message indicator, to come on. The system message indicator does not go off until the problem(s) is corrected.

You will also hear a beep when the system message indicator comes on for the first time.

Most of the messages are displayed for about 5 seconds, and then the normal display returns. If there are several system messages to be shown, the display switches these messages every 5 seconds.

To cancel the message(s) before 5 seconds elapsed, press the INFO (▲/▼) button on the steering wheel.

Even if you press the INFO (▲/▼) button, some messages stay on or come on again at regular intervals until the problem is corrected.

You can see the message(s) again by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly if the system message indicator remains lit on the instrument panel.

Here is a list of all messages:

# Multi-Information Display

	See page 11
	See page 20
	See page 20
	See page 33
<p><b>U.S.</b></p>  <p><b>Canada</b></p> 	See page 33

<p><b>U.S.</b></p> 	See page 151
<p><b>Canada</b></p> 	
<p><b>U.S.</b></p> 	See page 432
<p><b>Canada</b></p> 	
<p><b>U.S.</b></p> 	See page 432
<p><b>Canada</b></p> 	

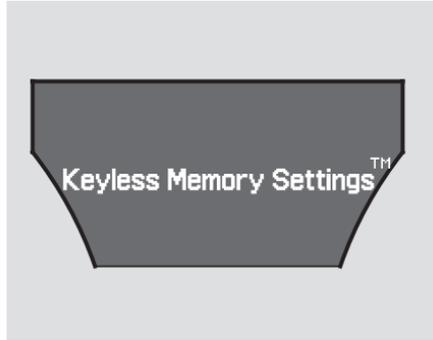
	See page 430
	See page 431
	See page 430
	See page 349
	See page 351
	See page 368

CONTINUED

# Multi-Information Display

	See page 345		See page 341		See page 332
	See page 346		See page 341		See page 121
	See page 346		See page 333		
	See page 68		See page 354		See page 376
<b>U.S.</b> 	See page 134		See page 392		See page 318
<b>Canada</b> 				See page 71	

### Customize Settings



When the main menu displays “Keyless Memory Settings™,” you can customize some vehicle control settings.

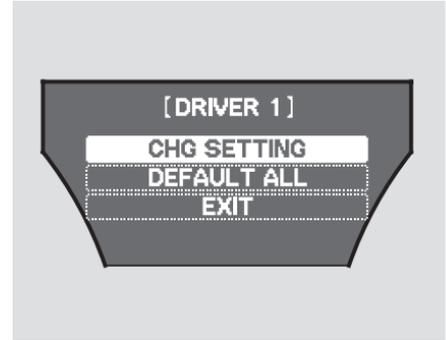
To enter the customizing mode, press the SEL/RESET button.

To change the settings, the ignition switch must be in the ON (II) position, and the vehicle must be stopped with the transmission in Park.

If you turn the ignition switch to the ACCESSORY (I) or the LOCK (0) position, or move the shift lever out of Park, the display will change to the normal screen.

You can customize some vehicle control settings for “DRIVER 1” and “DRIVER 2” separately. If “DRIVER 1” or “DRIVER 2” is not displayed, customizing is not possible.

To have the driver’s ID detected, make sure your remote transmitter is linked to the system (see Keyless Memory Settings™ on page 139 ).



If you want the settings as they were when the vehicle left the factory, select DEFAULT ALL, as described on page 86 .

If you want to change any vehicle control settings, select CHG SETTING, then press the SEL/RESET button.

Refer to the table on the following pages about the settings you want to customize. *CONTINUED*

## Multi-Information Display

Group Setup	Menu Item	Description	Setting Option		Page
METER SETUP (P.89)	LANGUAGE SELECTION	Changes the language used in the display.	ENGLISH*		90
			FRENCH		
			SPANISH		
	ADJUST OUTSIDE TEMP. DISPLAY	Changes the outside temperature reading above or below its current reading.	-5°F ~ ±0°F* ~ 5°F (U.S.)		91
			-3°C ~ ±0°C* ~ 3°C (Canada)		
	TRIP A & AVG. FUEL RESET with REFUEL	Causes trip meter A and the average fuel economy to reset when you refuel.	ON		92
			OFF*		
	ADJUST ALARM VOLUME	Changes the indicator alarm volumes into three levels.	HIGH		93
			MID*		
			LOW		
ELAPSED TIME RESET	Resets the elapsed time of your current trip.	MANUAL ONLY		94	
		IGN OFF*	TRIP B		
		TRIP A			
AUTO INTERIOR ILLUMINATION	Changes the interior light sensitivity to your liking.	MAX	LOW	95	
		HIGH	MIN		
		MID*	OFF		
POSITION SETUP (P.97)	MEMORY POSITION LINK	Changes the driver's seat, the steering wheel, and the outside mirror positions to a stored setting.	ON*		98
			OFF		
	AUTO TILT & TELESCOPE STERING WHEEL	Moves the steering wheel fully in and up when the key is removed.	ON*		99
			OFF		

\* : Default setting

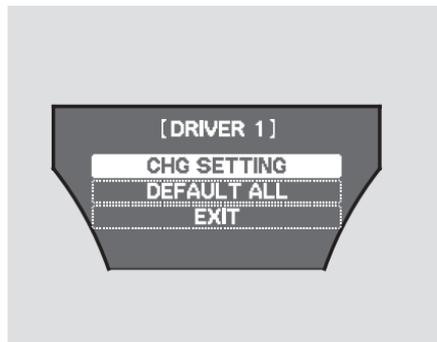
## Multi-Information Display

Group Setup	Menu Item	Description	Setting Option		Page
LIGHTING SETUP (P.100)	INTERIOR LIGHT DIMMING TIME	Changes how long (in seconds) the interior lights stay on after you close the doors and the tailgate.	60 sec	15 sec	101
			30 sec*		
	HEADLIGHT AUTO OFF TIMER	Changes how long (in seconds) the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door.	60 sec		102
			30 sec	0 sec	
	AUTO LIGHT SENSITIVITY	Changes the timing of when the headlights come on. The headlight switch needs to be in the AUTO position.	MAX	LOW	103
HIGH			MIN		
MID*					
DOOR/WINDOW SETUP (P.105)	AUTO DOOR LOCK	Changes the setting of when to automatically lock the doors.	SHIFT FROM P		106
			WITH VEH SPD*		
			OFF		
	AUTO DOOR UNLOCK	Changes the setting of when to automatically unlock the driver's/all the doors.	SHIFT TO P*	DRIVER DOOR/	107
			IGN OFF	ALL DOORS	
			OFF		
	KEY AND REMOTE UNLOCK MODE	Changes which doors unlock with the remote transmitter in a first push.	DRIVER DOOR*		109
			ALL DOORS		
	KEYLESS LOCK ACKNOWLEDGMENT	The exterior lights flash each time you press the LOCK or UNLOCK button. A beeper will also sound when you press the LOCK button twice.	ON*		110
			OFF		
SECURITY RELOCK TIMER	Changes how long it takes (in seconds) for the doors to relock and the security system to set after you unlock but do not open the door.	90 sec		111	
		60 sec			
		30 sec*			
WIPER SETUP (P.113)	WIPER ACTION	Changes the wiper operation between two settings when the wiper switch is in the INT position.	INTERMITTENT		113
			WITH VEH SPD*		
DEFAULT ALL (P.86)		Set/Cancel all the customized settings as default.	SET		86
			CANCEL		

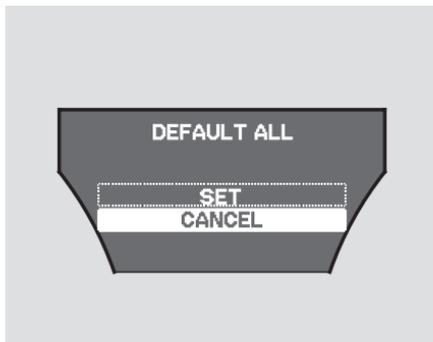
\* : Default setting

## Multi-Information Display

### DEFAULT ALL

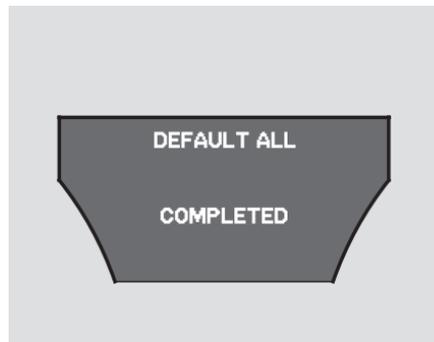


If you want to set the default settings, press the INFO (▲/▼) button to select DEFAULT ALL, then press the SEL/RESET button.



To set the default settings, press the INFO (▲/▼) button to select SET then press the SEL/RESET button.

If you want to cancel DEFAULT ALL, select CANCEL, then press the SEL/RESET button. The screen goes back to the previous display.



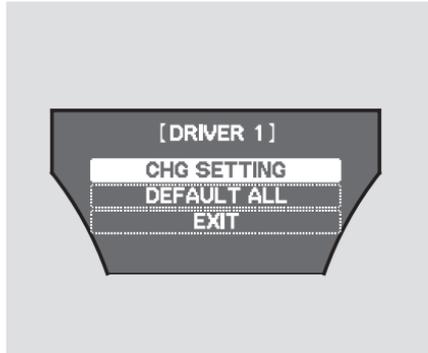
When DEFAULT ALL is set, you will see the above display for several seconds, then the screen returns to CUSTOMIZE ENTRY.

If the setting is not successfully completed, "FAILED" is shown for several seconds, and then the screen goes back to the normal message mode. Repeat the same procedure to select DEFAULT ALL.

### Customize Settings

You can customize some of the vehicle control settings to your preference. Here are the settings you can customize:

- METER SETUP
- POSITION SETUP
- LIGHTING SETUP
- DOOR/WINDOW SETUP
- WIPER SETUP



When you want to change the vehicle control settings, press the INFO (▲/▼) button to select CHG SETTING, then press the SEL/RESET button.

Each time you press the INFO (▲/▼) button, the screen changes as shown on the next page. Press the INFO (▲/▼) button, until you see the setup you want to customize, then press the SEL/RESET button to enter your selection.

CONTINUED



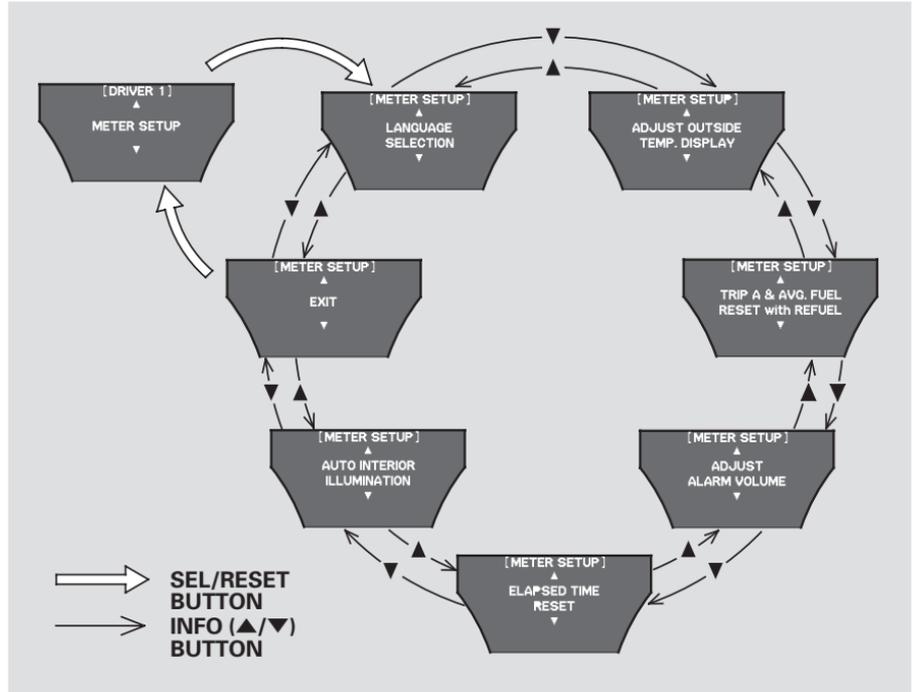
## Meter Setup

Here are the six custom settings for the meter setup:

- LANGUAGE SELECTION
- ADJUST OUTSIDE TEMP. DISPLAY
- TRIP A & AVG. FUEL RESET with REFUEL
- ADJUST ALARM VOLUME
- ELAPSED TIME RESET
- AUTO INTERIOR ILLUMINATION

While METER SETUP is shown, press the SEL/RESET button to enter the customize mode.

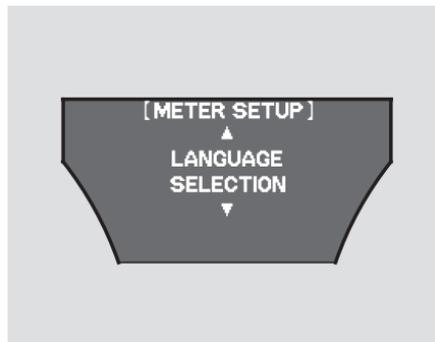
Each time you press the INFO (▲/▼) button, the screen changes as shown in the illustration. Press the INFO (▲/▼) button until you see the setting you want to customize, then press the SEL/RESET button to enter your selection.



CONTINUED

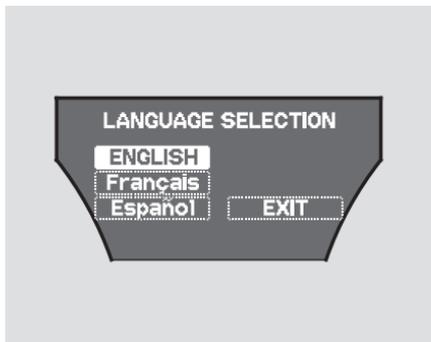
## Multi-Information Display

### Language Selection



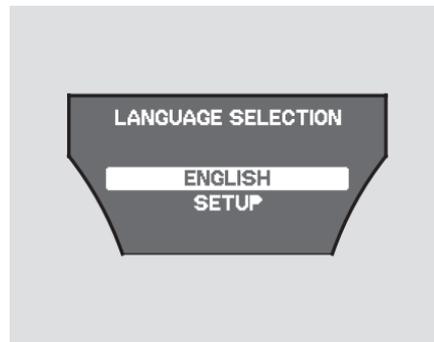
There are three language selections you can make: English, French, and Spanish. To choose the language you want, follow these instructions:

You can choose this customize item from "METER SETUP" by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly.



Press the SEL/RESET button to see the selections.

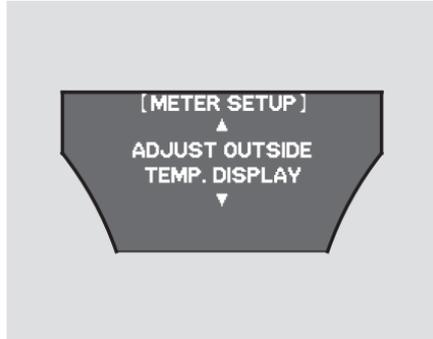
Select the desired language by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.



When your selection is successfully completed, the display changes as shown above, and then goes back to the customize item screen.

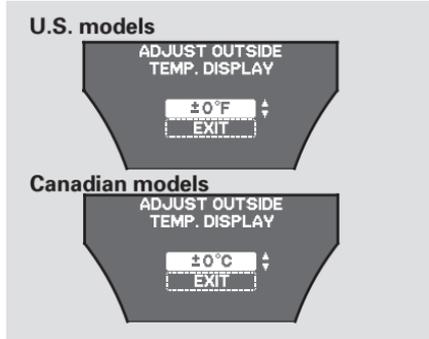
If the "SETTING INCOMPLETE" message appears, go back to "LANGUAGE SELECTION" and repeat the procedure again.

## Adjust Outside Temp. Display

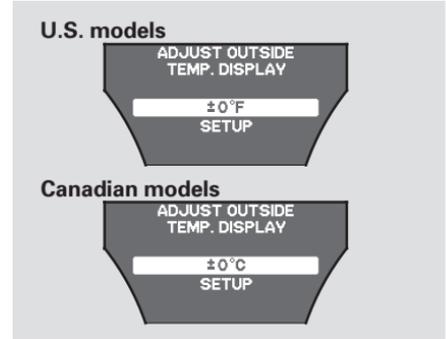


If you sometimes find that the temperature reading is a few degrees above or below the actual temperature, you can adjust it by following these instructions:

You can choose this customize item from "METER SETUP" by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly.



Adjust the outside temperature value by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly. Press the SEL/RESET button to set the desired value.



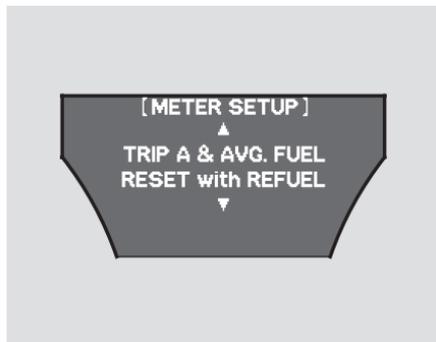
When your selection is successfully completed, the display changes as shown above, and then goes back to the customize item screen.

If the "SETTING INCOMPLETE" message appears, go back to "ADJUST OUTSIDE TEMP. DISPLAY" and repeat the procedure again.

CONTINUED

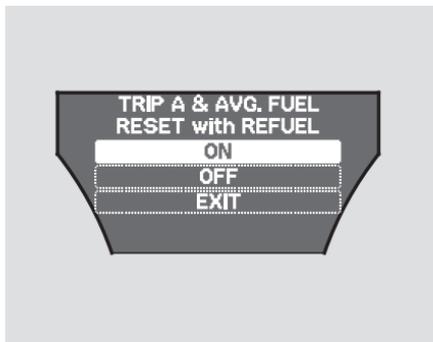
## Multi-Information Display

### *Trip A & Avg. Fuel Reset With Refuel*



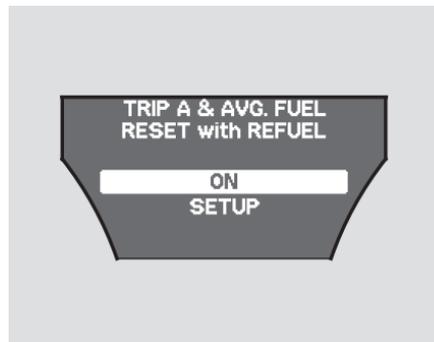
To cause Trip A and AVG. FUEL to reset every time you refuel your vehicle, follow these instructions:

You can choose this customize item from "METER SETUP" by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly.



Press the SEL/RESET button to see the selections.

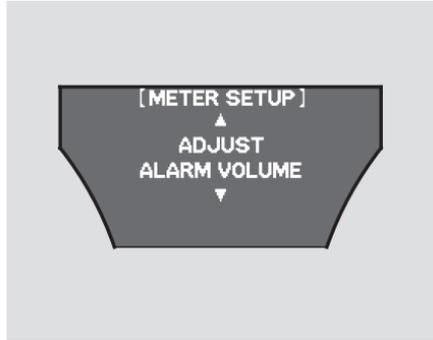
Select ON or OFF by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.



When your selection is successfully completed, the display changes as shown above, and then goes back to the customize item screen.

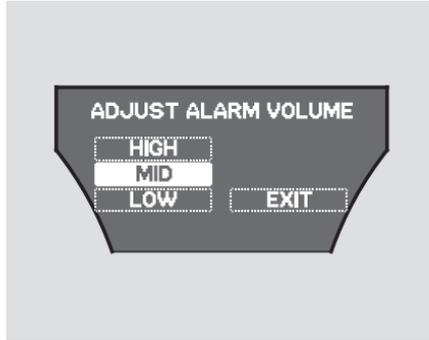
If the "SETTING INCOMPLETE" message appears, go back to "TRIP A & AVG. FUEL RESET with REFUEL" and repeat the procedure again.

### Adjust Alarm Volume



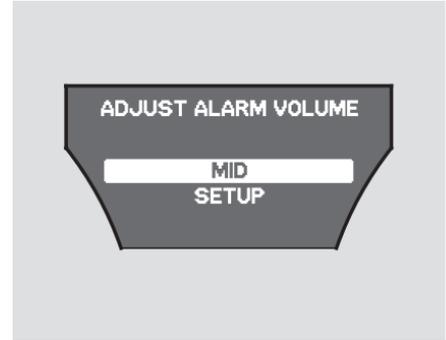
Select the warning alarm volume from three levels.

You can choose this customize item from "METER SETUP" by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly.



Press the SEL/RESET button to see the selections.

Select the desired level by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.



When your selection is successfully completed, the display changes as shown above, and then goes back to the customize item screen.

If the "SETTING INCOMPLETE" message appears, go back to "ADJUST ALARM VOLUME" and repeat the procedure again.

CONTINUED

## Multi-Information Display

### *Elapsed Time Reset*

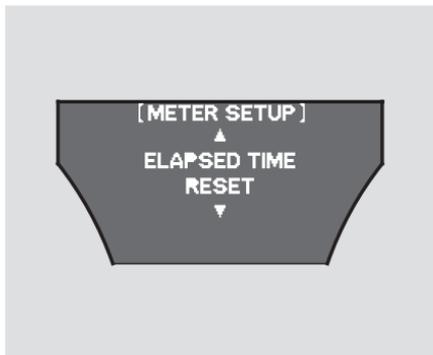
There are four elapsed time reset choices you can make:

**MANUAL ONLY** – You can reset the elapsed time, when Trip Computer's Elapsed Time is displayed (see page 79 ).

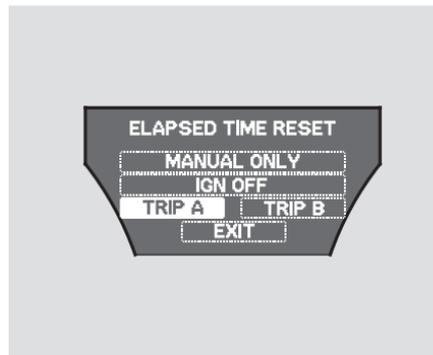
**IGN OFF** – The elapsed time is reset when you turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position.

**TRIP A** – The elapsed time is reset when the Trip A is reset.

**TRIP B** – The elapsed time is reset when the Trip B is reset.

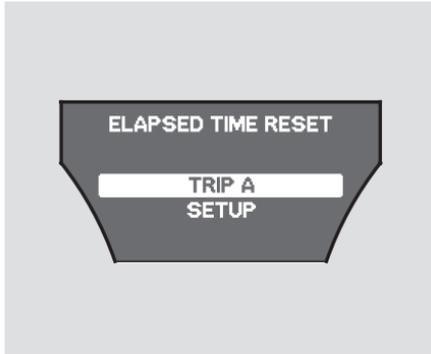


You can choose this customize item from "METER SETUP" by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly.



Press the SEL/RESET button to see the selections.

Select the desired setting by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.



When your selection is successfully completed, the display changes as shown above, and then goes back to the customize item screen.

If the "SETTING INCOMPLETE" message appears, go back to "ELAPSED TIME RESET" and repeat the procedure again.

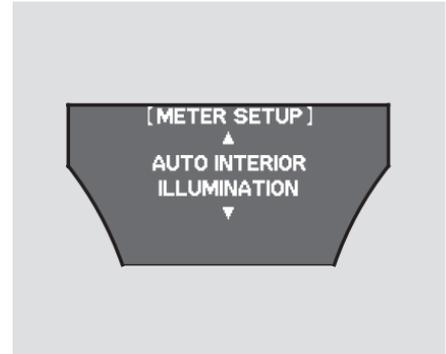
### *Auto Interior Illumination*

While the headlight switch is turned on, the interior lights gradually dim, as the outside light level gets low. You can customize at which outside light level the lights start to dim.

There are MAX, HIGH, MID, LOW and MIN levels and OFF for the auto interior illumination settings.

If you want the illuminations to start dimming as early as possible, select MAX. For illuminations to start dimming as late as possible, select MIN. Choose HIGH, MID, or LOW for levels in between.

To disable the auto interior illumination function, select OFF.

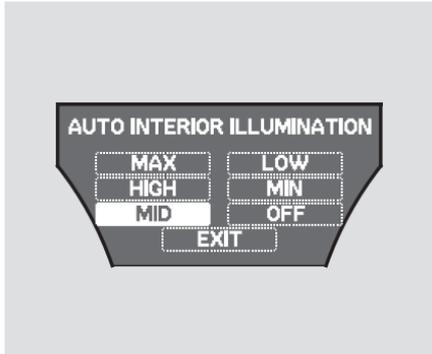


You can choose this customize item from "METER SETUP" by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly.

CONTINUED

## Multi-Information Display

---



Press the SEL/RESET button to see the selections.

Select the desired setting by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.



When your selection is successfully completed, the display changes as shown above, and then goes back to the customize item screen.

If the “SETTING INCOMPLETE” message appears, go back to “AUTO INTERIOR ILLUMINATION” and repeat the procedure again.

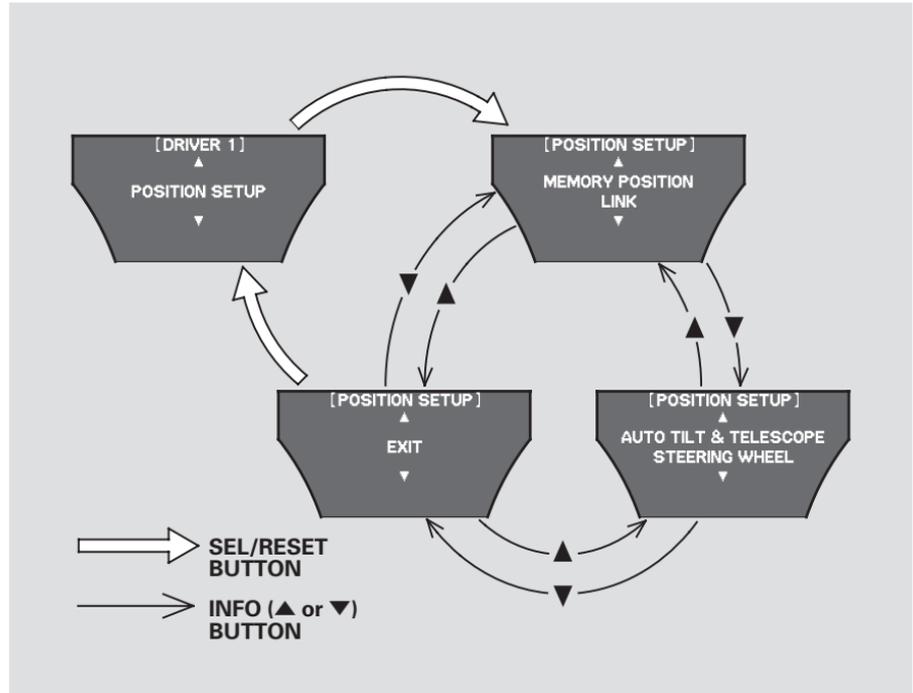
## Position Setup

Here are the two custom settings for the position setup:

- MEMORY POSITION LINK
- AUTO TILT & TELESCOPE STEERING WHEEL

While “POSITION SETUP” is shown, press the SEL/RESET button to enter the customize mode.

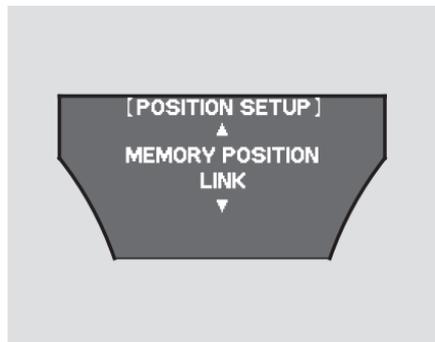
Each time you press the INFO (▲/▼) button, the screen changes as shown in the illustration. Press the INFO (▲/▼) button until you see the setting you want to customize, then press the SEL/RESET button to enter your selection.



CONTINUED

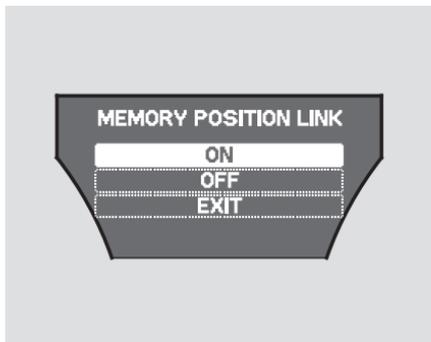
## Multi-Information Display

### Memory Position Link



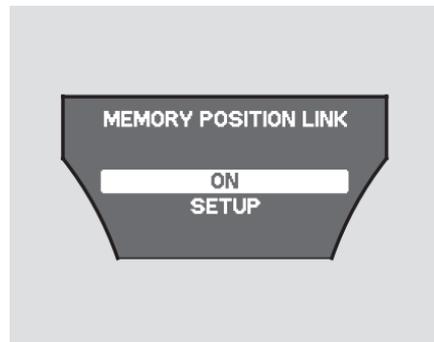
If “MEMORY POSITION LINK” is set to “ON,” the driver’s seat, the steering wheel, and outside mirror positions move to the position stored in the memory when you open the driver’s door, using the remote transmitter.

You can choose this customize item from “POSITION SETUP” by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly.



Press the SEL/RESET button to see the selections.

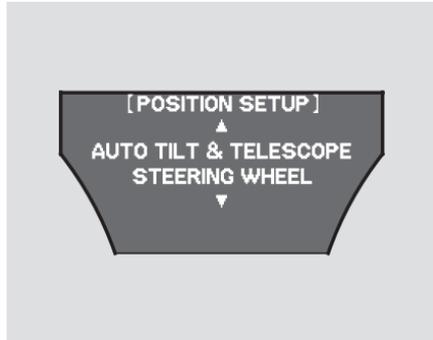
Select ON or OFF by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.



When your selection is successfully completed, the display changes as shown above, and then goes back to the customize item screen.

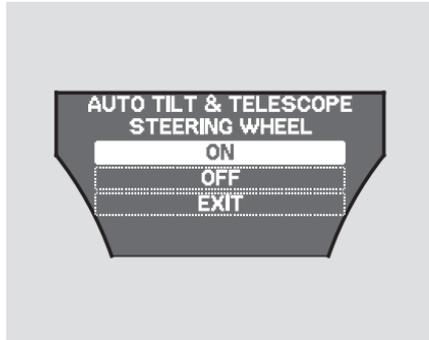
If the “SETTING INCOMPLETE” message appears, go back to “MEMORY POSITION LINK” and repeat the procedure again.

### Auto Tilt & Telescope Steering Wheel



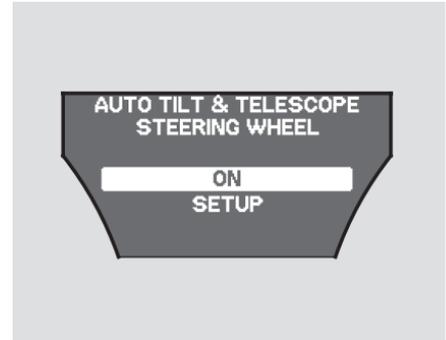
When “AUTO TILT & TELESCOPE STEERING WHEEL” is set to “ON,” the steering wheel automatically moves fully in and up when you turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position and remove the key.

You can choose this customize item from “POSITION SETUP” by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly.



Press the SEL/RESET button to see the selections.

Select ON or OFF by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.



When your selection is successfully completed, the display changes as shown above, and then goes back to the customize item screen.

If the “SETTING INCOMPLETE” message appears, go back to “AUTO TILT & TELESCOPE STEERING WHEEL” and repeat the procedure again.

CONTINUED

# Multi-Information Display

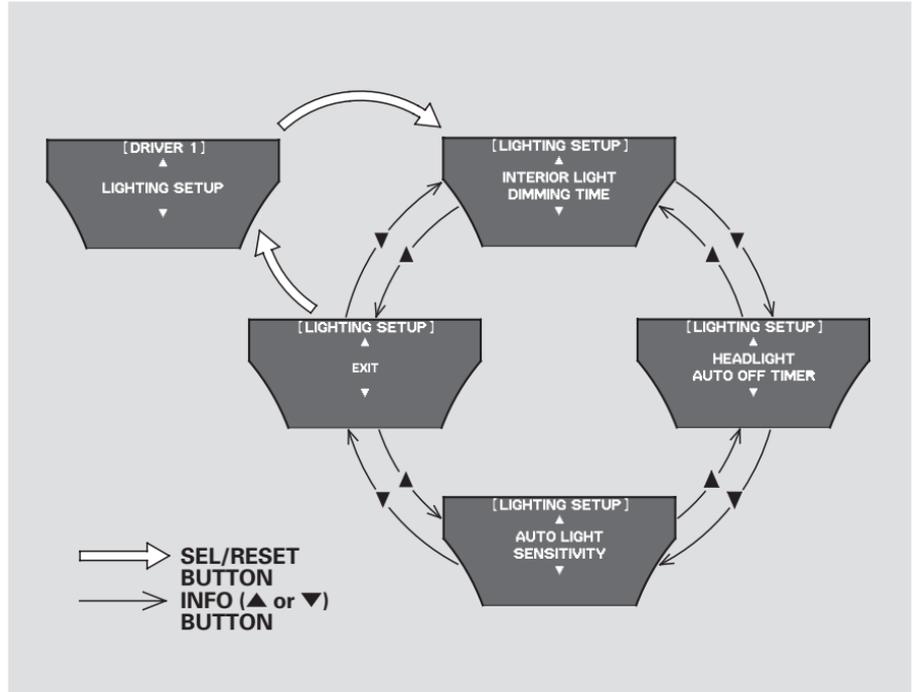
## Lighting Setup

Here are the three custom settings for the lighting setup:

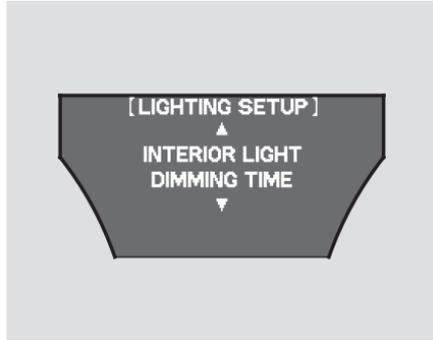
- INTERIOR LIGHT DIMMING TIME
- HEADLIGHT AUTO OFF TIMER
- AUTO LIGHT SENSITIVITY

While “LIGHTING SETUP” is shown, press the SEL/RESET button to enter the customize mode.

Each time you press the INFO (▲/▼) button, the screen changes as shown in the illustration. Press the INFO (▲/▼) button until you see the setting you want to customize, then press the SEL/RESET button to enter your selection.

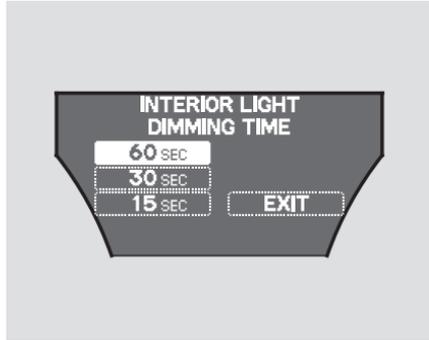


### Interior Light Dimming Time



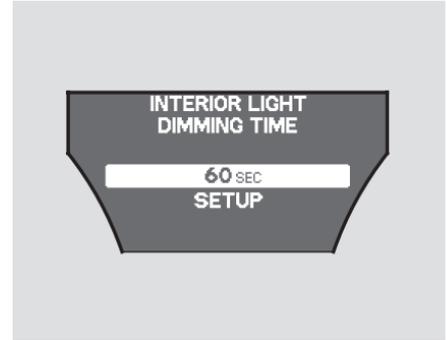
The interior lights fade out when you close all doors and tailgate. To change how long the lights stay on before they fade out, follow these instructions:

You can choose this customize item from "LIGHTING SETUP" by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly.



Press the SEL/RESET button to see the selections.

Select the desired setting by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.



When your selection is successfully completed, the display changes as shown above, and then goes back to the customize item screen.

If the "SETTING INCOMPLETE" message appears, go back to "INTERIOR LIGHT DIMMING TIME" and repeat the procedure again.

CONTINUED

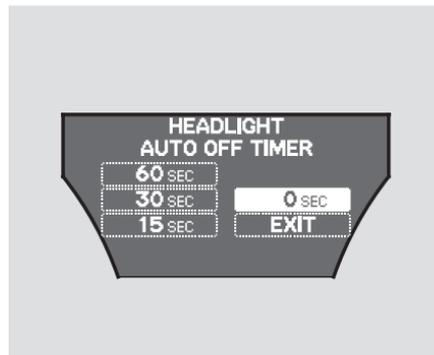
## Multi-Information Display

### *Headlight Auto Off Timer*

The headlights, parking lights, side marker lights, taillights, and license plate lights go off after the selected time when you remove the key from the ignition switch and close the driver's door. To change how long the lights stay on before they go off, follow these instructions:



You can choose this customize item from "LIGHTING SETUP" by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly.



Press the SEL/RESET button to see the selections.

Select the desired setting by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.



When your selection is successfully completed, the display changes as shown above, and then goes back to the customize item screen.

If the "SETTING INCOMPLETE" message appears, go back to "HEADLIGHT AUTO OFF TIMER" and repeat the procedure again.

### *Auto Light Sensitivity*

The headlights automatically come on when the headlight switch is in the AUTO position and the ambient light reaches a changeable level. You can select the auto light sensitivity from the following five levels:

MAX –

The headlights come on when it is bright.

HIGH –

The headlights come on when it is somewhat bright.

MID –

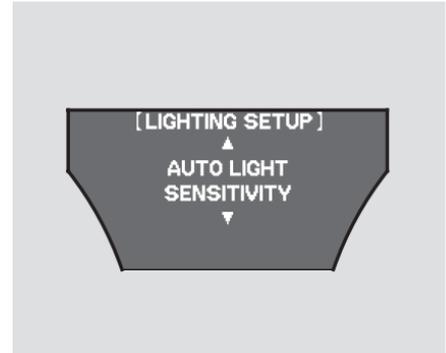
The headlights come on when it is as bright as sunset or sunrise.

LOW –

The headlights come on when it is somewhat dark.

MIN –

The headlights come on when it is dark.

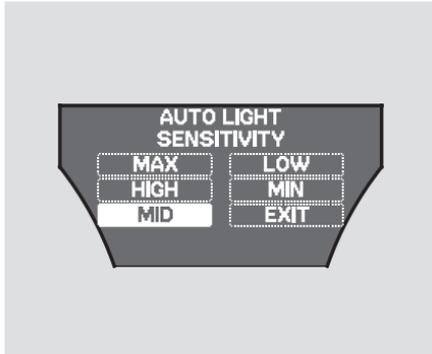


You can choose this customize item from "LIGHTING SETUP" by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly.

CONTINUED

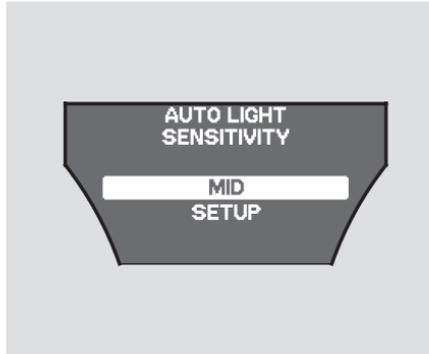
## Multi-Information Display

---



Press the SEL/RESET button to see the selections.

Select the desired setting by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.



When your selection is successfully completed, the display changes as shown above, and then goes back to the customize item screen.

If the "SETTING INCOMPLETE" message appears, go back to "AUTO LIGHT SENSITIVITY" and repeat the procedure again.

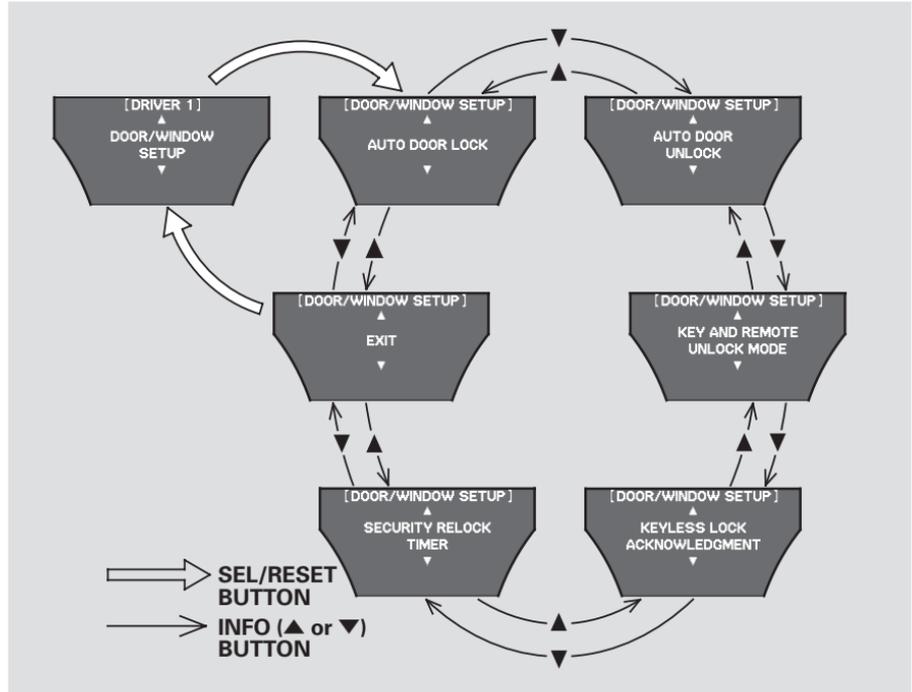
## Door/Window Setup

Here are the five custom settings for the door/window setup:

- AUTO DOOR LOCK
- AUTO DOOR UNLOCK
- KEY AND REMOTE UNLOCK MODE
- KEYLESS LOCK ACKNOWLEDGMENT
- SECURITY RELOCK TIMER

While “DOOR/WINDOW SETUP” is shown, press the SEL/RESET button to enter the customize mode.

Each time you press the INFO (▲/▼) button, the screen changes as shown in the illustration. Press the INFO (▲/▼) button until you see the setting you want to customize, then press the SEL/RESET button to enter your selection.



CONTINUED

## Multi-Information Display

### *Auto Door Lock*

There are three settings you can choose from:

#### SHIFT FROM P —

The doors lock whenever you move the shift lever out of Park.

#### WITH VEH SPD —

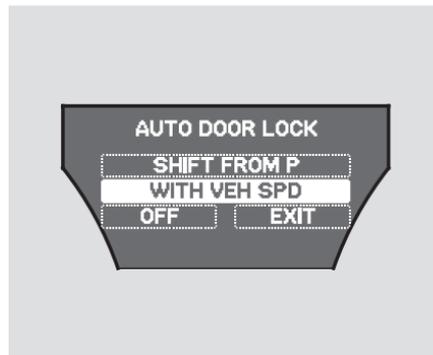
The doors lock when the vehicle speed reaches about 10 mph (about 15 km/h).

#### OFF —

The auto door lock is deactivated all the time.

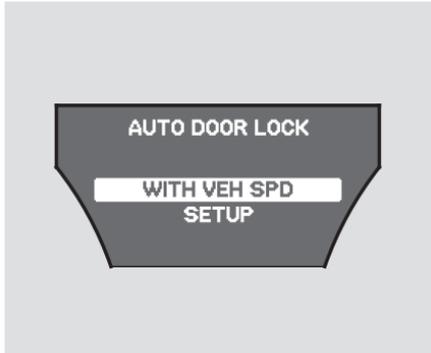


You can choose this customize item from “DOOR/WINDOW SETUP” by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly.



Press the SEL/RESET button to see the selections.

Select the desired setting by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.



When your selection is successfully completed, the display changes as shown above, and then goes back to the customize item screen.

If the “SETTING INCOMPLETE” message appears, go back to “AUTO DOOR LOCK” and repeat the procedure again.

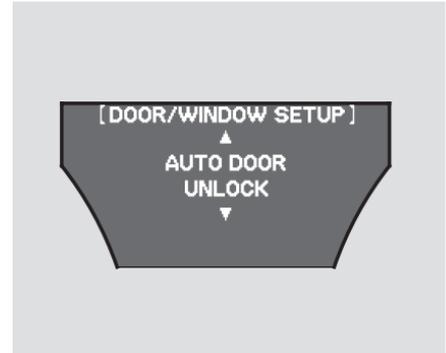
### *Auto Door Unlock*

There are three settings you can choose from:

**SHIFT TO P** – The driver’s door or all the doors, depending on the door lock mode setting ( see page 106 ), unlock when you move the shift lever to Park.

**IGN OFF** – The driver’s door or all the doors, depending on the door lock mode setting ( see page 106 ), unlock when you turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position.

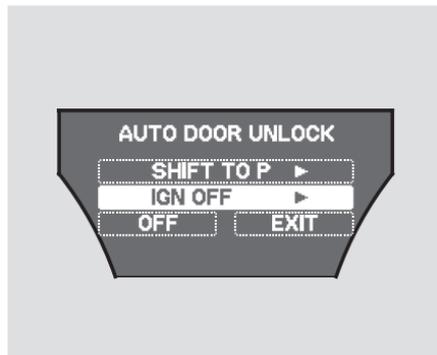
**OFF** – The auto door unlock is deactivated all the time. This is the factory default setting.



You can choose this customize item from “DOOR/WINDOW SETUP” by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly.

CONTINUED

## Multi-Information Display



Press the SEL/RESET button to see the selections.

Select the desired setting by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.



If you choose "SHIFT TO P" or "IGN OFF", you will see the above display.

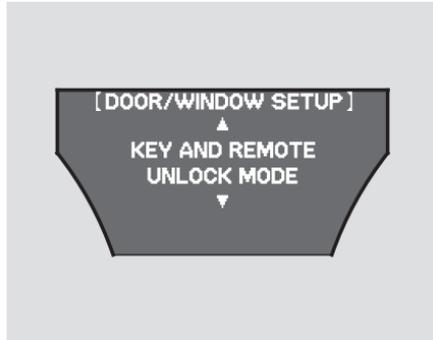
Press the INFO (▲/▼) button to switch the door lock mode setting between the driver's door and all doors. Then, press the SEL/RESET button to enter your selection.



When your selection is successfully completed, the display changes as shown above, and then goes back to the customize item screen.

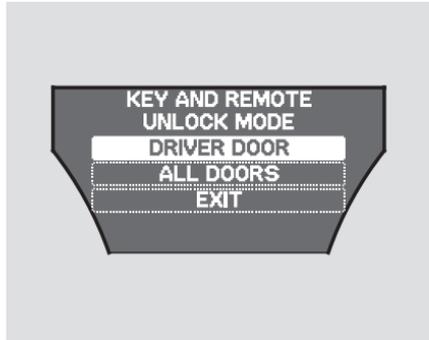
If the "SETTING INCOMPLETE" message appears, go back to "AUTO DOOR UNLOCK" and repeat the procedure again.

### Key and Remote Unlock Mode



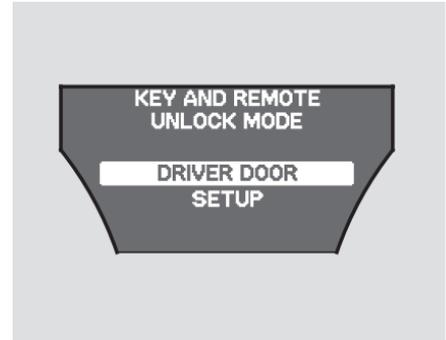
To select whether the driver's door unlocks or all the doors unlock when you unlock the doors with the remote transmitter, follow these instructions.

You can choose this customize item from "DOOR/WINDOW SETUP" by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly.



Press the SEL/RESET button to see the selections.

Select the desired setting by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.



When your selection is successfully completed, the display changes as shown above, and then goes back to the customize item screen.

If the "SETTING INCOMPLETE" message appears, go back to "KEY AND REMOTE UNLOCK MODE" and repeat the procedure again.

CONTINUED

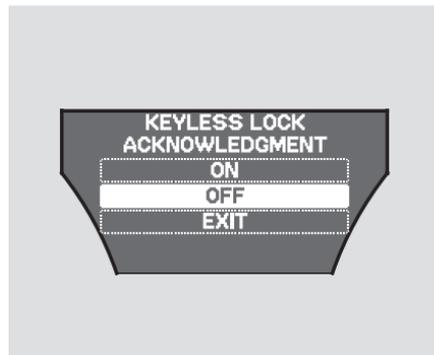
## Multi-Information Display

### *Keyless Lock Acknowledgment*

When you push the LOCK button on the remote transmitter, some exterior lights flash, and a beeper sounds when you push the LOCK button again within 5 seconds to verify that the doors and the tailgate are locked and the security system has set (see page 265). You can customize the exterior lights not to flash and the beeper not to sound.



You can choose this customize item from “DOOR/WINDOW SETUP” by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly.



Press the SEL/RESET button to see the selections.

Select ON or OFF by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.



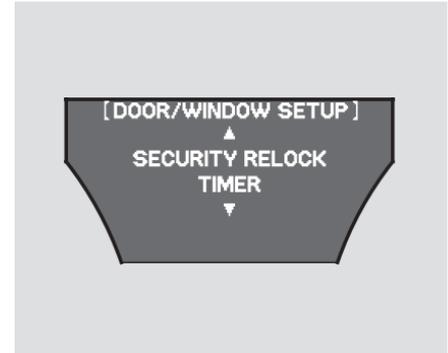
When your selection is successfully completed, the display changes as shown above, and then goes back to the customize item screen.

If the “SETTING INCOMPLETE” message appears, go back to “KEYLESS LOCK ACKNOWLEDGMENT” and repeat the procedure again.

### *Security Relock Timer*

If you unlock the doors and the tailgate with the remote transmitter, but do not open any of the doors or the tailgate within 30 seconds, the doors and the tailgate automatically relock and the security system sets.

You can change this relock time from 30 seconds to 60 or 90 seconds.

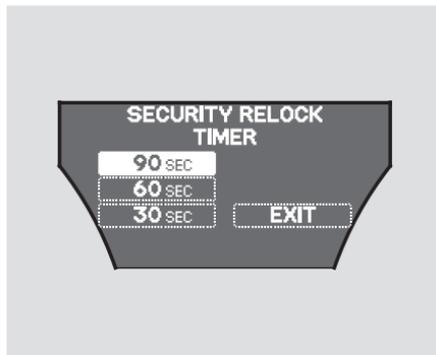


You can choose this customize item from “DOOR/WINDOW SETUP” by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly.

CONTINUED

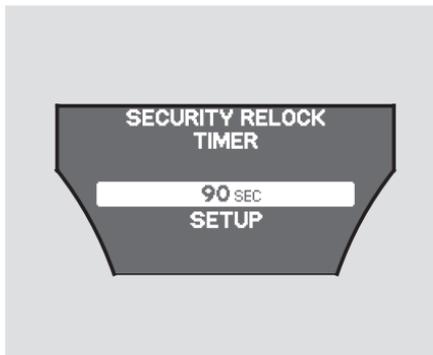
## Multi-Information Display

---



Press the SEL/RESET button to see the selections.

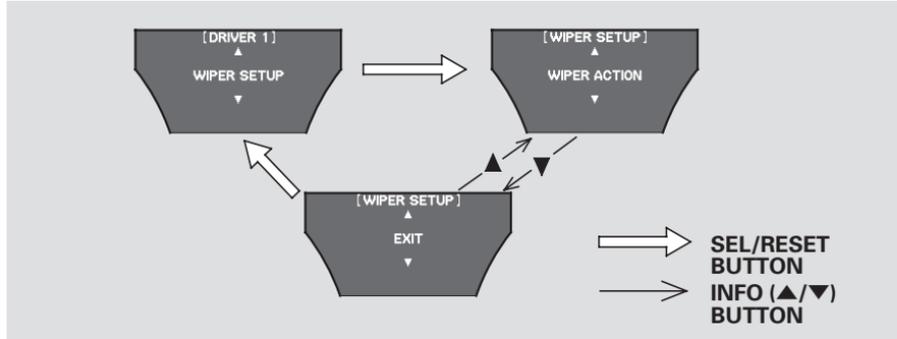
Select the desired setting by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.



When your selection is successfully completed, the display changes as shown above, and then goes back to the customize item screen.

If the “SETTING INCOMPLETE” message appears, go back to “SECURITY RELOCK TIMER” and repeat the procedure again.

## Wiper Setup



Here is one custom setting for the wiper setup:

- WIPER ACTION

While “WIPER SETUP” is shown, press the SEL/RESET button to enter the customize mode.

Each time you press the INFO (▲/▼) button, the screen changes as shown in the illustration. Press the INFO (▲/▼) button until you see the setting you want to customize, then press the SEL/RESET button to enter your selection.

### *Wiper Action*

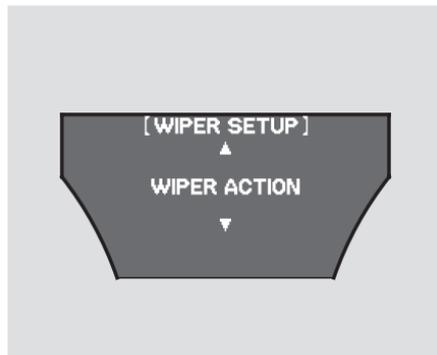
You can select from these two settings when the wiper switch is in the INT (intermittent) position:

**INTERMITTENT** – The intermittent operation varies according to the selection you make on the wiper lever’s intermittent control ring.

**WITH VEH SPD** – The intermittent operation varies according to vehicle speed.

CONTINUED

## Multi-Information Display



You can choose this customize item from “WIPER SETUP” by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button repeatedly.



Press the SEL/RESET button to see the selections.

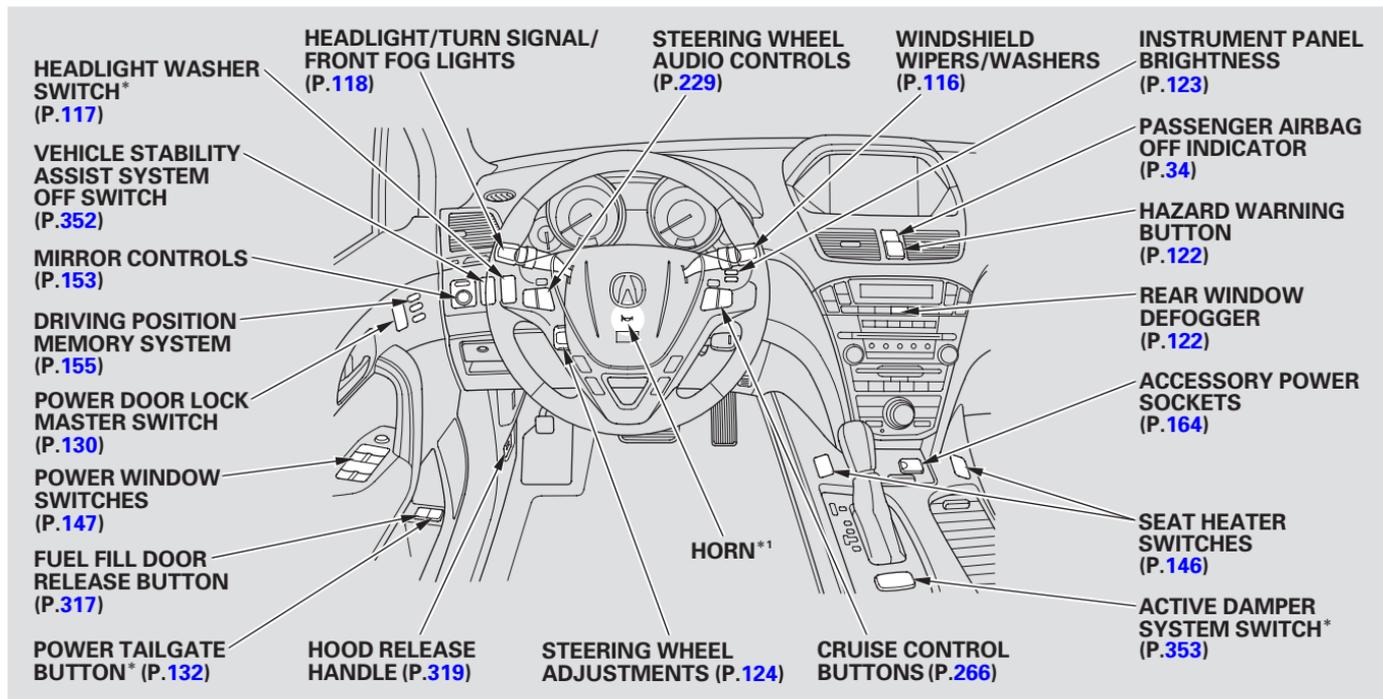
Select the desired setting by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then enter your selection by pressing the SEL/RESET button.



When your selection is successfully completed, the display changes as shown above, and then goes back to the customize item screen.

If the “SETTING INCOMPLETE” message appears, go back to “WIPER ACTION” and repeat the procedure again.

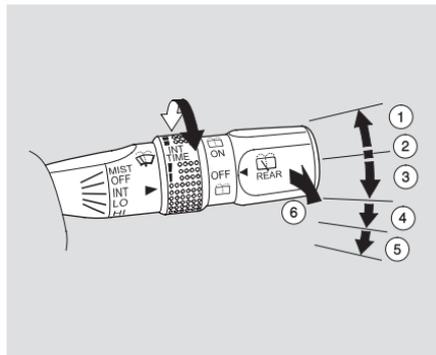
## Controls Near the Steering Wheel



Instruments and Controls

\*: If equipped  
\* 1: To use the horn, press the center pad of the steering wheel.

## Windshield Wipers and Washers



1. MIST
2. OFF
3. INT – Intermittent
4. LO – Low speed
5. HI – High speed
6. Windshield washers

Push the right lever up or down to select a position.

**MIST** – The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.

**OFF** – The wipers are not activated.

**INT** – The length of the wipe interval is varied automatically according to vehicle speed.

If you turn it to the shortest delay, the wipers change to low speed operation when the vehicle speed exceeds 12 mph (20 km/h).

To change the “WIPER ACTION” setting, see page [113](#).

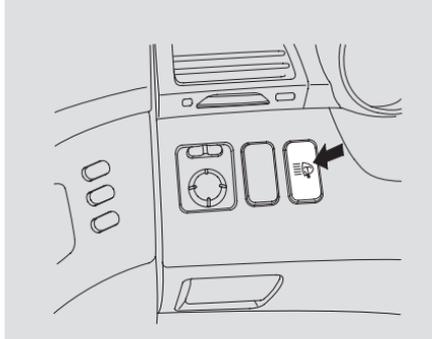
**LO** – The wipers run at low speed.

**HI** – The wipers run at high speed.

**Windshield Washer** – Pull back and hold the wiper control lever. The washers spray until you release the lever. The wipers run at low speed, then complete one more sweep after you release the lever.

# Windshield Wipers and Washers

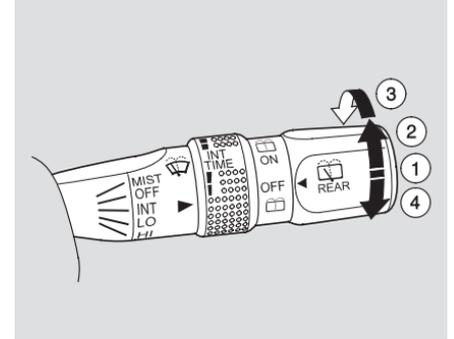
## Headlight Washers (On Canadian models)



The headlight washers can be operated at any time by pressing the headlight washer button located next to the steering wheel column. The headlights must be turned on to use this button. In addition, the headlight washer operates when the windshield washers are first turned on.

The headlight washers use the same fluid reservoir as the windshield washers.

## Rear Window Wiper and Washer



1. When you turn the wiper switch to the "OFF" position, the wiper will return to its parked position.
2. **ON** – Rotate the switch clockwise to turn the rear window wiper ON. The wiper operates intermittently.

CONTINUED

## Windshield Wipers and Washers, Turn Signal and Headlights

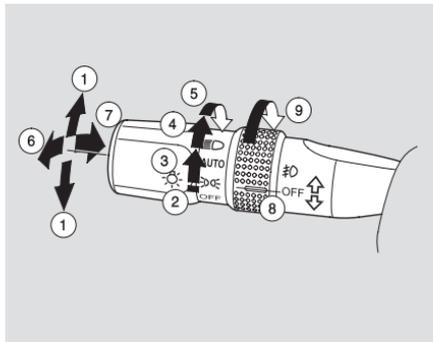
3. Hold past ON to turn the rear window wiper on and to spray the rear window washer.
4. Rotate the switch counterclockwise to spray the window washer.

When you shift the transmission to the reverse position with the front windshield wipers activated, the rear window wiper operates automatically.

When the wiper control lever position is INT, the rear wiper operates intermittently. When it is LO or HI, the rear wiper operates continuously.

The rear window washer uses the same fluid reservoir as the windshield washer.

### Turn Signal and Headlights



1. Turn signal
2. Off
3. Parking and indicator lights
4. AUTO
5. Headlights on
6. High beams
7. Flash high beams
8. Fog lights off
9. Fog lights on

**Turn Signal** — Push down on the lever to signal a left turn and up to signal a right turn. To signal a lane change, push lightly on the lever, and hold it. The lever will return to center when you release it or complete a turn.

**Headlights** — Turning the switch to the “” position turns on the parking lights, taillights, instrument panel lights, side-marker lights, and rear license plate lights.

Turning the switch to the “” position turns on the headlights. If you leave the lights on with the key removed from the ignition switch, you will hear a reminder chime when you open the driver’s door.

When the light switch is in either of these positions, the lights on indicator comes on as a reminder.

This indicator stays on if you leave the lights on and turn the ignition switch to the ACCESSORY (I) or LOCK (0) position.

**High Beams** – To switch from low beams to high beams, push the left lever forward until you hear a click. The blue high beam indicator will come on (see page 70 ). Pull it back to return to low beams. To flash the high beams, pull the lever back lightly, then release it. The high beams stay on as long as you hold the lever back.

**AUTO** – The automatic lighting feature turns on the headlights and all other exterior lights, when it senses low ambient light.

To turn on automatic lighting, turn the light switch to AUTO at any time. The lights will come on automatically when the outside light level becomes low (at dusk, for example). The lights on indicator comes on as a reminder. The lights and indicator will turn off automatically when the system senses high ambient light.

The lights will remain on when you turn off the ignition switch. They will turn off automatically when you remove the key and open the driver's door. To turn them on again, either turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position or turn the light switch to  .

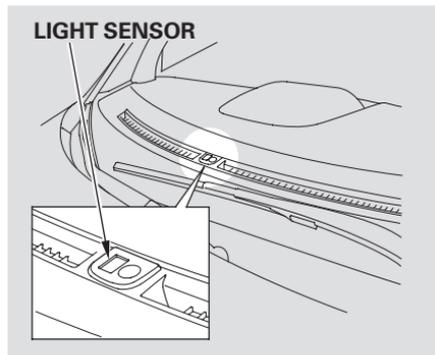
Even with the automatic lighting feature turned on, we recommend that you turn on the lights manually when driving at night or in a dense fog, or when you enter dark areas such as long tunnels or parking facilities.

To change the “AUTO LIGHT SENSITIVITY” setting, see page 103 .

Do not leave the light switch in AUTO if you will not be driving the vehicle for an extended period (a week or more). You should also turn off the lights if you plan to leave the engine idling or off for a long time.

# Headlights

---



The automatic lighting feature is controlled by a sensor located on top of the dashboard. Do not cover this sensor or spill liquids on it.

## Fog Lights

Turn the fog lights on and off by turning the switch next to the headlight switch.

You can use the fog lights only when the headlights are on low beam. With the light switch in the AUTO position, you can also use the fog lights when the headlights turn on automatically. They will go off when the headlights turn off.

## Daytime Running Lights

With the headlight switch off, the daytime running lights come on when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position and release the parking brake. They remain on until you turn the ignition switch off, even if you set the parking brake.

When the headlights are on, the daytime running lights are off.

If you see a “CHECK DRL SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display, there is a problem with the daytime running light system. Take your vehicle to a dealer to have it checked.

When the multi-information display shows a “DRL OFF” message, the daytime running lights are off. Follow the procedure in the left column to turn them on.

### **Automatic Lighting Off Feature**

This feature turns off the headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights within 15 seconds after you remove the key and close the driver’s door.

To change the “HEADLIGHT AUTO OFF TIMER” setting, see page [102](#).

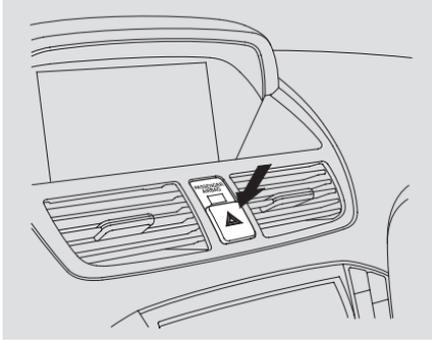
The automatic lighting off feature activates if you leave the headlight switch in the “ ” or “ ” position or if the lights are turned on by setting the switch in the “AUTO” position, and you remove the key, then open and close the driver’s door.

If you turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position with the headlight switch on, but do not open the door and get out, the lights turn off after 10 minutes (3 minutes, if the switch is in the “AUTO” position).

The lights turn on again when you unlock or open the driver’s door. If you unlock the door, but do not open it within 15 seconds, the lights go off. With the driver’s door open, you will hear a lights-on reminder chime.

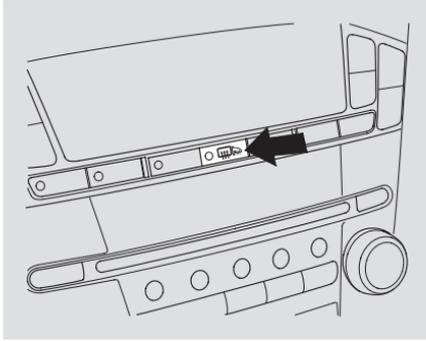
## Hazard Warning, Rear Window Defogger

### Hazard Warning Button



Push the button between the center vents to turn on the hazard warning lights (four-way flashers). This causes all four outside turn signals and both indicators in the instrument panel to flash. Use the hazard warning lights if you need to park in a dangerous area near heavy traffic, or if your vehicle is disabled.

### Rear Window Defogger



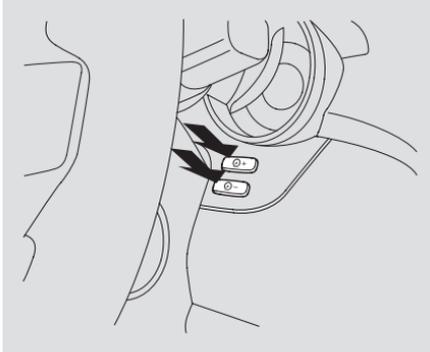
The rear window defogger will clear fog, frost, and thin ice from the window. Push the defogger button to turn it on and off. The indicator in the button lights to show the defogger is on. If you do not turn it off, the defogger will shut itself off after about 15 minutes. It also shuts off when you turn off the ignition. You have to turn it on again when you restart the vehicle.

Make sure the rear window is clear and you have good visibility before starting to drive.

The defogger wires on the inside of the rear window can be accidentally damaged. When cleaning the glass, always wipe side to side.

This button turns the rear window defogger off and on. Pushing this button also turns the mirror heaters on or off (see page [154](#)).

## Instrument Panel Brightness



Adjust the brightness of the instrument panel by pressing the + or - button. Press the + button to increase the brightness and the - button to decrease it. You can adjust the brightness with the headlight switch on or off.



The level of brightness is shown on the multi-information display while you adjust it. It goes out 5 seconds after you finish adjusting.

To reduce glare at night, the instrument panel illumination dims when you turn the light switch to ☰ or ☷. To cancel the glare reduction function, set the brightness to the highest level, then press the + button. You will hear a beep when it is canceled.

You can customize when the glare reduction function starts. To change "AUTO INTERIOR ILLUMINATION", see page 95 for more information.

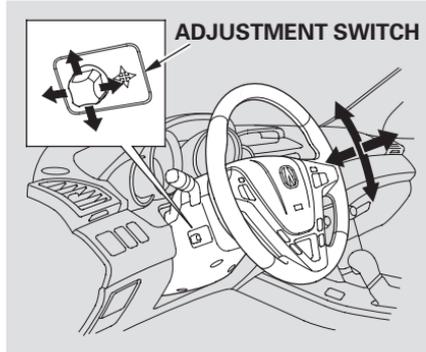
## Steering Wheel Adjustments

Make any steering wheel adjustments before you start driving.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.

Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.



Move the steering wheel in, out, up, or down by pushing and holding the adjustment switch in that direction.

Release the switch when the steering wheel reaches the desired position. Make sure the steering wheel points towards your chest, not toward your face, and that you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.

When you remove the key from the ignition switch, the steering wheel automatically moves fully in and up.

To change the “AUTO TILT & TELESCOPE STEERING WHEEL” setting, see page [99](#) .

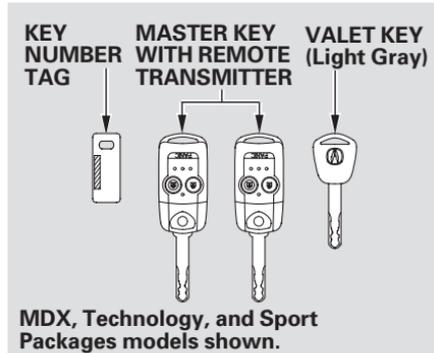
The steering wheel then returns to its original position when you insert the key back in the ignition switch.

Steering wheel movement is also controlled by the driving position memory system (see page [155](#) ).

If your vehicle’s battery is disconnected or goes dead, or the fuse for the power tilt and telescopic steering wheel is removed, the power tilt and telescopic steering wheel system needs to be reset when you reconnect the battery or install the fuse.

Insert the key into the ignition switch, and remove it. The steering wheel automatically moves fully in and up to let you know the system is reset.

## Keys and Locks



The master key fits all the locks on your vehicle. The valet key works only in the ignition and the driver's door lock. You can keep the glove box locked when you leave your vehicle and the valet key at a parking facility.



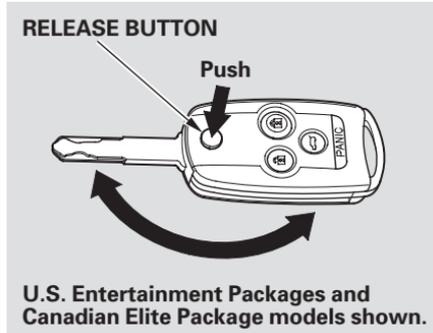
You should have received a key number tag with your keys. You will need this key number if you ever have to get a lost key replaced. Use only Acura-approved key blanks.

These keys contain electronic circuits that are activated by the immobilizer system. They will not work to start the engine if the circuits are damaged.

- Protect the keys from direct sunlight, high temperature, and high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids. If they get wet, dry them immediately with a soft cloth.

The valet key does not contain a battery. Do not try to take it apart.

### *Retractable Master Key*



The master key can be retracted into the remote transmitter. To use the key, push the release button to release the key from the transmitter. The key should be fully extended. To retract the key, push the release button and at the same time push the key into the remote transmitter until it is securely latched.

Always use the fully-extended key when you insert it to the ignition switch. If the key does not fully extend, the immobilizer system may not operate properly and prevents from starting the engine.

The key may come in contact with your finger while being retracted or extended. Make sure your fingers do not touch the pivot of the key when retracting or extending the key.

## Immobilizer System

---

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly-coded key (or other device) is used, the engine will not start.

When you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, the immobilizer system indicator should come on briefly, then go off. If the indicator starts to blink, it means the system does not recognize the coding of the key. Turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position, remove the key, reinsert it, and turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position again.

The system may not recognize your key's coding if another immobilizer key or other metal object (i.e. key chain) is near the ignition switch when you insert the key.

If the system repeatedly does not recognize the coding of your key, contact your dealer.

Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems could result that may make your vehicle undrivable.

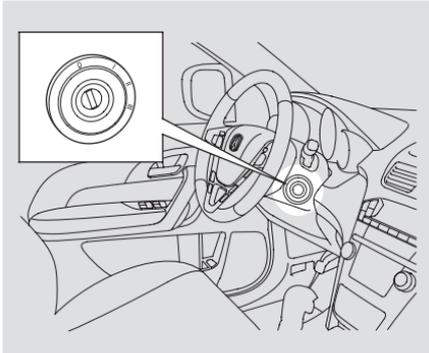
If you have lost your key and you cannot start the engine, contact your dealer.

*As required by the FCC:*

*This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.*

*Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.*

*This device complies with Industry Canada Standard RSS-210. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.*



The ignition switch has four positions: **LOCK (0)**, **ACCESSORY (I)**, **ON (II)**, and **START (III)**.

**LOCK (0)** — You can insert or remove the key only in this position. To turn the key to the **LOCK (0)** position, the shift lever must be in Park, and you must push the key in slightly.

If the front wheels are turned, the anti-theft lock may make it difficult to turn the key. Firmly turn the steering wheel to the left or right as you turn the key.

**ACCESSORY (I)** — You can operate the audio system and the accessory power sockets in this position.

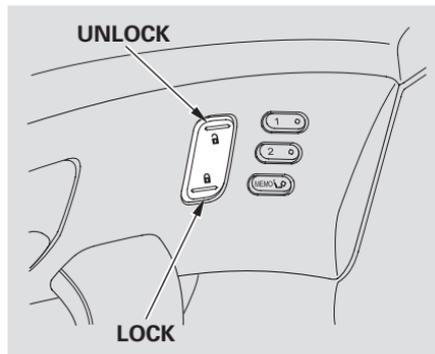
**ON (II)** — This is the normal key position when driving. Several of the indicators on the instrument panel come on as a test when you turn the ignition switch from the **ACCESSORY (I)** to the **ON (II)** position.

**START (III)** — Use this position only to start the engine. The switch returns to the **ON (II)** position when you let go of the key.

You will hear a reminder beeper if you leave the key in the ignition switch in the **LOCK (0)** or the **ACCESSORY (I)** position and open the driver's door. Remove the key to turn off the beeper.

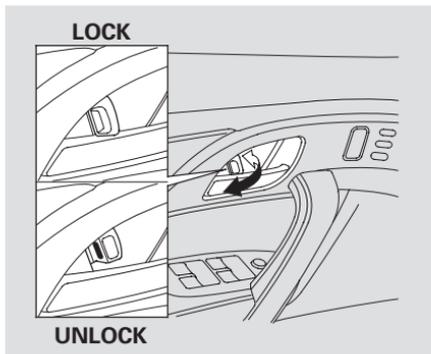
The shift lever must be in Park before you can remove the key from the ignition switch.

## Door Locks



To lock all doors and the tailgate, press the bottom of the master door lock switch on either front door, pull the lock tab above the driver's door handle, or use the key on the outside lock on the driver's door.

Pressing the top of either master door lock switch will unlock all doors and the tailgate.



The lock tab on any passenger's door locks and unlocks that door.

All doors and the tailgate can be locked from the outside by using the key in the driver's door lock. To unlock only the driver's door, insert the key, turn the key, and release it. The remaining doors and the tailgate unlock when you turn the key a second time within a few seconds.

To change the “KEY AND REMOTE UNLOCK MODE” setting, see page [109](#).

When the vehicle speed reaches about 10 mph (about 15 km/h) or more, all the doors lock automatically.

To change the “AUTO DOOR LOCK” setting, see page [106](#).

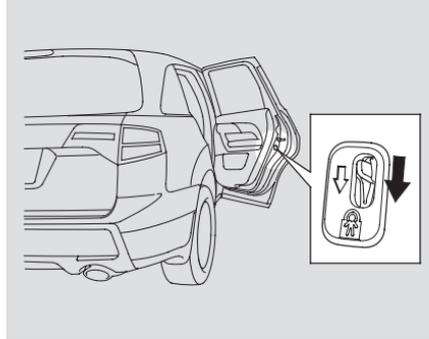
When you shift to P after driving, the driver's door unlocks.

To change the “AUTO DOOR UNLOCK” setting, see page [107](#).

### ***Lockout Prevention***

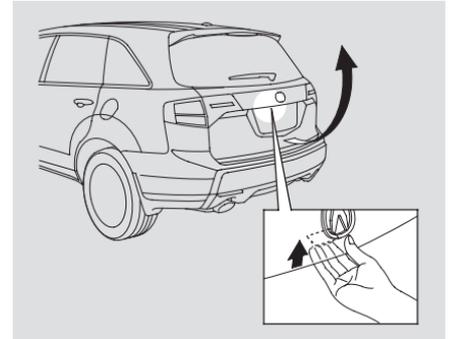
With any door and the tailgate open and the key in the ignition, both master door lock switches are disabled. They are not disabled if all the doors and the tailgate are closed. If you try to lock an open driver's door by pulling the lock tab rearward the lock tab on the driver's door pops out.

### **Childproof Door Locks**



The childproof door locks are designed to prevent children seated in the rear from accidentally opening the rear doors. Each rear door has a lock lever near the edge. With the lever in the LOCK position, the door cannot be opened from inside regardless of the position of the lock tab. To open the door, pull the lock tab up, and use the outside door handle.

### **Tailgate**



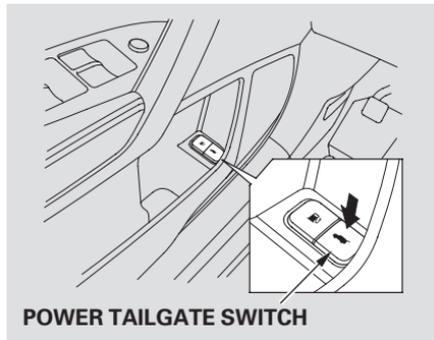
To open the tailgate, push up inside the handle, then lift up. To close the tailgate, use the inner handle to pull it down, then press down on the back edge.

Keep the tailgate closed at all times while driving to avoid damaging the tailgate and to prevent exhaust gas from getting into the interior. See **Carbon Monoxide Hazard** on page 58.

*CONTINUED*

# Tailgate

## Power Tailgate

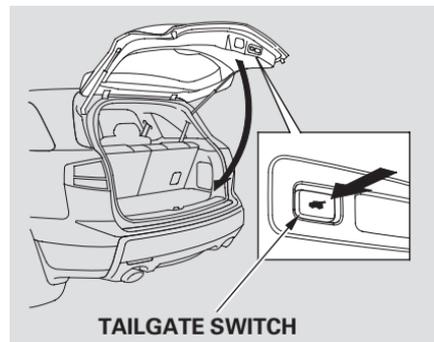


*U.S. Entertainment Packages and Canadian Elite Package models*

The tailgate can be opened and closed with the remote transmitter (see page 135 ) or the switch in the driver's door pocket when both front doors are unlocked.

Press and hold the tailgate button on the remote transmitter or the switch for about 1 second to open or close the tailgate. Each time you press the button on the remote transmitter or the switch, you will hear a beep, and some front and rear lights will flash.

If you push the same button or switch again while the tailgate is opening or closing, you will hear three beeps, and the tailgate will stop moving, reverse direction, and stop at the fully opened or closed position.



The tailgate can also be closed by pressing the button on the tailgate. If you press the button again while the tailgate is closing, you will hear three beeps, and the tailgate will stop moving, reverse direction, and stop at the fully opened position.

### *Auto-Reverse*

The power tailgate has an auto-reverse feature. If it meets resistance while opening or closing, it will beep three times and reverse direction. However, the tailgate may not reverse immediately. Always make sure passengers and objects are clear of the tailgate before opening or closing it.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Closing a power tailgate while anyone is in the path of the tailgate can cause serious injury.

Make sure everyone is clear before closing the power tailgate.

Also check that passengers, especially children, do not have their hands on the edge of the tailgate or on the tailgate sill. The auto reverse feature stops working when the tailgate is about to latch so the motor can pull the tailgate shut.

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected, goes dead, or the fuse is removed while the tailgate is fully open, the power tailgate needs to be reset. After connecting the battery or installing the fuse, close the tailgate fully by hand.

The power tailgate may not open or close under the these conditions:

- The vehicle is parked on a steep hill.
- When the vehicle is swayed in a strong wind.

- When the tailgate or the roof is covered with snow or ice.

Do not install any accessories on the tailgate. It may cause the tailgate not to function properly. If there is snow or ice on the tailgate, make sure to remove it before you operate the tailgate.

If you push the tailgate release button inside the handle while the tailgate is opening or closing, it will stop moving. You need to open or close it the rest of the way manually.

The tailgate has sensors on both sides. Be careful not to damage them. If the sensors are damaged, the power tailgate does not function properly.

# Tailgate

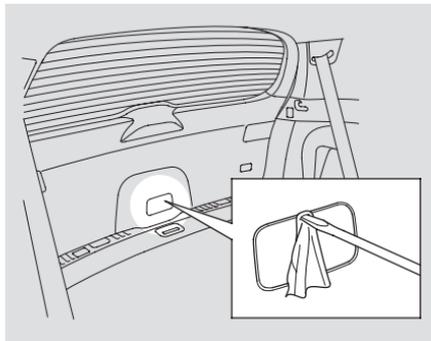
If you try to drive off with the tailgate not closed completely, a beeper sounds and a “DOOR & TAILGATE OPEN” message is shown on the multi-information display.

Keep the tailgate closed at all times while driving to avoid damaging the tailgate and to prevent exhaust gas from getting into the interior. See **Carbon Monoxide Hazard** on page 58 .

If there is a problem in the power tailgate system, you will see a “CHECK POWER TAILGATE” message on the multi-information display. Have the system checked by your dealer.

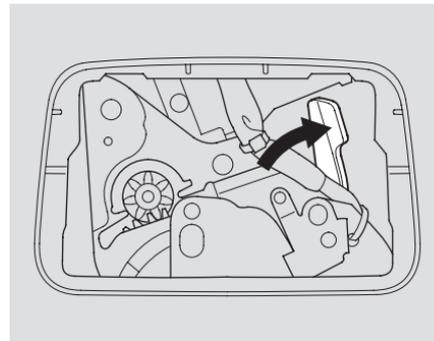
With this message shown on the multi-information display, you can still open or close the tailgate manually.

## Unlocking the Tailgate



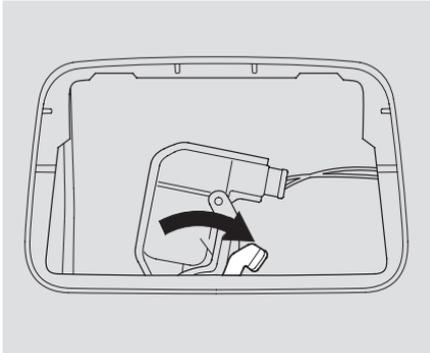
*U.S. Entertainment Packages and Canadian Elite Package models*  
If the power door lock system cannot unlock the tailgate, unlock it manually.

Use a small flat-tipped screwdriver to remove the cover on the back of the tailgate.



Push the release lever to the right as shown.

If you need to unlock the tailgate manually, it means there is a problem with the tailgate. Have the vehicle checked by your dealer.

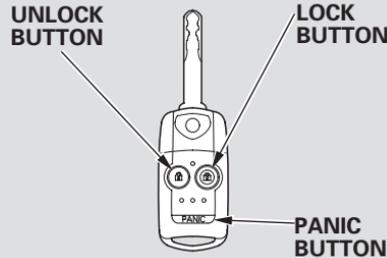


## *MDX, Technology, and Sport Packages models*

If you cannot open the tailgate, remove the cover on the back of the tailgate (see page 134). Push the release lever to the right as shown, then pull the outer handle to open the tailgate.

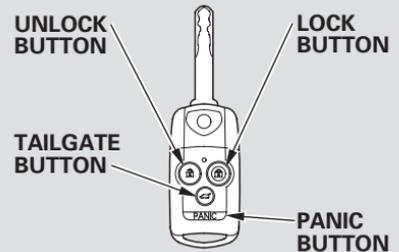
## Remote Transmitter

### MDX, Technology, and Sport Packages models



**LOCK** – Press this button once to lock all doors and the tailgate. Some exterior lights will flash. When you push LOCK twice within 5 seconds, you will hear a beep to verify that the doors and tailgate are locked and the security system has set. This button does not work if any door or tailgate is not fully closed.

### U.S. Entertainment Packages and Canadian Elite Package models



To change the “KEYLESS LOCK ACKNOWLEDGEMENT” setting, see page 110.

CONTINUED

## Remote Transmitter

---

**UNLOCK** — Press this button once to unlock the driver’s door. Push it twice to unlock the other doors. Some exterior lights will flash twice when you push the button. If you do not open any door or the tailgate within 30 seconds, they will automatically relock.

To change the “KEY AND REMOTE UNLOCK MODE” setting, see page [109](#).

To change the “SECURITY RELOCK TIMER” setting, see page [111](#).

When you press the UNLOCK button, the front and rear individual map lights and the cargo area light, depending on their switch positions, will come on (see page [158](#)). If you do not open any door or the tailgate, the lights stay on for about 30 seconds, then go out. If you relock the doors and the tailgate with the remote transmitter before 30 seconds have elapsed, the lights will go off immediately.

*U.S. Entertainment Packages and Canadian Elite Package models*

**TAILGATE** — Press and hold the TAILGATE button to open or close the power tailgate. When the tailgate begins to move, you will hear a beep, and some front and rear lights will flash.

If you push the same button again while the tailgate is opening or closing, three beeps sound, the tailgate stops moving, reverses direction and stops in the fully opened or fully closed position.

**PANIC** — Press and hold this button for about 1 second to attract attention; the horn will sound and the exterior lights will flash for about 30 seconds. To cancel panic mode, press any other button on the remote transmitter, or turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. Panic mode does not work when the key is in the ignition switch.

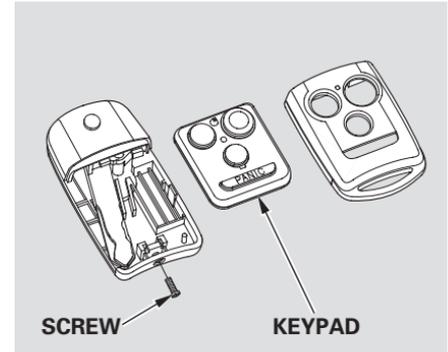
### *Remote Transmitter Care*

- Avoid dropping or throwing the transmitter.
- Protect the transmitter from extreme temperature.
- Do not immerse the transmitter in any liquid.
- If you lose a transmitter, the replacement needs to be reprogrammed by your dealer.

### **Replacing the Transmitter Battery**

If it takes several pushes on the button to lock or unlock the doors and the tailgate, replace the battery as soon as possible.

Battery type: CR1616



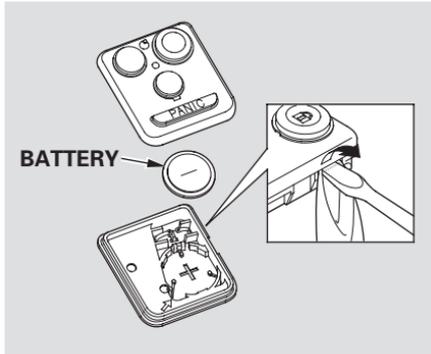
To replace the battery:

1. Remove the screw at the base of the transmitter with a small Phillips-head screwdriver.
2. Separate the keypad from the transmitter by pushing any button from outside.

*CONTINUED*

## Remote Transmitter

---



3. Place a cloth on the edge of the keypad, and remove the upper half by carefully prying on the edge with a small flat-tip screwdriver.

4. Remove the old battery and note the polarity. Make sure the polarity of the new battery is the same (– side facing up), then insert it in the keypad.

An improperly disposed of battery can hurt the environment. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

5. Snap the two halves of the keypad, then install the parts in reverse order.

*As required by the FCC:*

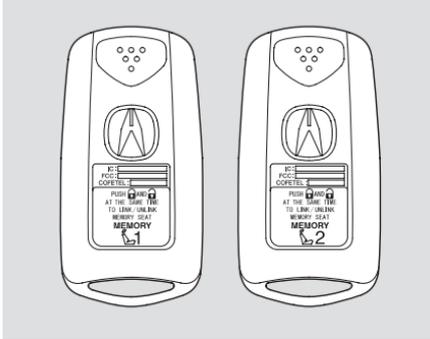
*This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.*

*Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.*

*This device complies with Industry Canada Standard RSS-210.*

*Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.*

## Keyless Memory Settings™



When you unlock the driver's door with your remote, each remote activates the keyless memory settings related to that remote. The driver's ID (MEMORY 1 or MEMORY 2) is shown on the back of each remote.

Here are the settings activated with the remote;

- Customized settings (see page 83 ).
- Driving position memory (see page 155 ).
- Audio system settings (see page 198 ).
- Climate control settings (see page 169 ).

When you unlock and open the driver's door with the remote transmitter, the driver's seat (except the power lumbar feature) and outside mirrors start to move to the positions stored in memory. The indicator in the related memory button to the remote comes on. The steering wheel will move to the stored position when you insert the key into the ignition switch.

You will also see the "WELCOME DRIVER 1" or "WELCOME DRIVER 2" message on the multi-information display, depending on which linked remote transmitter is used.

To turn off this feature, press and hold the LOCK and UNLOCK buttons at the same time. The LED in the remote will blink twice. Then release the buttons. Doing this cancels the keyless memory settings for that remote and restores the default settings.

To turn the keyless memory settings back on, repeat this procedure. The LED will blink once to indicate the feature has been turned on.

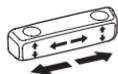
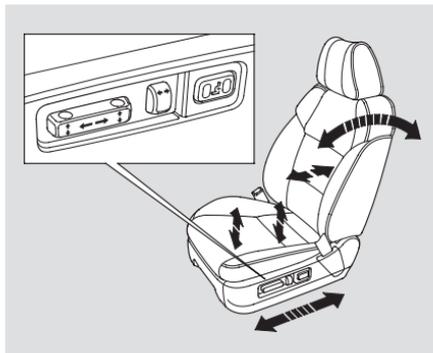
## Seats

### Front Seat Power Adjustments

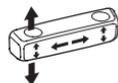
See pages 12 – 14 for important safety information and warnings about how to properly position seats and seat-backs.

The controls for the power adjustable front seats are on the outside edge of each seat bottom. You can adjust the seats with the ignition switch in any position. Make all seat adjustments before you start driving.

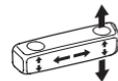
The passenger seat has the same adjustments as the driver's seat but without any lumbar adjustment.



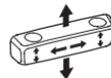
Moves the seat forward and backward.



Moves the front of the seat up or down.



Raises or lowers the seat.



Moves the whole seat up and forward, or down and backward. The front of the seat also tilts up or down at the same time.



Adjusts the seat-back angle forward or backward.



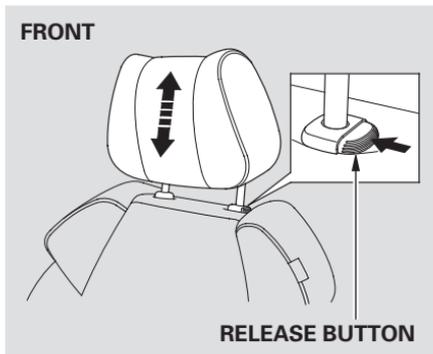
Increases or decreases the lumbar support. (Driver's seat only)

## Head Restraints

See page 14 for important safety information and a warning about how to properly position the head restraints.

Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints in all seating positions to help protect you and your passengers from whiplash and other injuries.

They are most effective when you adjust them so the back of the occupant's head rests against the center of the restraint.



The front and the second row outer head restraints adjust for height. The head restraints in the second row center and third row seating positions can be positioned in the fully lowered or fully raised position. You need both hands to adjust the restraint. Do not attempt to adjust it while driving. To raise it, pull upward. To lower the restraint, push the release button sideways, and push the restraint down.

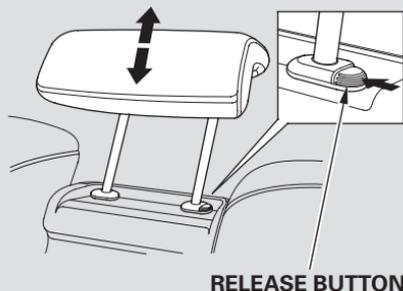
To remove one for cleaning or repair, push the release button, and lift the restraint up.

Make sure the head restraint locks in position when you reinstall it.

CONTINUED

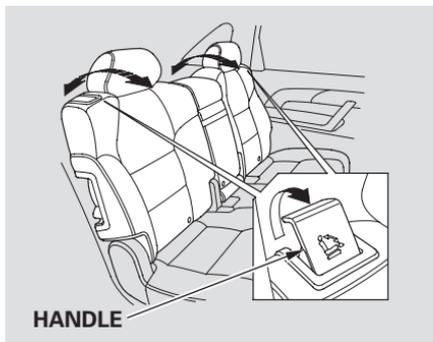
## Seats

### SECOND CENTER AND THIRD ROW



When a passenger is seated in the second row center or a third row seating position, make sure the center head restraint is properly positioned.

### Adjusting the Second Seat



To change the seat-back angle of the seats in the second row, pull up on the handle on the outside of the seat-back, and push the seat-back.

Overall, the seat-back has six different positions.

### Folding the Second Seat

The left and right halves can be folded separately.

1. To unlatch the detachable anchor before folding the seat-back, insert the latch plate into the slot on the side of the anchor buckle and allow the seat belt to retract. Store the detachable anchor and seat belt latch plates in the retractor housing.
2. Lower the head restraints to their lowest positions.
3. Pull up the handle on the outside of the seat-back.
4. Fold the seat-back forward.

Reverse this procedure to return the seat to the upright position. Make sure the seat is locked securely before driving.

### Third Row Access



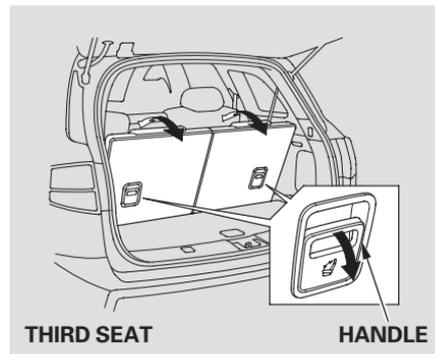
To get into the third row seats, pull up the lever on the side of the passenger's side second row seat-back. The seat-back will tilt forward, and then can be slid forward.

After you return the seat-back to the upright position, push the whole seat backwards until it latches. Make sure the seat is fully latched before sitting in it.

### Folding the Third Row Seat

1. Use the latch plate to release the seat belt from the detachable anchor.
2. Lower the head restraints to their lowest positions.

**NOTE:** To fold the third row seat, the second row seat-back must be folded down or completely up right.



3. Unlock the seat-back by pulling the handle. Push the seat-back forward.

Make sure the outer shoulder belts are positioned on each hook whenever the third seat is folded.

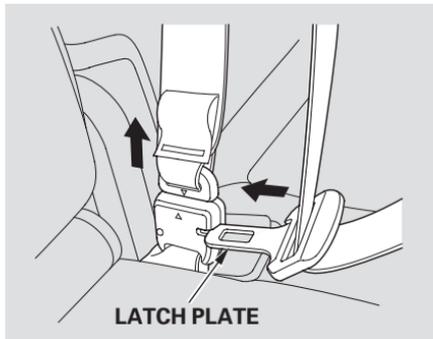
CONTINUED

## Seats

Reverse this procedure to return the seat to the upright position. Make sure the seat is locked securely before driving. Reconnect the seat belts to the detachable anchors.

Make sure all items in the cargo area are secured. Loose items can fly forward and cause injury if you have to brake hard (See **Carrying Cargo** on page 324 ).

### Detachable Anchor



The seat belts in the second row center seat and the third row seats are equipped with detachable anchors.

To unlatch the detachable anchor, insert the latch plate into the slot on the side of the anchor buckle. Store the detachable anchor and seat belt latch plates in the retractor housing.

When the seats are returned to the upright position, these detachable anchors should be latched back properly.

### **⚠ WARNING**

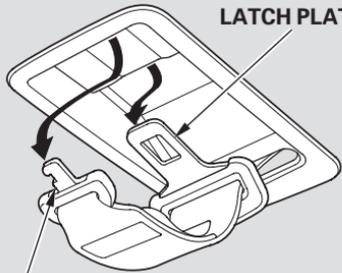
Using a seat belt with the detachable anchor unlatched increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash.

Before using the seat belt, make sure the detachable anchor is correctly latched.

**SECOND ROW CENTER SEAT**

**LATCH PLATE**

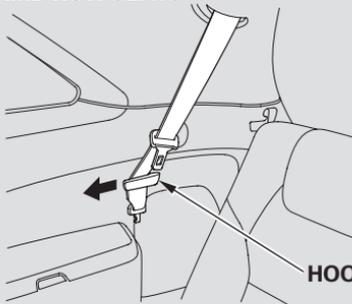
**SMALL LATCH PLATE**



Pull out the small latch plate and the latch plate from each holding slot in the ceiling, and pull out the seat belt to extend it.

**THIRD ROW SEATS**

**HOOK**

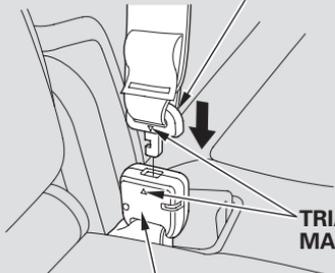


Pull out the outer shoulder belts from the hook. Both of the third-row hooks should only be used when the seat belt is detached.

**SMALL LATCH PLATE**

**TRIANGLE MARKS**

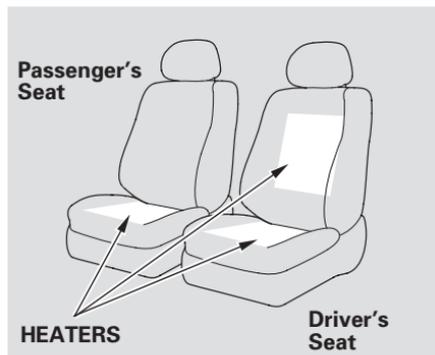
**ANCHOR BUCKLE**



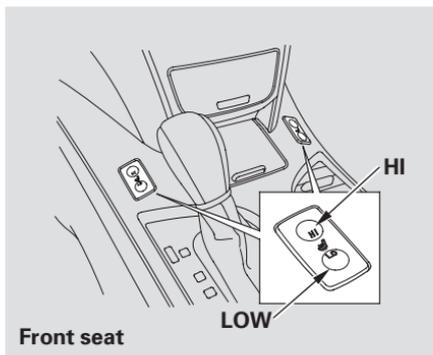
Line up the triangle marks on the small latch plate and anchor buckle when reattaching the belt and buckle.

Tug on the seat belt to verify that the detachable anchor is securely latched. Make sure the seat belt is not twisted.

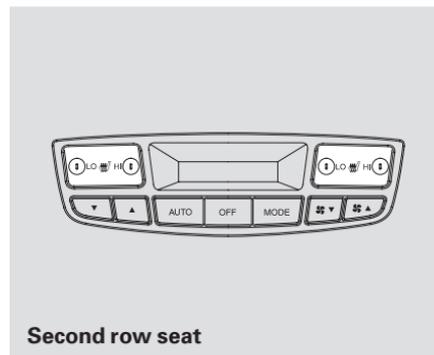
## Seat Heaters



Both front seats are equipped with seat heaters. The passenger seat is only heated in the seat bottom because of the side airbag off system.



The ignition switch must be in the ON (II) position to use them. Push the front of the switch, HI, to rapidly heat up the seat. After the seat reaches a comfortable temperature, select LO by pushing the back of the switch. This will keep the seat warm.



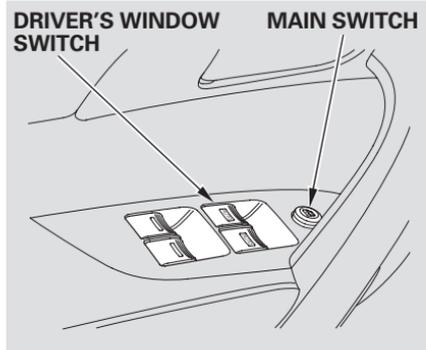
*U.S. Entertainment Packages and Canadian Elite Package models*  
The outer second row seat cushions and seat-backs are equipped with seat heaters. Turning the switch on the driver side warms the outer seat behind the driver's seat only. The passenger side switch warms the outer seat behind the front passenger seat.

In the HI setting, the heater turns off when the seat gets warm, and turns back on after the seat's temperature drops.

In the LO setting, the heater runs continuously. It does not cycle with temperature changes.

Follow these precautions when using the seat heaters:

- Use the HI setting only to heat the seats quickly, because it draws large amounts of current from the battery.
- If the engine is left idling for an extended period, do not use the seat heaters even on the LO setting. It can weaken the battery, causing hard starting.



Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position to raise or lower any window. To open a window, push the switch down and hold it. Release the switch when you want the window to stop. Pull back on the switch and hold it to close the window.

The windows will operate for up to 10 minutes after you turn off the ignition switch. Opening either front door cancels this function.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.

**AUTO** – To open either front window fully, push the window switch firmly down to the second detent, then release it. The window automatically goes down all the way. To stop the window from going all the way down, pull back on the window switch briefly.

*CONTINUED*

## Power Windows

---

To close either front window fully, pull back the window switch firmly to the second detent, then release it. The window automatically goes all the way up. To stop the window from going all the way up, push down on the window switch briefly.

When you push the MAIN switch in, the switch is off, and the passenger windows cannot be raised or lowered. To cancel this feature, push on the switch again to get it to pop out. Keep the MAIN switch off when you have children in the vehicle so they do not injure themselves by operating the windows unintentionally.

**AUTO REVERSE** — If either front window senses any obstacle while it is closing automatically, it will reverse direction and then stop. To close the window, remove the obstacle, then use the window switch again.

Auto reverse stops sensing when the window is almost closed. You should always check that all passengers and objects are away from the window before closing it.

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead, or the driver's window fuse is removed, the AUTO function may be disabled. If the AUTO function is disabled, the power window system will need to be reset after reconnecting the battery or installing the fuse.

1. Start the engine. Push down and hold the driver's window switch until the window is fully open.
2. Pull and hold the driver's window switch to close the window completely, then hold the switch for about 2 seconds.

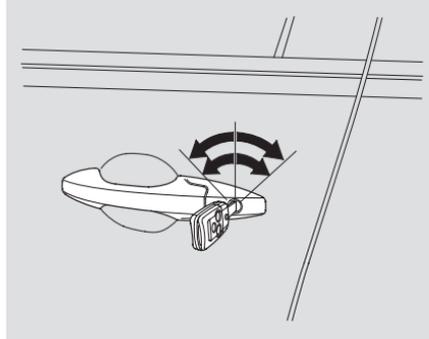
If the power windows do not operate properly after resetting, have your vehicle checked by your dealer.

### Opening the Windows and Moonroof with the Remote Transmitter

You can open all of the windows and the moonroof from outside with the remote transmitter.

1. Press the UNLOCK button once to unlock the driver's door.
  2. Press the UNLOCK button a second time, and hold it. All the doors unlock, and all four windows and moonroof start to open. To stop the windows and moonroof, release the button.
  3. To open the windows and moonroof further, press the button again and hold it. If the windows and the moonroof stop before the desired position, repeat steps 1 and 2.
- You cannot close the windows or the moonroof with the remote transmitter.

### Opening/Closing the Windows and Moonroof with the Key



You can open and close the windows and moonroof with the key in the driver's door lock.

To open:

1. Insert the key in the driver's door lock.
2. Turn the key clockwise, then release it.

3. Turn the key clockwise again, and hold it. All four windows and moonroof start to open. To stop the windows and the moonroof, release the key.
4. When the windows or moonroof stops before opening fully, to open the windows and moonroof further, turn and hold the key again (within 5 seconds).

To close:

1. Insert the key in the driver's door lock.
2. Turn the key counterclockwise, then release it.
3. Turn the key counterclockwise again, and hold it. All four windows and the moonroof start to close. To stop the windows and the moonroof, release the key.

CONTINUED

## Power Windows, Moonroof

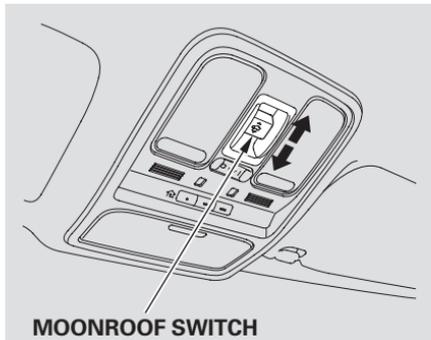
---

4. To close the windows and moonroof further, turn and hold the key again (within 5 seconds).

Auto reverse does not work when closing the windows and moonroof with the key.

**NOTE:** If the windows and moonroof stop before the desired position, repeat steps 2 and 3.

### Moonroof



To open the moonroof fully, pull back the moonroof switch firmly. The moonroof opens all the way. To stop the moonroof from opening fully, push the switch briefly.

To tilt up the moonroof, push on the center of the moonroof switch. To stop the moonroof from tilting up fully, push the switch briefly.

To open or close the moonroof partially, pull back or push forward the moonroof switch lightly and hold it. The moonroof will stop when you release the switch.

To close the moonroof fully, firmly push the moonroof switch forward, then release it. The moonroof automatically closes all the way. To stop the moonroof from closing, push the switch briefly.

### Auto Reverse

If the moonroof runs into any obstacle while it is closing automatically, it will reverse direction, and then stop. To close the moonroof, remove the obstacle, then use the moonroof switch again.

Auto reverse stops sensing when the moonroof is almost closed. You should always check that all passengers and objects are away from the moonroof before closing it.

Auto reverse does not work when closing the windows and moonroof with the key.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Opening or closing the moonroof on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure all hands and fingers are clear of the moonroof before opening or closing it.

You can open and close the moonroof for up to 10 minutes after you turn off the ignition switch. Opening either front door cancels this function.

### **NOTICE**

*If you try to open the moonroof in below-freezing temperatures, or when it is covered with snow or ice, you can damage the moonroof panel or its motor.*

### Parking Brake



To apply the parking brake, push the pedal down with your foot. To release it, pull the release handle fully. The parking brake indicator on the instrument panel should go out when the parking brake is fully released, and the ignition switch is in the ON (II) position (see page 129). You will also see a "RELEASE PARKING BRAKE" message on the multi-information display (see page 82).

CONTINUED

## Parking Brake, Mirrors

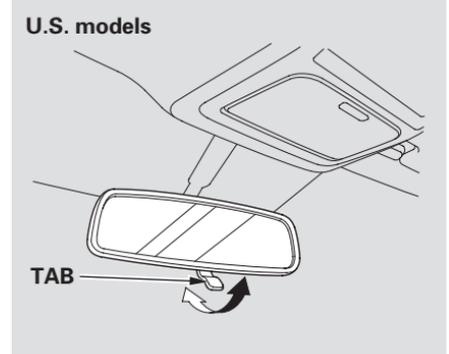
---

### NOTICE

*Driving the vehicle with the parking brake applied can damage the rear brakes and axles. A beeper will sound if the vehicle is driven with the parking brake on.*

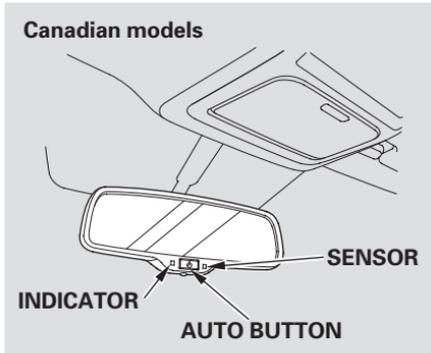
### Mirrors

Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility. Be sure to adjust the mirrors before you start driving.



### *On U.S. models*

The inside mirror has day and night positions. The night position reduces glare from headlights behind you. Flip the tab on the bottom edge of the mirror to select the day or night position.



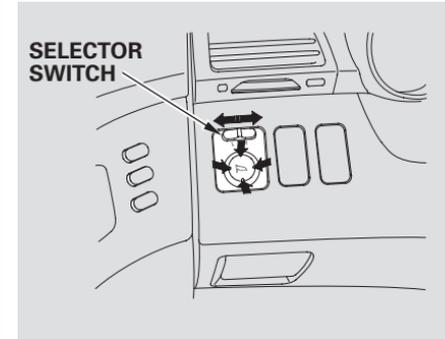
### On Canadian models

The inside mirror can automatically darken to reduce glare. To turn on this feature, press the button on the bottom of the mirror. The AUTO indicator comes on as a reminder. When it is on, the mirror darkens when it senses the headlights of a vehicle behind you, then returns to normal visibility when the lights are gone. Press the button again to turn off this sensing.

## NOTICE

*There is also a sensor on the back of the mirror. Items hung on the mirror may block this sensor and affect performance.*

## Adjusting the Power Mirrors



1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.
2. Move the selector switch to L (driver's side) or R (passenger's side).

CONTINUED

## Mirrors

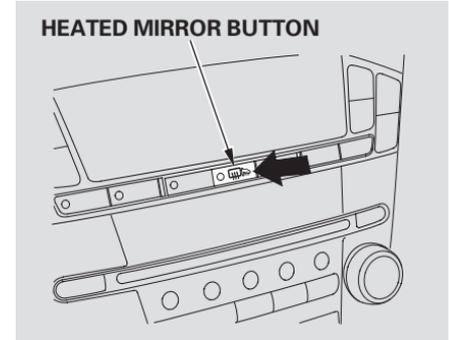
---

3. Push the appropriate edge of the adjustment switch to move the mirror right, left, up, or down.
4. When you finish, move the selector switch to the center (off) position. This turns the adjustment switch off to keep your settings.

Depending on the position of the selector switch, the left or right side mirror will pivot downward slightly when you shift the transmission into reverse. In the left position, the left mirror pivots. In the right position, the right mirror pivots. This gives you a better view of that side of the vehicle while parallel parking. The mirror returns to its original position when you take the transmission out of reverse. To turn this feature off, leave the switch in the center position.

Outside mirror positions can be stored in the driving position memory system (see page [155](#)).

### Heated Mirrors



The outside mirrors are heated to remove fog and frost. With the ignition switch in the ON (II) position, turn on the heaters by pressing the button. The indicator in the button comes on as a reminder. Press the button again to turn the heaters off.

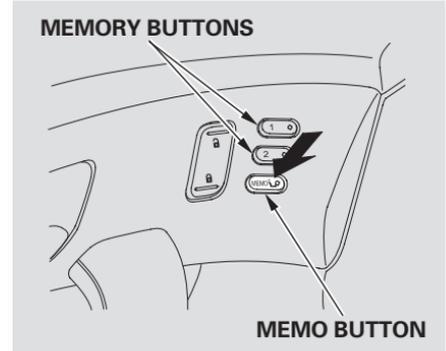
Your vehicle has a memory feature for the steering wheel, driver's seat, and outside mirror positions.

Seat, except for power lumbar, steering wheel and outside mirror positions can be stored in separate memories. You select a memorized position by pushing the appropriate button or using the appropriate remote transmitter (Driver 1 or Driver 2). For more information see page [139](#).

### Storing a Driving Position in Memory

Store a driving position only when the vehicle is parked.

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. You cannot add a new driving position to the memory unless the ignition switch is in the ON (II) position. You can recall a memorized position with the ignition switch in any position.
2. Adjust the seat to a comfortable position (see page [140](#)).  
Adjust the steering wheel to a comfortable position (see page [124](#)).  
Adjust the outside mirrors for best visibility (see page [153](#)).



3. Press and release the MEMO button on the control panel. You will hear a beep. Immediately press and hold one of the memory buttons (1 or 2) until you hear two beeps. The indicator in the memory button will come on. The current positions of the driver's seat, steering wheel, and outside mirrors are now stored.

*CONTINUED*

## Driving Position Memory System

---

Doing any of the following after pressing the MEMO button will cancel the storing procedure.

- Not pressing a memory button within 5 seconds.
- Readjusting the seat position.
- Readjust the outside mirror position.

Each memory button stores only one driving position. Storing a new position erases the previous setting stored in that button's memory. If you want to add a new position while retaining the current one, use the other memory button.

### Selecting a Memorized Position

To select a memorized position, do this:

1. Make sure the vehicle is parked.
2. Press the desired memory button (1 or 2) until you hear a beep, then release the button.

The system will move the seat, steering wheel, and outside mirrors to the memorized positions. The indicator in the selected memory button will flash during movement. When the adjustments are complete, you will hear two beeps, and the indicator will remain on.

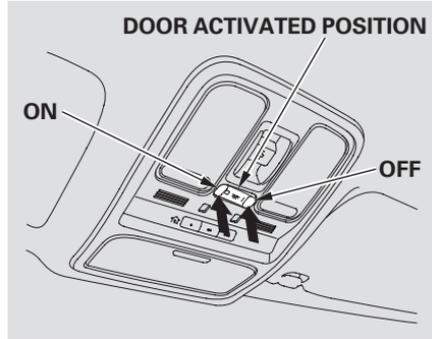
To change the "MEMORY POSITION LINK" setting, see page 98 .

To stop the system's automatic adjustment, do any of these actions:

- Press any button on the control panel: MEMO, 1, or 2.
- Push any of the adjustment switches for the seat.
- Shift out of Park.
- Adjust the outside mirrors.

If desired, you can use the adjustment switches to change the positions of the seat, steering wheel or outside mirrors after they are in their memorized position. If you change the memorized position, the indicator in the memory button will go out. To keep this driving position for later use, you must store it in the driving position memory.

## Light Control Switch



The light control switch has three positions: OFF, Door Activated, and ON.

*When the switch is in the OFF position:*

- The individual door lights or the tailgate lights will operate when a door or the tailgate is opened.
- The individual map lights in the front can be turned on and off by pressing the lenses.

- The individual map lights in the second row and the cargo area light in the third row cannot be turned on.

*When the switch is in the door activated position:*

- The individual map lights in the front and second rows come on when any door or the tailgate is opened, or when the remote transmitter is used to unlock the doors (see page 136). When the doors and the tailgate are closed, each light can be turned on and off by pushing the lens.
- The cargo area light comes on when any door or the tailgate is opened if the light control switch is in the door activated (center) position. When the doors and the tailgate are closed, the cargo area light can be turned on with the switch in the light.

After all doors are closed tightly, the lights dim slightly, then fade out in about 30 seconds.

To change the “INTERIOR LIGHT DIMMING TIME” setting, see page 101.

With any door or the tailgate left open, the lights stay on about 3 minutes, then go out.

The lights also come on when the key is removed from the ignition switch.

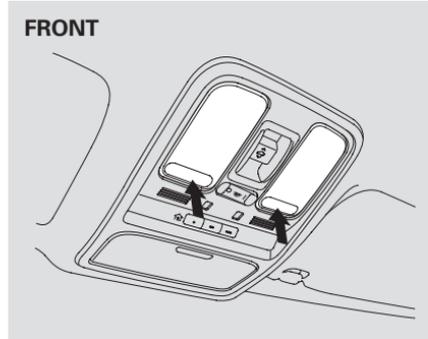
CONTINUED

## Interior Lights

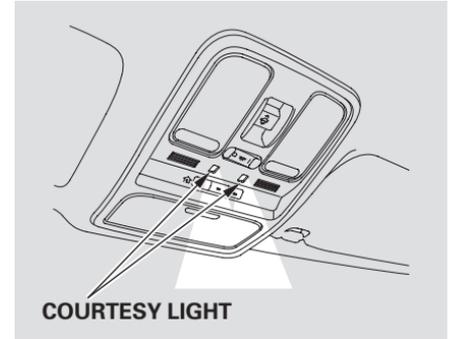
When the light control switch is in the ON position:

- All the individual map lights come on and stay on as long as the switch remains in the ON position.
- The cargo (3rd row) area light comes on if the switch is in the door activated position.

### Individual Map Lights

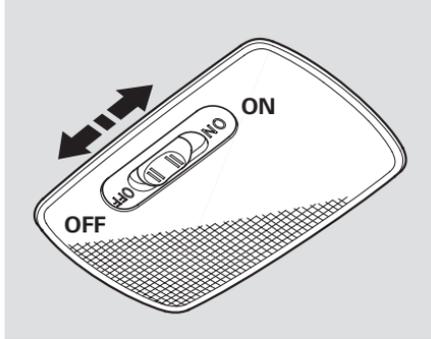


Turn on the front row individual map lights by pushing the lens. Push the lens again to turn it off. With the light control switch in the door activated position, the second row map lights can be turned on by pushing the lens. Push the lens again to turn it off.



The courtesy light between the map lights comes on when you turn the parking lights on. To adjust its brightness, press either of the instrument panel brightness control buttons (+ or -).

### Cargo Area Light



The cargo area light has a three-position switch. In the OFF position, the light does not come on. In the center position, it comes on when you open the tailgate. In the ON position, it stays on continuously.

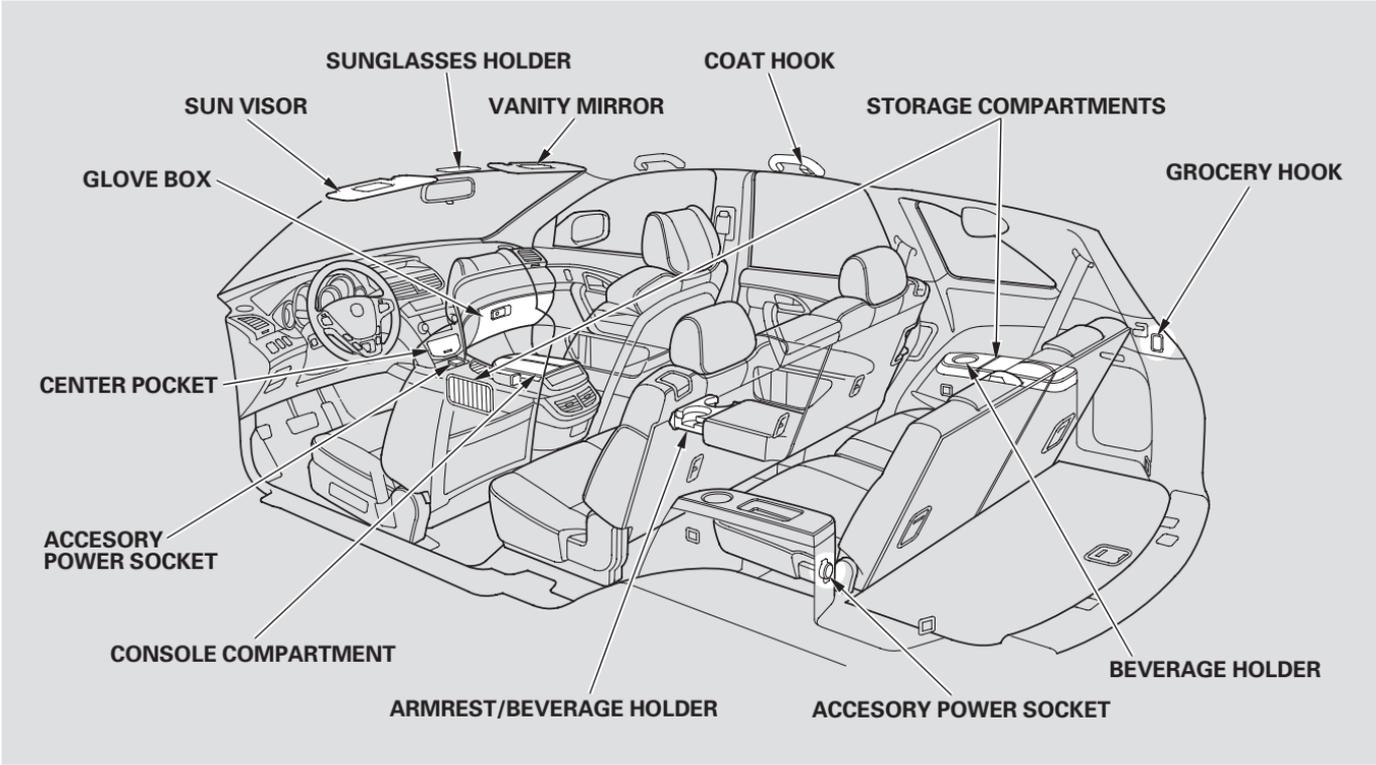
### Tailgate Lights

The lights in the tailgate have an on-off switch to control if the lights come on when the tailgate is opened. The tailgate lights do not come on when any other doors are opened.

### Individual Interior Lights

The courtesy lights in all four doors come on when you open any door. The light around the ignition switch comes on when any door is opened. After you close the door, the ignition switch light stays on for about 30 seconds regardless of the interior light dimming time setting (see page [101](#)).

# Interior Convenience Items

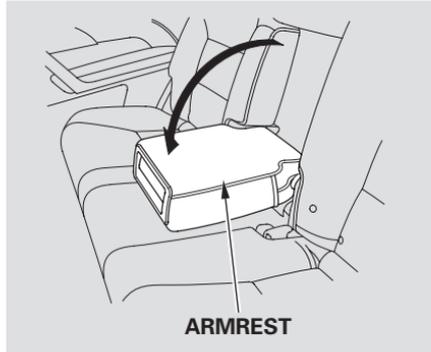


### Beverage Holders

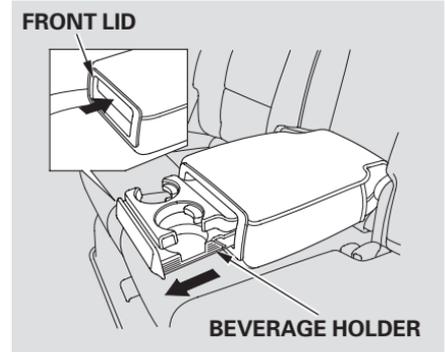
Be careful when you are using the beverage holders. A spilled liquid that is very hot can scald you or your passengers. Liquid can also spill from the door pocket beverage holders when you open or close the doors. Use only resealable containers in the door pockets.

Spilled liquids can damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.

Open the front beverage holder by sliding the lid.



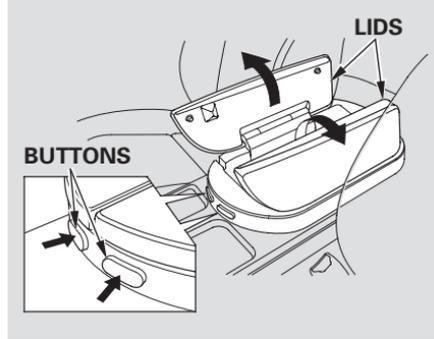
The center seat-back in the second is equipped with an armrest that provides the beverage holder. Pivot down the seat-back to use them.



To open the beverage holder, press and release the front lid. To close, press the lid again until it latches. When you put back the armrest in the center seat-back, make sure the lid is closed properly.

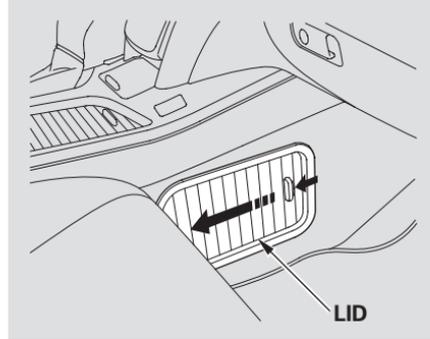
## Interior Convenience Items

### Console Compartment



Your vehicle is equipped with a front seat armrest pad that is also a console compartment. To open the console compartment fully, push both buttons at the front of the compartment.

### Storage Compartment



The storage compartment with a sliding lid is at the left-side foot of the front passenger seat.

For the third row, a storage compartment is located in the passenger side armrest. To open the compartment, push the button and lift the lid.

### Glove Box

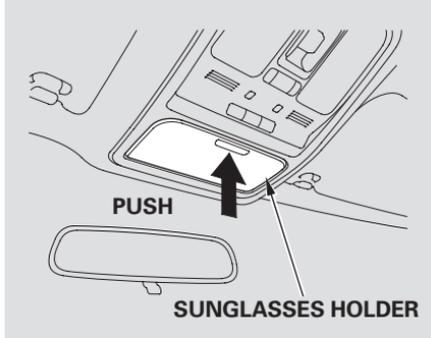
Open the glove box by pulling the handle to the left. Close it with a firm push. Lock or unlock the glove box with the master key.

#### **⚠ WARNING**

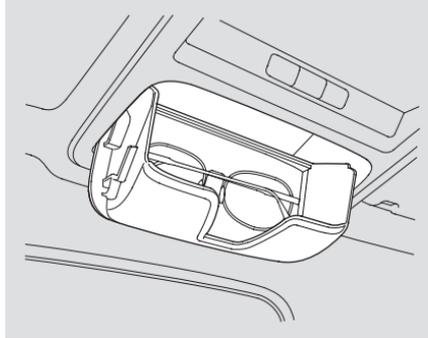
An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.

Always keep the glove box closed while driving.

### Sunglasses Holder



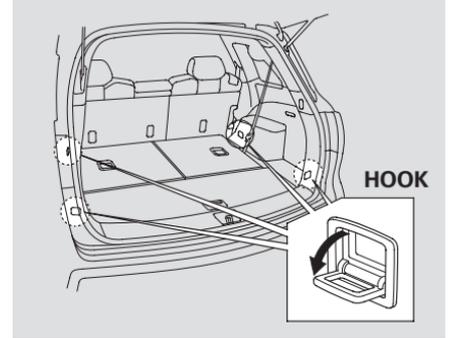
To open the sunglasses holder, push on the raised detent. It will unlatch and swing down. To close it, push it until it latches. Make sure the holder is closed while you are driving.



Some larger styles of sunglasses may not fit in the holder.

You may also store small items in this holder. Make sure they are small enough to let the holder close and latch, and that they are not heavy enough to cause the holder to pop open while driving.

### Cargo Hooks

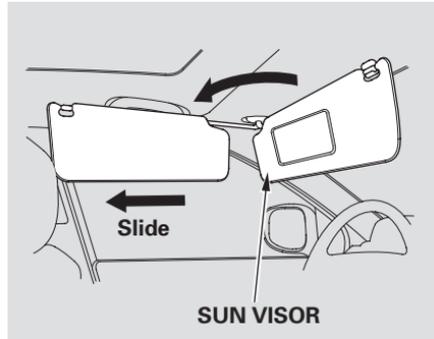


The hooks on the floor of the cargo area enable you to tie down items stored in the back. Make sure all stored items are secured before driving.

## Interior Convenience Items

---

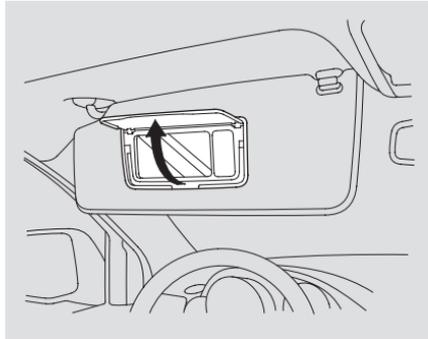
### Sun Visor



To use the sun visor, pull it down. When using the sun visor for the side window, remove the support rod from the clip, and swing it out. In this position, the sun visor can be adjusted by moving it on its slider. Do not use the extended sun visor over the inside mirror.

Make sure you put the sun visor back in place when you are getting into or out of the vehicle.

### Vanity Mirror

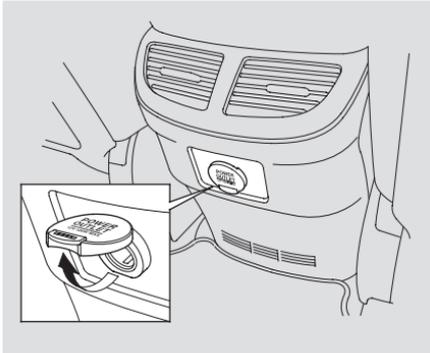


To use the vanity mirror on the back of the sun visor, pull up the cover.

The vanity mirror light will not come on if the sun visor is slid outward.

### Accessory Power Sockets

Your vehicle has two or three accessory power sockets, depending on the model. All models have the front accessory power socket under the audio system and rear socket behind the third row seat on the driver's side.



*MDX, Technology, and Sport Packages models*

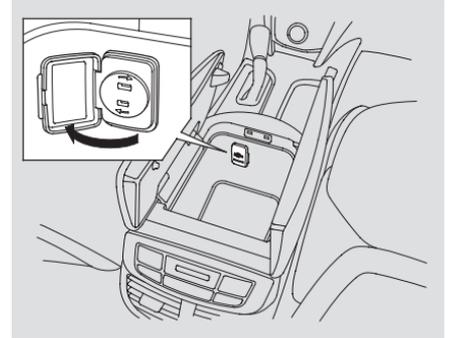
The accessory power socket is located at the back of the front console compartment.

To use an accessory power socket, the ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position.

Each socket is intended to supply power for 12 volt DC accessories that are rated 120 watts or less (10 amps).

None of the sockets will power an automotive type cigarette lighter element.

### AC Power Outlet



*U.S. Entertainment Packages and Canadian Elite Package models*

There is a 115 volt AC power outlet inside the front console compartment. To use the AC power outlet, open the lids and open the outlet cover. Insert the plug into the receptacle slightly, turn it 90° clockwise, then push in the plug all the way.

*CONTINUED*

## Interior Convenience Items

---

Always run the engine when you use the AC power outlet.

The maximum capacity for this power outlet is 115 volt AC at 100 watts or less. If you use an appliance which requires more than 100 watts, it automatically stops supplying the power. If this happens, turn the ignition switch off and turn it on again.

**NOTE:** The AC power outlet is not designed for electric appliances which require high initial peak wattage such as cathode-ray tube type televisions, refrigerators, electric pumps, etc. It is also not suitable for devices that process precise data such as medical equipment or measuring instruments. Any appliances that require an extremely stable power supply such as microcomputer-controlled electric blankets, touch sensor lamps, etc., should not be connected to this outlet.

The climate control system in your vehicle provides a comfortable driving environment in all weather conditions.

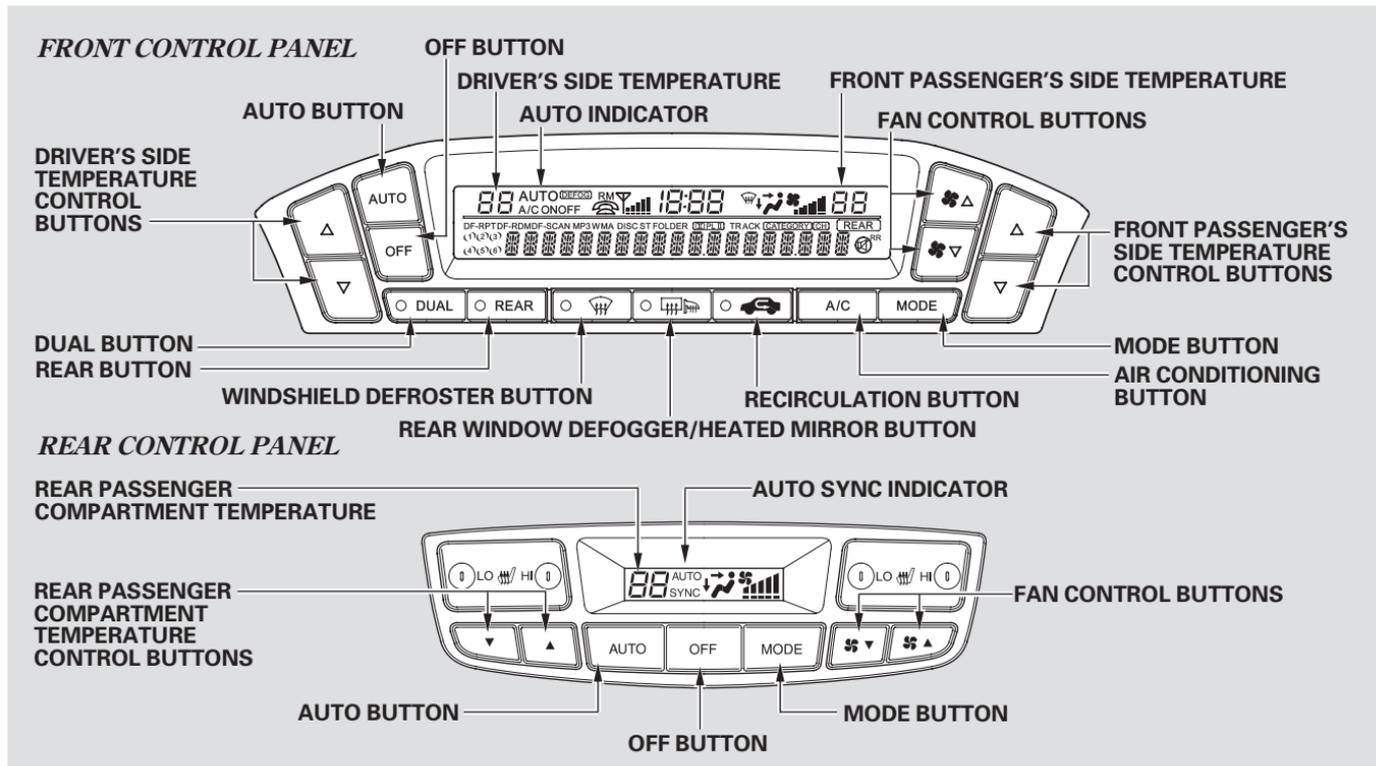
The standard audio system has many features. This section describes those features and how to use them.

Your vehicle has an anti-theft audio system that requires a code number to enable it.

Climate Control System.....	168
Rear Climate Controls.....	173
Audio System .....	178
Playing the AM/FM Radio (Models without navigation system) .....	179
Playing the XM® Satellite Radio ..	183
Playing Discs .....	188
Disc Changer Error Messages ....	197
Audio System (Models with navigation system) .....	198
Playing the AM/FM Radio.....	199
Radio Reception .....	203
Playing the XM® Satellite Radio ..	208
Playing Discs .....	216
Disc Changer Error Messages ....	226
Protecting Your Discs.....	227
Auxiliary Input Jack.....	228
Remote Audio Controls.....	229
Radio Theft Protection.....	231
Setting the Clock and Calendar ...	232
Rear Entertainment System.....	233
Security System .....	265
Cruise Control.....	266
Compass.....	269

HomeLink Universal Transceiver.....	272
HandsFreeLink™ .....	276
AcuraLink .....	303
Rear View Camera and Monitor ..	314

# Climate Control System



## Personalization Setting

When you unlock the doors with your remote, the driver's ID (Driver 1 or Driver 2) is detected, and the climate control settings are turned to the respective mode automatically when the ignition is turned to the ON (II) position.

## Voice Control System

*On vehicles with navigation system*

The climate control system can also be operated by voice control. See the Navi section in your quick start guide for an overview of this system, and the navigation system manual for complete details.

## Using Automatic Climate Control

The automatic climate control system in your vehicle picks the proper combination of air conditioning, heating, and ventilation to maintain the interior temperature you select. The system also adjusts the fan speed and airflow levels.

1. Press the Auto button on the front control panel.
2. Set the desired temperature with the temperature control buttons. You will see AUTO in the system's display.
3. You can set the driver's side temperature, the passenger's side temperature, and the temperature of the rear passenger compartment separately.

The system automatically selects the proper mix of conditioned and/or heated air that will, as quickly as possible, raise or lower the interior temperature to your preference.

## Temperature Control

The driver's side temperature, the passenger's side temperature and the rear passenger compartment temperature can be set separately. Press the ▲ button of the appropriate temperature control to increase the temperature of airflow. Press the ▼ button to decrease it. Each set temperature is shown in the display. The rear temperature is shown in the display on the back of the center console.

CONTINUED

## Climate Control System

---

When you set the temperature to its lower limit ( **L** ) or its upper limit ( **H** ), the system runs at full cooling or heating only. It does not regulate the interior temperature.

When you press a fan control button, the fan is taken out of AUTO mode.

When the indicator in the dual button is on, the driver's side and passenger's side temperature can be controlled independently (see page [175](#)).

When the indicator in the rear button is on, the temperature of the rear passenger compartment can be controlled independently (see page [175](#)).

*On vehicles with navigation system*  
In the Auto mode, the vehicle's interior temperature is independently regulated for the driver, front passenger, and rear

passengers according to each adjusted temperature. The system also regulates each temperature based on the information of the sun light sensor and the sun position which is updated automatically by the navigation's global positioning system (GPS). For example, if the driver's side of the vehicle getting too much sun, the system will adjust to a lower temperature.

### **Dual Button**

You can set the temperatures for the driver's side and the passenger's side separately when this button is pressed (indicator is on). When the indicator in the DUAL button is off, the temperatures for both sides are synchronized to the driver's side set temperature. When defrost mode is selected, dual mode operation is canceled.

### **Rear Button**

When you press this button, the indicator in the button comes on, and the temperature of the rear passenger compartment can be adjusted separately with the temperature control buttons on the back of the center console. With the indicator off, the temperature of the rear passenger compartment is synchronized to the driver's side set temperature. You will see the AUTO SYNC on the system display of the rear control panel. Changing the temperature of the rear passenger compartment also makes the indicator to turn on, and takes the system out of synchronized mode. This causes the word SYNC in the display to go out.

## To Turn Everything Off

If you press the OFF button, the climate control system shuts off completely.

- Keep the system completely off for short periods only.
- To keep stale air and mustiness from collecting, you should have the fan running at all times.

## Semi-automatic Operation

You can manually select various functions of the climate control system when it is in fully automatic mode. All other features remain automatically controlled. Making any manual selection causes the word AUTO in the display to go out.

## Fan Control

Press the  ▲ button to increase the fan speed and airflow. Press the  ▼ button to decrease it.

## Air Conditioning (A/C) Button

This button turns the air conditioning on and off. You will see A/C ON or A/C OFF in the display.

When you turn the A/C off, the system cannot regulate the inside temperature if you set the temperature control below the outside temperature.

## Recirculation Button

When the indicator in the button is on, air from the vehicle's interior is sent throughout the system again. When the indicator is off, air is brought in from the outside of the vehicle (fresh air mode).

The outside air intakes for the climate control system are at the base of the windshield. Keep this area clear of leaves and other debris.

The system should be left in fresh air mode under almost all conditions. Keeping the system in recirculation mode, particularly with the A/C off, can cause the windows to fog up.

Switch to recirculation mode when driving through dusty or smoky conditions, then return to fresh air mode.

## Climate Control System

---

### **Rear Window Defogger Button**

This button turns the rear window defogger off and on (see page 122).

Pushing this button also turns the power mirror heaters on and off.

### **Mode Control**

Use the mode control button to select the vents the air flows from. Some air will flow from the dashboard vents in all modes.

 Air flows from the center and corner vents in the dashboard.

 Airflow is divided between the vents in the dashboard and the floor vents.

 Air flows from the floor vents.

 Airflow is divided between the floor and corner vents and the defroster vents at the base of the windshield.

**Windshield Defroster Button**   
This button directs the main airflow to the windshield for faster defrosting. It also overrides any mode selection you may have made.

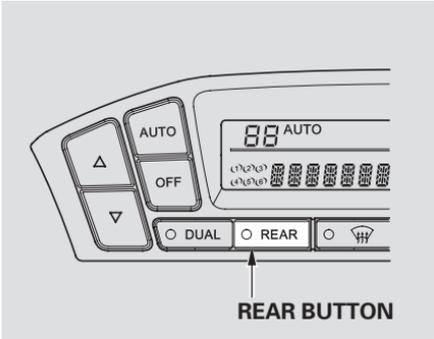
When you select , the system automatically switches to fresh air mode and turns on the A/C. For faster defrosting, manually set the fan speed to high. You can also increase airflow to the windshield by closing the corner vents on the dashboard. To close the vents, rotate the wheel under each corner vent.

When you turn off  by pressing the button again, the system returns to its former settings.

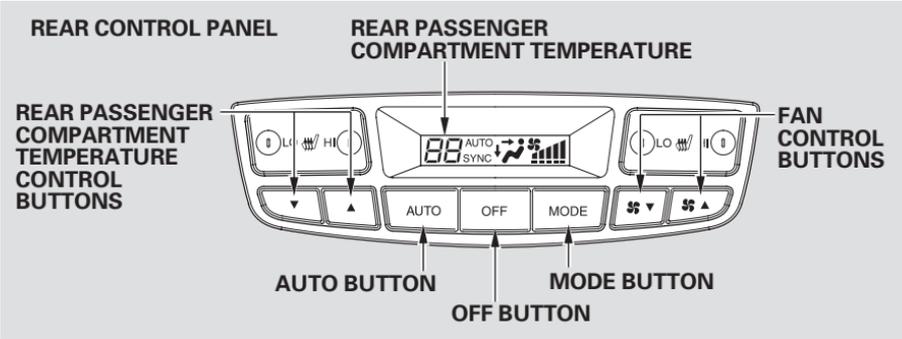
For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.

When the indicator in the button is on, the front passenger's and rear passenger compartment temperatures cannot be set separately from the driver's.

## REAR Climate Controls



**Rear Button**  
When the indicator in this button is off, the temperature of the rear passenger compartment is synchronized to the driver's side set temperature. If the AUTO mode is selected on the front control panel, you will see the AUTO SYNC on the rear system display. When the indicator in this button is on, the temperature of the rear passenger compartment can be adjusted with



the rear temperature control buttons. A passenger can also adjust the fan speed and airflow.

You can use the rear control panel when the indicator in the REAR button on the front control panel is on. Pressing any control button on the rear control panel turns on the rear button indicator on the front control panel.

CONTINUED

## Climate Control System

---

### *Temperature Control*

Press the ▲ temperature control button to increase the temperature of airflow, and the ▼ button to decrease it. The temperature you adjust is shown in the system display.

### *Fan Control*

Press the  ▲ fan control button to increase the fan speed and airflow. Press the  ▼ button to decrease it. The level of the fan speed is shown in the display.

### *Mode Control*

Each time you press the mode button, the mode display changes from  to .

When  is selected, air flows from the upper vents on the back of the center console.

When  is selected, air flows from the lower vents.

### *Automatic Operation*

Pressing the AUTO button puts the system in automatic operation mode. The rear system automatically adjusts the fan speed and airflow levels to maintain the selected temperature of the rear passenger compartment. You will see AUTO in the display.

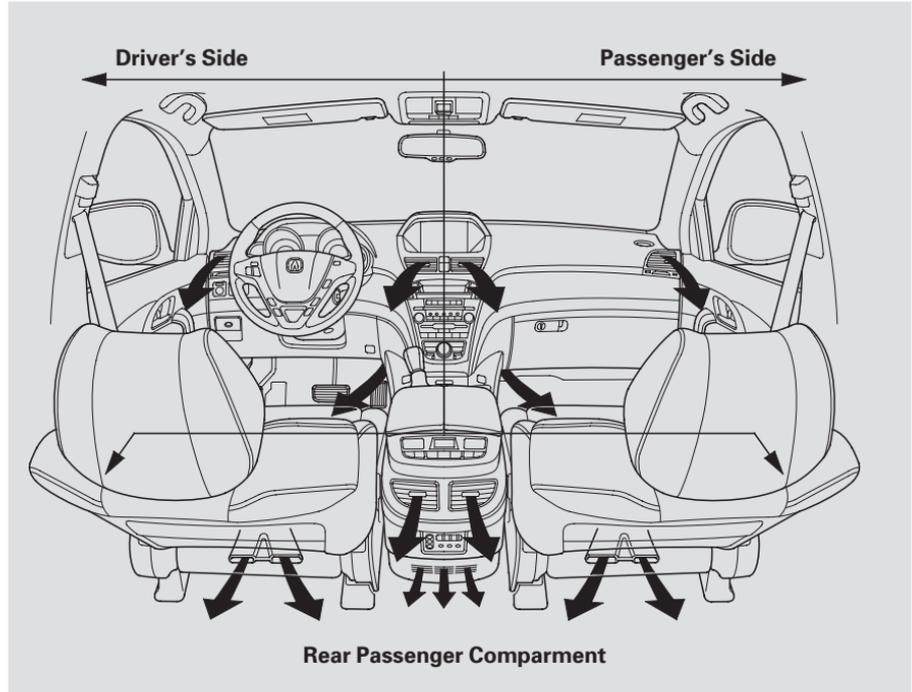
Pressing the OFF button shuts off the rear climate control system.

## Triple Zone Temperature Control

The temperatures of the driver's side and the front passenger's side can be controlled independently when the indicator in the DUAL button is on.

When the indicator in the REAR button is on, the temperature of the rear passenger compartment can be controlled independently.

To adjust each temperature, press either of the temperature control buttons (▲ or ▼) on the climate control panel.



CONTINUED

## Climate Control System

---

Push AUTO or . The selected temperatures appear in the display. When the indicator in the DUAL button is off, you can adjust both sides to the same temperature by adjusting the driver's temperature control buttons.

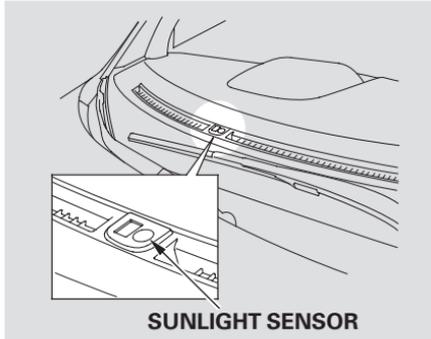
To set the driver's side temperature to a different value than the passenger's side, press the DUAL button, then press either of the driver's temperature control button ( or ). To set the passenger's side to a different value than the driver's side, press either of the front passenger's temperature control button ( or ). You can adjust the passenger's side without pressing the DUAL button first.

When the indicator in the REAR button is off, the temperature of the rear passenger compartment is synchronized to the driver's side set temperature. You will see the AUTO SYNC on the system display of the rear control panel.

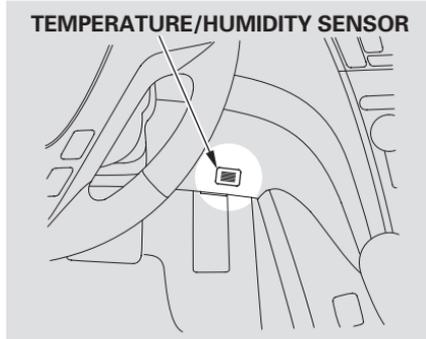
To set the temperature of the rear passenger compartment to a different value than the driver's side, press the REAR button, then press either temperature control buttons on the back of the center console. The word "SYNC" in the display goes out. You can also adjust the rear temperature without pressing the REAR button first. Pressing either button causes the indicator of the REAR button to turn on.

When you set each temperature to its lower limit or its upper limit, it will be displayed as "Hi" or "Lo".

## Sunlight and Temperature Sensors



To regulate the interior temperature and humidity, the climate control system has two sensors. A sunlight sensor is located in the top of the dashboard and a temperature/humidity sensor is next to the steering column. Do not cover the sensors or, spill liquid or spray chemical cleaners on the sensors.



## Audio System

An audio system is standard on all models. Read the appropriate pages (as shown below) to use your vehicle's audio system.

For vehicles without navigation system, see pages [179](#) through [197](#).

For vehicles with navigation system, see pages [198](#) through [226](#).

With navigation system



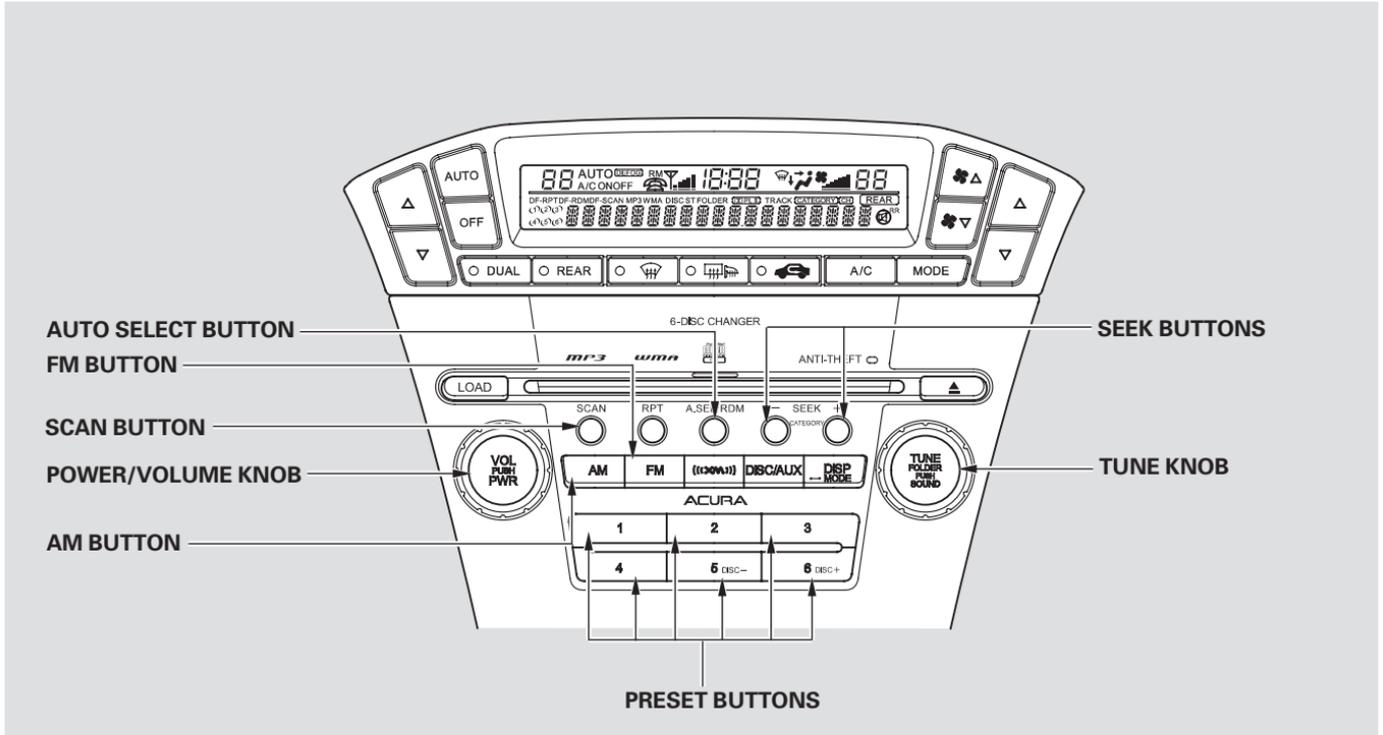
With rear entertainment system



Without navigation system



# Playing the AM/FM Radio (Models without navigation system)



## Playing the AM/FM Radio (Models without navigation system)

---

### To Play the Radio

The ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position. Turn the system on by pushing the power/volume knob or the AM or FM button. Adjust the volume by turning the power/volume knob.

The band and frequency that the radio was last tuned to are displayed. To change bands, press the AM or FM button. On the FM band, ST will be displayed if the station is broadcasting in stereo. Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

On the AM band, AM noise reduction turns on automatically.

### To Select a Station

You can use any of five methods to find radio stations on the selected band: tune, seek, scan, the preset buttons, and auto select.

**TUNE** — Use the TUNE knob to tune the radio to a desired frequency. Turn the knob right to tune to a higher frequency, or left to tune to a lower frequency.

**SEEK** — The SEEK function searches up and down from the current frequency to find a station with a strong signal. To activate it, press the + or - SEEK button, then release it.

**SCAN** — The scan function samples all stations with strong signals on the selected band. To activate it, press the SCAN button, then release it. You will see SCAN in the display. The system will scan for a station with a strong signal. When it finds one, it will stop and play that station for about 10 seconds.

If you do nothing, the system will scan for the next strong station and play it for 10 seconds. When it plays a station that you want to listen to, press the SCAN button again.

## Playing the AM/FM Radio (Models without navigation system)

---

**Preset** — Each preset button can store one frequency on AM and two frequencies on FM.

1. Select the desired band, AM or FM. FM1 and FM2 let you store two frequencies with each preset button.
2. Use the tune, seek, or scan function to tune the radio to a desired station.
3. Pick a preset button, and hold it until you hear a beep.
4. Repeat steps 1 through 3 to store a total of six stations on AM and twelve stations on FM.

**AUTO SELECT** — If you are traveling far from home and can no longer receive your preset stations, you can use the auto select feature to find stations in the local area.

Press the A. SEL button. “A. SEL” flashes in the display, and the system goes into scan mode for several seconds. It stores the frequencies of six AM and twelve FM stations in the preset buttons.

You will see a “0” displayed after pressing a preset button if auto select cannot find a strong station for that preset button.

If you do not like the stations auto select has stored, you can store other frequencies on the preset buttons as previously described.

*To turn off auto select*, press the A. SEL (auto select) button. This restores the presets you originally set.

The presets may be lost if your vehicle’s battery goes dead, is disconnected, or the radio fuse is removed.

For information on AM/FM radio frequencies and reception, see page [203](#).

## Playing the AM/FM Radio (Models without navigation system)

---

### Adjusting the Sound

Press the TUNE (SOUND) knob repeatedly to display the BASS, TREBLE, FADER, BALANCE, SUBWOOFER, and SVC (speed-sensitive volume compensation) settings.

**BASS** — Adjusts the bass.

**TREBLE** — Adjusts the treble.

**FADER** — Adjusts the front-to-back strength of the sound.

**BALANCE** — Adjusts the side-to-side strength of the sound.

**SUBWOOFER** — Adjusts the strength of sound from the subwoofer speaker.

**CENTER** — Adjusts the strength of sound from the center speaker.

**SVC** — Adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed.

Each mode is shown in the display as it changes. Turn the TUNE knob to adjust the setting to your liking. When the level reaches the center, you will see “C” in the display.

The system will return to the audio display about 5 seconds after you stop adjusting a mode.

### *Speed-sensitive Volume Compensation (SVC)*

The SVC mode controls the volume based on vehicle speed. The faster you go, the louder the audio volume becomes. As you slow down, the audio volume decreases.

The SVC has four modes; SVC OFF, SVC LOW, SVC MID, and SVC HIGH. Turn the TUNE knob to adjust the setting to your liking. If you feel the sound is too loud,

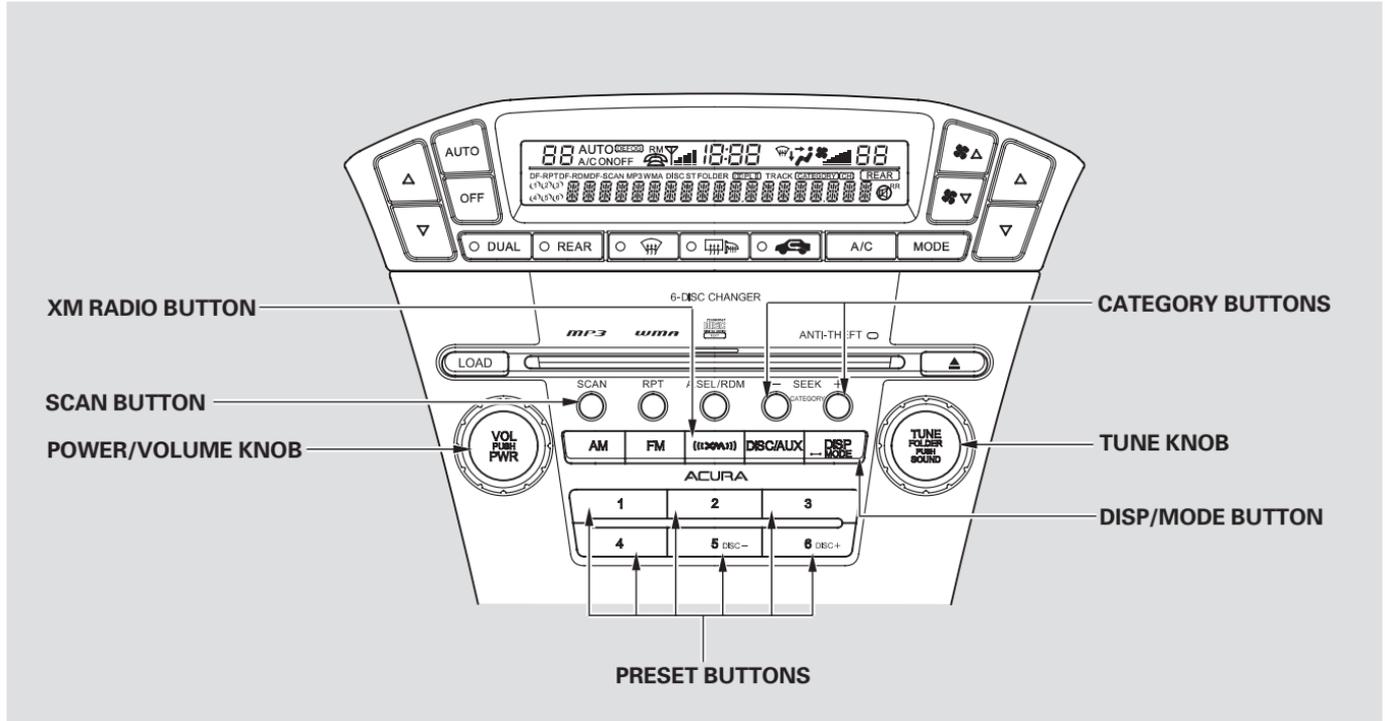
choose low. If you feel the sound is too quiet, choose high.

This function is set to MID as the default setting when the vehicle leaves the factory.

### **Audio System Lighting**

You can use the instrument panel brightness control buttons to adjust the illumination of the audio system (see page123). The audio system illuminates when the parking lights are on, even if the radio is off.

# Playing the XM® Satellite Radio (Models without navigation system)



CONTINUED

## Playing the XM® Satellite Radio (Models without navigation system)

---

Your vehicle is capable of receiving XM® Satellite Radio anywhere in the United States, except Hawaii and Alaska.

On Canadian models, you can also receive XM® Satellite Radio in Canada.

XM® is a registered trademark of XM Satellite Radio, Inc.

XM radio receives signals from two satellites to produce clear, high-quality digital reception. It offers many channels in several categories. Along with a large selection of different types of music, XM radio allows you to view channel and category selections in the display.

### Operating the Satellite Radio

To listen to XM radio, turn the ignition switch to the ACCESSORY (I) or the ON (II) position. Push the power/volume knob to turn on the audio system, and press the “XM” button. Adjust the volume by turning

the knob. The last channel you listened to will show in the display.

**MODE** – To switch between channel mode and category mode, press and hold the DISP/MODE button until the mode changes.

In the channel mode, you can select all of the available channels. In the category mode, such as Jazz, Rock, Classical, etc., you can select all of the channels within that category.

Each time you press and release the DISP/MODE button, the display changes in the following sequence: channel name, channel number, category, artist name, and music title.

You may experience periods when XM Radio does not transmit the artist’s name and song title information. If this happens, there is nothing wrong with your system.

**TUNE** – Turn the TUNE knob to change channel selections. Turn the knob right for higher numbered channels and left for lower numbered channels. In the category mode, you can only select channels within that category.

**CATEGORY (– or +)** – Press either button to select another category.

## Playing the XM® Satellite Radio (Models without navigation system)

**SCAN** — The SCAN function gives you a sampling of all channels while in the channel mode. In the category mode, only the stations within that category are scanned. To activate scan, press the SCAN button. The system plays each channel in numerical order for a few seconds, then selects the next channel. When you hear a channel you want to continue listening to, press the button again.

**Preset** — You can store up to 12 preset channels using the six preset buttons. Each button stores one channel from the XM1 band and one channel from the XM2 band.

To store a channel:

1. Press the XM button. Either XM1 or XM2 will show in the display.

2. Use the TUNE knob, or the CATEGORY or SCAN buttons to tune to a desired channel.

In category mode, only channels within that category can be selected. In channel mode, all channels can be selected.

3. Pick the preset button you want for that channel. Press and hold the button until you hear a beep.
4. Repeat steps 2 and 3 to store the first six channels.
5. Press the XM button again. The other XM band will show. Store the next six channels using steps 2 and 3.

Once a channel is stored, simply press and release the proper preset button to tune to it.

The presets may be lost if your vehicle's battery goes dead, is disconnected, or the radio fuse is removed.

### XM Radio Display Messages

**“LOADING”** — XM is loading the audio or program information.

**“OFF AIR”** — The channel currently selected is no longer broadcasting.

**“UPDATING”** — The encryption code is being updated. Wait until the encryption code is fully updated. Channels 0 and 1 should still work normally.

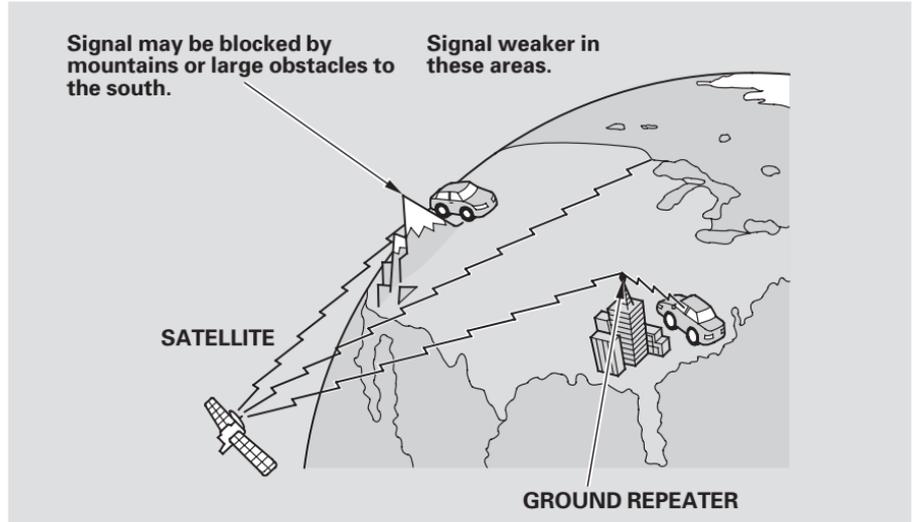
*CONTINUED*

## Playing the XM<sup>®</sup> Satellite Radio (Models without navigation system)

**“NO SIGNAL”** – The signal is currently too weak. Move the vehicle to an area away from tall buildings, and with an unobstructed view of the southern horizon.

**“ - - - ”** – The selected channel number does not exist or is not part of your subscription, or this channel has no artist or title information at this time.

**“ANTENNA”** – There is a problem with the XM antenna. Please consult your dealer.



The XM satellites are in orbit over the equator; therefore, objects south of the vehicle may cause satellite reception interruptions. To help compensate for this, ground-based repeaters are placed in major metropolitan areas.

Satellite signals are more likely to be blocked by tall buildings and mountains the farther north you travel from the equator. Carrying large items on a roof rack can also block the signal.

## Playing the XM® Satellite Radio (Models without navigation system)

Depending on where you drive, you may experience reception problems. Interference can be caused by any of these conditions:

- Driving on the south side of an east/west mountain road.
- Driving on the north side of a large commercial truck on an east/west road.
- Driving in tunnels.
- Driving on a road beside a vertical wall, steep cliff, or hill to the south of you.
- Driving on the lower level of a multi-tiered road.
- Driving on a single lane road alongside dense trees taller than 50 ft. (15 m) to the south of you.
- Large items carried on a roof rack.

There may be other geographic situations that could affect XM radio reception.

*As required by the FCC:  
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.*

### Receiving Satellite Radio Service

If your XM Radio service has expired or you purchased your vehicle from a previous owner, you can listen to a sampling of the broadcasts available on XM Satellite Radio. With the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY (I) or the ON (II) position, push the power/volume knob to turn on the audio system, and press the « XM » button. A variety of music types and styles will play.

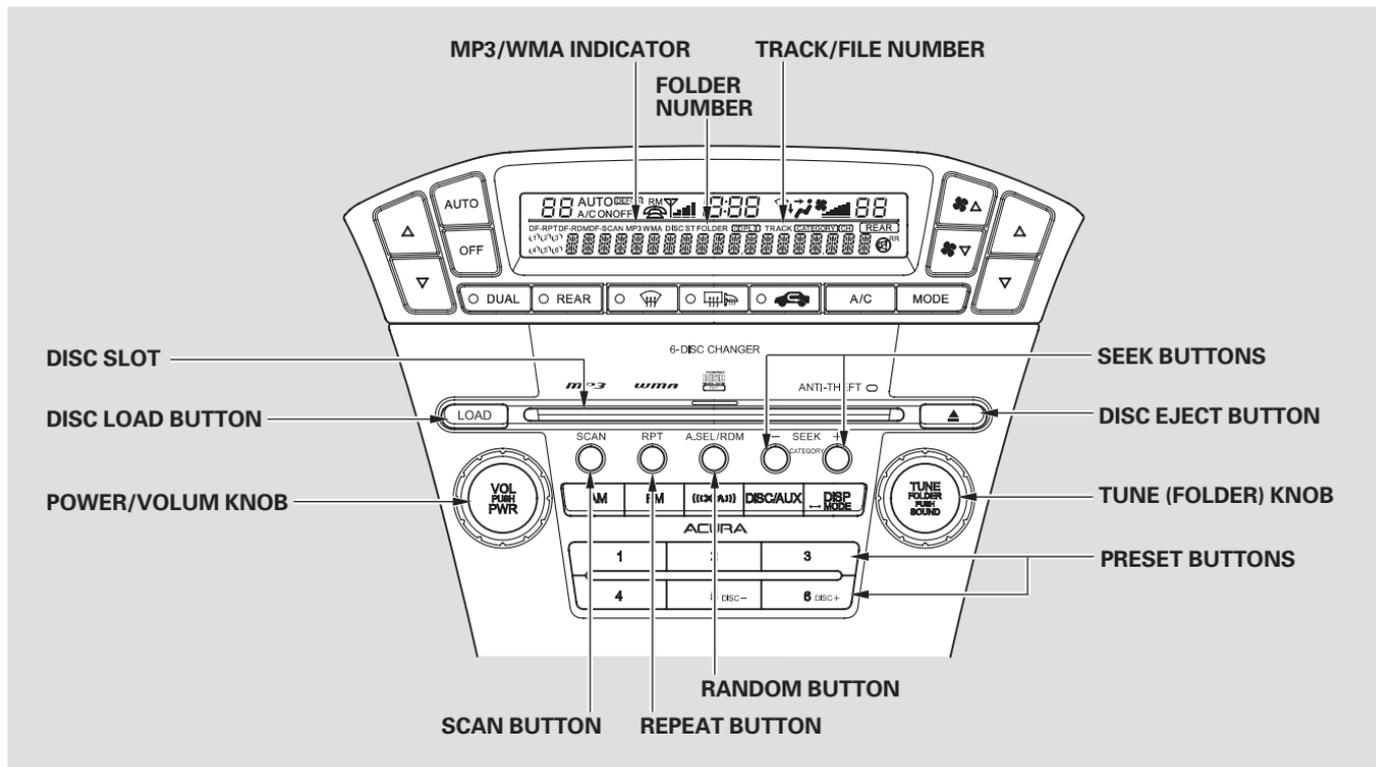
If you decide to purchase XM satellite radio service, contact XM Radio at [www.xmradio.com](http://www.xmradio.com), or at 1-800-852-9696. You will need to give them your radio I.D. number and your credit card number. To get your radio I.D. number, turn the TUNE

knob until "0" appears in the display. Your I.D. will appear in the display.

After you've registered with XM Radio, keep your audio system in the Satellite Radio mode while you wait for activation. This should take about 30 minutes.

While waiting for activation, make sure your vehicle remains in an open area with good reception. Once your audio system is activated, "CATEGORY" or "CH" will appear in the display, and you'll be able to listen to XM Radio broadcasts. XM Radio will continue to send an activation signal to your vehicle for at least 12 hours from the activation request. If the service has not been activated after 36 hours, contact XM Radio.

## Playing Discs (Models without navigation system)



## Playing Discs (Models without navigation system)

### To Play a Disc

To load or play discs, the ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position.

You operate the disc changer with the same controls used for the radio. To select the disc changer, press the DISC button. You will see “DISC” in the display. The disc and track numbers, and the elapsed time are shown in the display. You can also select the displayed information with the DISP button (see page 191 ). The system will continuously play a disc until you change modes.

#### NOTICE

*Do not use discs with adhesive labels. The label can curl up and cause the disc to jam in the unit.*

This audio system can also play CD-Rs and CD-RWs compressed in MP3 or WMA formats. When playing a disc in MP3, you will see “MP3” in the display. In WMA format, “WMA” will appear in the display. The disc, folder and track numbers are displayed. You can select up to 255 folders or tracks.

Video CDs and DVD discs do not work in this unit.

The specifications of the compatible MP3 file are:  
Sampling frequency: 32/44.1/48 kHz (MPEG1)  
16/22.05/24 kHz (MPEG2)  
Bit rate: 32/40/48/56/64/80/96/  
112/128/160/192/224/256/320 kbps  
Compatible with variable bit rate and multi-session  
Maximum layers  
(including ROOT): 8 layers

The specifications of the compatible WMA file are:  
Sampling frequency:  
22.051/32/44.1/48 kHz  
Bit rate:  
48/64/80/96/128/160/192 kbps  
Compatible with variable bit rate and multi-session  
Maximum layers  
(including ROOT): 8 layers

CONTINUED

## Playing Discs (Models without navigation system)

---

### NOTE:

If a file on an MP3 or WMA disc is protected by digital rights management (DRM), the audio unit displays CD FORMAT, and then skips to the next file.

### *Loading Discs*

Your vehicle's in-dash disc changer holds up to six discs.

1. Press the LOAD button until you hear a beep and see "LOAD" in the display. To load only one disc, press and release the LOAD button.
2. The disc number for an empty position begins blinking.
3. Insert the disc into the disc slot when the green disc load indicator comes on. Insert it only about halfway; the drive will pull it in the rest of the way. You will see "BUSY" in the display while the disc load indicator turns red and blinks as the disc is loaded.

You cannot load and play 3-inch (8-cm) discs in this unit.

4. When the disc load indicator turns green and "LOAD" appears in the display again, insert the next disc in the slot. Do not try to insert a disc until "LOAD" appears. You could damage the audio unit.
5. Repeat this until all six positions are loaded. If you are not loading all six positions, the system begins playing the last disc loaded.

You can also load a disc into an empty position while a disc is playing by pressing the appropriate preset button. The system stops playing the current disc and starts the loading sequence. It then plays the disc just loaded.

## Playing Discs (Models without navigation system)

### ***Text Data Display Function***

Each time you press the DISP button, the display shows you the text data on a disc, if the disc was recorded with text data.

You can see the album, artist, and track name in the display. If a disc is recorded in MP3 or WMA, you can see the folder and file name, and the album, artist, and track tag.

With the folder name, you will see the FOLDER indicator in the display. The TRACK indicator is shown with the file or track name.

When you press and release the DISP button while a disc without text data is playing, you will see “NO INFO” on the display.

The display shows up to about 16 characters of selected text data (the folder name, file name, etc.).

If the text data has more than 16 characters, you will see the first 15 characters and the > indicator in the display. Press and hold the DISP button until the next 16 characters are shown. You can see up to about 31 characters of the text data.

If you press and hold the DISP button again, the display shows the first 16 characters again.

If any letter is not available, it is replaced with “.” (dot) in the display. When the disc has no text data, you will see “NO INFO” on the display.

You will also see some text data under these conditions:

- When a new folder, file, or track is selected.
- When you change the audio mode to play a disc with text data or in MP3 or WMA.

- When you insert a disc, and the system begins to play.

When playing a CD-DA with text data, the album and track name are shown in the display. With a disc in MP3 or WMA, the display shows the folder and file name.

When you turn on the audio system next time, the system keeps your selection with the DISP button.

CONTINUED

## Playing Discs (Models without navigation system)

---

### *To Change or Select Tracks/Files*

Use the seek buttons while a disc is playing to select passages and change tracks (files in MP3 or WMA mode).

In MP3 or WMA mode, use the TUNE knob to select folders in the disc and use either seek button to change files.

To select a different disc, use the appropriate preset buttons (1 through 6). If you select an empty position, the system will go into the loading sequence (see page 190).

**SEEK/SKIP** – Each time you press and release the + seek button, the player skips forward to the beginning of the next track (file in MP3 or WMA mode). Press and release the – seek button to skip backward to the beginning of the current track. Press it again to skip to the beginning of the previous

track.

To move rapidly within a track or file, press and hold the + or – seek button.

### *In MP3 or WMA mode*

**FOLDER SELECTION** – To select a different folder, turn the TUNE knob to move to the beginning of the next folder. Turn the knob to the right until it clicks once to skip to the next folder, and to the left to move to the beginning of the current folder. Turn it again to skip to the beginning of the previous folder. Turning the TUNE knob more than two clicks skips several folders.

**REPEAT (Track Repeat)** – To continuously replay a track (file in MP3 or WMA mode), press and release the RPT button. You will see RPT in the display. Press and hold the RPT button to turn it off.

Pressing either seek button also turns off the repeat feature.

## Playing Discs (Models without navigation system)

*In MP3 or WMA mode*

**FOLDER REPEAT** — This feature, when activated, replays all the files on the selected folder in the order they are compressed in MP3 or WMA. To activate folder repeat mode, press and release the RPT button repeatedly until you see F-RPT in the display. The system continuously replays the current folder. Press and hold the RPT button to turn it off. Pressing the RDM button, or selecting a different folder with the TUNE knob also turns off the repeat feature.

**DISC REPEAT** — This feature continuously replays the current disc. To activate disc repeat, press and release the RPT button repeatedly until you see D-RPT in the display. Press and hold the RPT button again to turn it off.

Each time you press and release the RPT button, the mode changes from file repeat to folder repeat, to disc repeat then to normal playing.

**RANDOM (Random within a disc)** — This feature plays the tracks within a disc (the files in MP3 or WMA mode) in random order. To activate random play, press and release the RDM button. In MP3 or WMA mode, press the RDM button repeatedly to select RDM (within a disc random play). You will see RDM in the display. Press the RDM button for 2 seconds to return to normal play.

*In MP3 or WMA mode*

**FOLDER RANDOM** — This feature, when activated, plays the files within a current folder in random order, rather than in the order they are compressed in MP3 or WMA. To activate folder random play, press and release the RDM button repeatedly. You will see F-RDM in the display. The system will then select and play files randomly. This continues until you deactivate folder random play by pressing and holding the RDM button again, or you select a different folder with the TUNE knob.

Each time you press and release the RDM button, the mode changes from folder random play, to within a disc random play, then to normal play.

## Playing Discs (Models without navigation system)

---

**SCAN** – The SCAN function samples all the tracks on the disc in the order they are recorded on the disc (all files in the selected folder in MP3 or WMA mode). To activate the scan feature, press and release the SCAN button. You will see SCAN in the display. You will get a 10 second sampling of each track/file in the disc/folder. Press and hold the SCAN button to get out of scan mode and play the last track sampled.

*In MP3 or WMA mode*

**F-SCAN** – This feature, when activated, samples the first file in each folder on the disc in the order they are recorded. To activate the folder scan feature, press and release the SCAN button repeatedly. You will see F-SCAN in the display. The system will then play the first file in the main folders for about 10 seconds. If you do nothing, the system will then play the following first files for 10 seconds each. When it plays a file that you want to continue listening to, press and hold the SCAN button.

Pressing either seek button, or selecting a different disc (using the preset buttons) or folder (using the TUNE knob) turns off the SCAN or F-SCAN feature.

## Playing Discs (Models without navigation system)

**D-SCAN** – This feature, when activated, samples the first track in each disc in order (the first file in the main folder on each disc in MP3 or WMA mode). To activate the disc scan feature, press and release the SCAN button repeatedly until D-SCAN shows in the display. The system will then play the first track/file in the first main folder in the first disc for about 10 seconds. If you do nothing, the system will then play the following first tracks/files for 10 seconds each. When it plays a track/file that you want to continue listening to, press and hold the SCAN button again.

When the first track in the last disc, or the first file in the last main folder in the last disc begins to play, the disc scan mode will be canceled. Pressing either seek button or selecting a different folder with the TUNE knob also turns off the scan feature.

Each time you press and release the SCAN button, the mode changes from scan, disc scan, then to normal playing.

### *In MP3 or WMA mode*

Each time you press and release the SCAN button, the mode changes from file scan, folder scan, disc scan, then to normal playing.

### **To Stop Playing a Disc**

Press the eject button (  ) to remove the disc. If you eject the disc, but do not remove it from the slot, the system will automatically reload the disc after 10 seconds. To begin playing, press the DISC button.

You can also eject the disc when the ignition switch is off.

To play the radio when a disc is playing, press the AM or FM button. Press the DISC button again to switch back to the disc changer.

CONTINUED

## Playing Discs (Models without navigation system)

---

If you turn the system off while a disc is playing, either with the power/volume knob or by turning off the ignition switch, the disc will stay in the drive. When you turn the system back on, the disc will begin playing where it left off.

### ***Removing Discs from the In-dash Disc Changer***

To remove the disc currently in play, press the eject button. When a disc is removed from a slot, the system automatically begins the load sequence so you can load another disc in that position. If you do not remove the disc from the changer within 10 seconds, the disc will reload into the slot. Then the system returns to the previous mode (AM, FM, or XM).

To remove a different disc from the changer, first select it with the appropriate preset button. When that disc begins playing, press the eject button. Continue pressing the eject button to remove all the discs from the changer.

You can also eject discs when the ignition switch is off. The disc that was last selected is ejected first.

### **Protecting Discs**

For information on how to handle and protect compact discs, see page [227](#).

## Disc Changer Error Message (Models without navigation system)

If you see an error message in the display while playing a disc, find the cause in the chart to the right. If you cannot clear the error message, take your vehicle to your dealer.

The chart on the right explains the error messages you may see in the display while playing a disc.

If you see an error message in the display while playing a disc, press the eject button. After ejecting the disc, check it for damage or deformation. If there is no damage, insert the disc again.

The audio system will try to play the disc. If there is still a problem, the error message will reappear. Press the eject button, and pull out the disc. Insert a different disc. If the new disc plays, there is a problem with the first disc. If the error message cycle repeats and you cannot clear it, take your vehicle to a dealer.

Error Message	Cause	Solution
HEAT ERROR	High temperature	Will disappear when the temperature returns to normal.
FORMAT	Track/File format not supported	Current track will be skipped. The next supported track or file plays automatically.
BAD DISC – PLEASE CHECK OWNER'S MANUAL PUSH EJECT	Mechanical Error	Press the EJECT button and pull out the disc(s). Check the disc for serious damage, signs of deformation, excessive scratches, and/or dirt. Insert the disc again. If the code does not disappear, or the disc(s) cannot be removed, consult your dealer. Do not try to force the disc out of the player.
BAD DISC – PLEASE CHECK OWNER'S MANUAL	Servo Error	

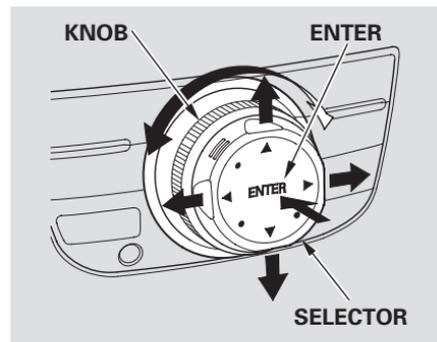
## Audio System (Models with navigation system)

---

### Interface Dial

*On models with navigation system*

Most audio system functions can still be controlled by standard buttons, dials, and knobs, but some functions can only be accessed using the interface dial. The interface dial has two parts, a knob and a selector.



The knob turns left and right. Use it to make selections or adjustments to a list or menu on the screen.

The selector can be pushed left, right, up, down, and in. Use the selector to scroll through lists, to select menus, and to highlight menu items. When you make a selection, push the center of the selector (ENTER) to go to that selection.

### Personalization Setting

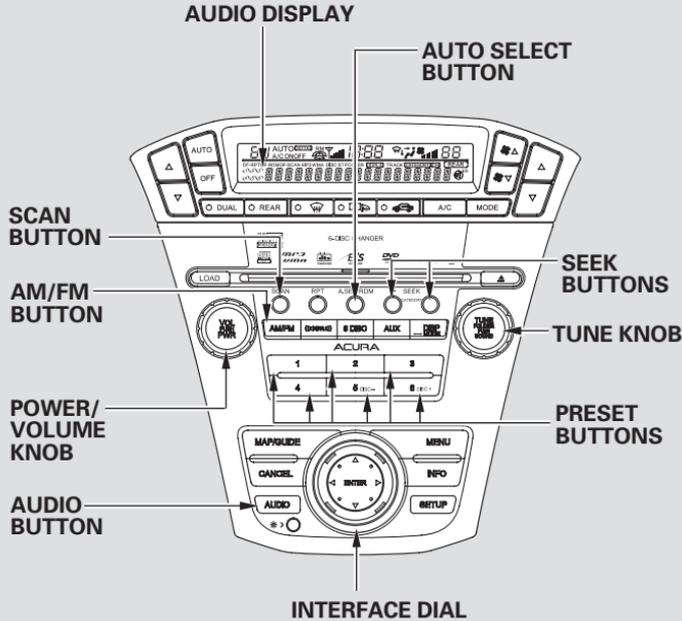
When you unlock the doors with your remote and turn the audio system on, the driver's ID (Driver 1 or Driver 2) is detected, and the radio presets and sound level settings (see page 205 ) are turned to the respective memorized mode automatically.

### Voice Control System

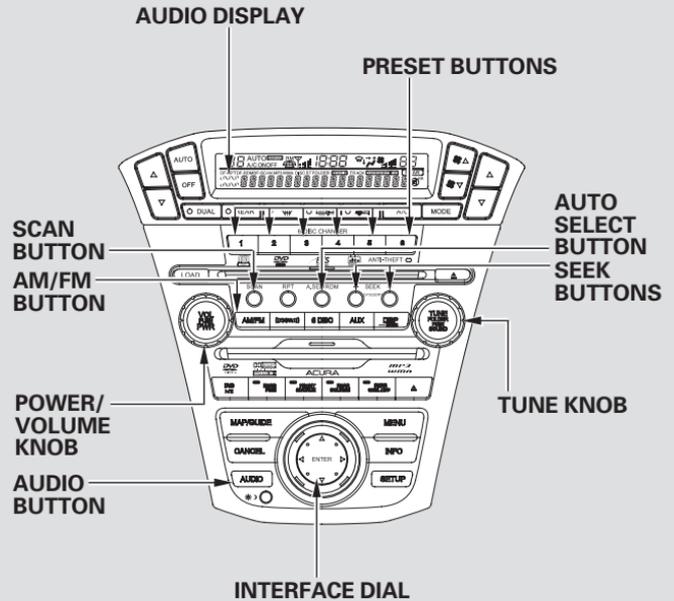
The audio system can also be operated by voice control. See the Navi section in your quick start guide for an overview of this system, and the navigation system manual for complete details.

# Playing the AM/FM Radio (Models with navigation system)

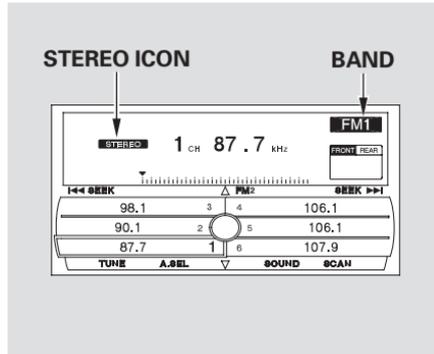
Without rear entertainment system



With rear entertainment system



## Playing the AM/FM Radio (Models with navigation system)



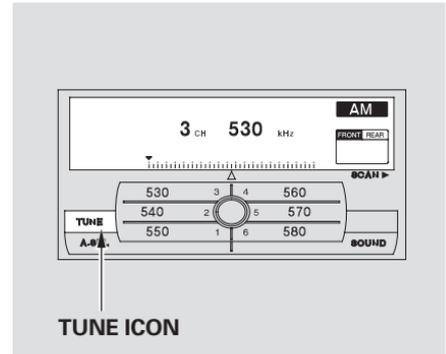
### To Play the AM/FM Radio

The ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or the ON (II) position. Press the AUDIO button to view the audio control display. Turn the system on by pressing the power/volume knob or the AM/FM button. Adjust the volume by turning the power/volume knob.

The band and frequency that the radio was last tuned to are shown on the display. To change bands, press the AM/FM button. You can also change bands by pushing the interface selector up. Each time you push it up, the band will change to FM1, FM2, or AM. On the FM bands, STEREO will be shown on the navigation screen and ST on the audio display, if the station is broadcasting in stereo. Stereo reproduction on AM is not available.

### To Select a Station

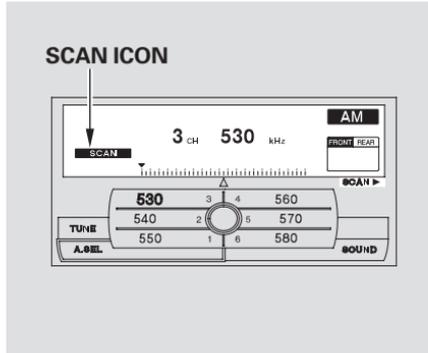
You can use any of five methods to find radio stations on the selected band: **TUNE**, **SEEK**, **SCAN**, the preset buttons, and **AUTO SELECT**.



**TUNE** — Use the TUNE knob to tune the radio to a desired frequency. Turn the knob right to tune to a higher frequency, or left to tune to a lower frequency. To tune with the interface dial, push the selector down, and turn the knob to TUNE. Then press ENTER on the selector, and turn the knob to the desired frequency. To exit the TUNE mode, press ENTER on the selector.

## Playing the AM/FM Radio (Models with navigation system)

**SEEK** – The SEEK function searches up and down from the current frequency to find a station with a strong signal. To activate it, press the – or + SEEK button, then release it. You can also activate SEEK by pushing the interface selector to the right or left.



**SCAN** – The SCAN function samples all stations with strong signals on the selected band. To activate it, press the SCAN button, then release it.

To scan with the interface dial, push the selector down, and then push it to the right. You will see SCAN flashing on the screen.

The system will scan for a station with a strong signal. When it finds one, it will stop and play that station for about 10 seconds. If you do nothing, the system will then scan for the next strong station and play it for 10 seconds. When it plays a station that you want to listen to, press the scan button again, or push the interface selector to the right again.

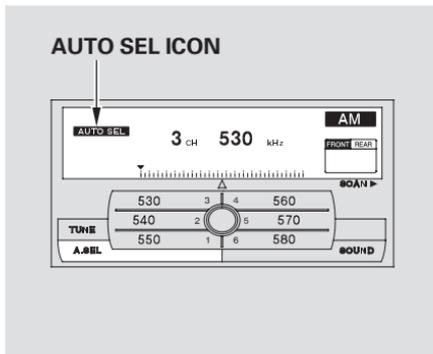
CONTINUED

## Playing the AM/FM Radio (Models with navigation system)

**Preset** — Each preset button or preset icon can store one frequency on AM and two frequencies on FM.

*To store a preset memory location:*

1. Select the desired band, AM or FM. FM1 and FM2 let you store two sets of FM frequencies with the preset buttons (on-screen icons).
2. Use the tune, seek, or scan function to tune the radio to a desired station.
3. Press the preset button, and hold it until you hear a beep. You can also store frequencies with the interface dial. Select the preset icon you want to store the frequency on, then press ENTER on the interface selector, and hold it for more than 2 seconds.
4. Repeat steps 1 through 3 to store a total of six stations on AM and twelve stations on FM.



**AUTO SELECT** — If you are traveling far from home and can no longer receive your preset stations, you can use the auto select feature to find stations in the local area.

Push the interface selector down to scroll down the screen, highlight A.SEL, then press ENTER on the interface selector. You will see AUTO SEL on the screen, and the system goes into scan mode for several seconds.

You can also press the A.SEL button. You will see AUTO SEL on the screen, and the system goes into scan mode for several seconds. The system stores the frequencies of six AM and twelve FM stations in the preset buttons.

You will see “0” displayed if auto select cannot find a strong station for every preset button. If you do not like the stations auto select has stored, you can store other frequencies on the preset buttons (icons) as previously described.

To turn off auto select, press ENTER on the interface selector or press the A.SEL button again. This restores the presets you originally set.

### Radio Frequencies

The radio can receive the complete AM and FM bands.

Those bands cover these frequencies:

AM band: 530 to 1,710 kHz

FM band: 87.7 to 107.9 MHz

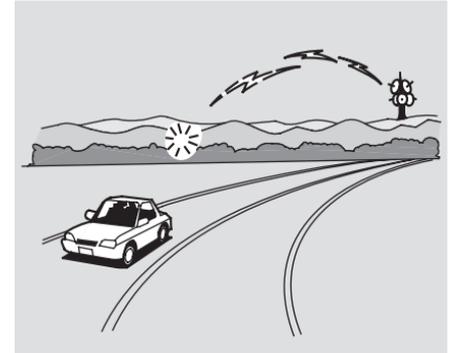
Radio stations on the AM band are assigned frequencies at least 10 kHz apart (530, 540, 550). Stations on the FM band are assigned frequencies at least 0.2 MHz apart (87.9, 88.1, 88.3).

Stations must use these exact frequencies. It is fairly common for stations to round-off the frequency in their advertising, so your radio could display a frequency of 100.9 even though the announcer may identify the station as “FM101.”

### Radio Reception

How well the radio receives stations is dependent on many factors, such as the distance from the station’s transmitter, nearby large objects, and atmospheric conditions.

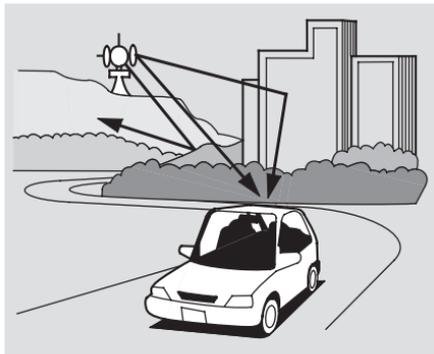
A radio station’s signal gets weaker as you get farther away from its transmitter. If you are listening to an AM station, you will notice the sound volume becoming weaker, and the station drifting in and out. If you are listening to an FM station, you will see the stereo indicator flickering off and on as the signal weakens. Eventually, the stereo indicator will go off and the sound will fade completely as you get out of range of the station’s signal.



Driving very near the transmitter of a station that is broadcasting on a frequency close to the frequency of the station you are listening to can also affect your radio’s reception. You may temporarily hear both stations, or hear only the station you are close to.

## AM/FM Radio Reception

---



Radio signals, especially on the FM band, are deflected by large objects such as buildings and hills. Your radio then receives both the direct signal from the station's transmitter, and the deflected signal. This causes the sound to distort or flutter. This is a main cause of poor radio reception in city driving.



Radio reception can be affected by atmospheric conditions such as thunderstorms, high humidity, and even sunspots. You may be able to receive a distant radio station one day and not receive it the next day because of a change in conditions.

Electrical interference from passing vehicles and stationary sources can cause temporary reception problems.

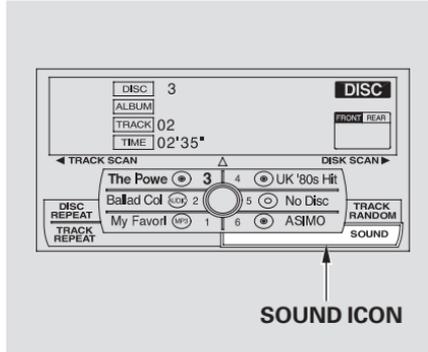
*As required by the FCC:  
Changes or modifications not expressly  
approved by the party responsible for  
compliance could void the user's  
authority to operate the equipment.*

## Playing the AM/FM Radio (Models with navigation system)

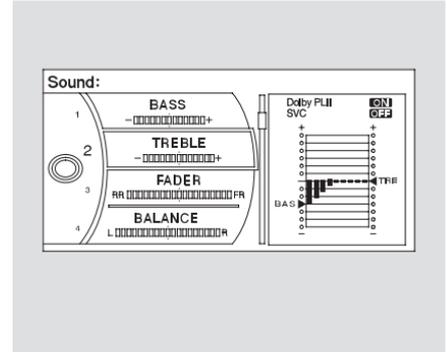
### Adjusting the Sound

BASS, TREBLE, BALANCE, and FADER are each adjustable. You can also adjust the strength of the sound coming from the center and subwoofer speakers. In addition, you can set the Dolby PL (ProLogic) II and Speed-sensitive volume compensation (SVC).

These adjustments can be made by the SOUND button or the interface dial.



To adjust them, press the AUDIO button, push the interface selector down, and turn the interface knob to SOUND. Then press ENTER on the selector.



Select the mode you want to adjust by turning the interface dial.

You can also adjust the sound by pushing the SOUND button repeatedly. Each mode is shown in the audio display as it changes. Turn the TUNE knob to adjust the setting to your liking.

CONTINUED

## Playing the AM/FM Radio (Models with navigation system)

---

**BASS/TREBLE** – To adjust bass and treble, select BASS or TREBLE, and press ENTER on the interface selector. The current setting is shown on the display. Turn the interface knob to the desired level, and enter your selection by pressing ENTER on the interface selector.

**FADER/BALANCE** – These modes adjust the strength of the sound coming from each speaker. Fader adjusts the front-to-back strength, while balance adjusts the side-to-side strength. To adjust fader and balance, select FADER or BALANCE, then press ENTER on the interface selector. The current setting is shown on the screen. Turn the interface knob to the desired level, and enter your selection by pressing ENTER on the interface selector. To equalize the fader or balance, turn the interface knob until the marks on the sound grid come to the center of the adjustment bar.

**CENTER/SUBWOOFER** – To adjust the strength of the sound from the center or subwoofer speaker, select it and press ENTER on the interface selector. Turn the interface knob to the desired level, and enter your selection by pressing ENTER on the interface selector.

## Playing the AM/FM Radio (Models with navigation system)

**Dolby PL (ProLogic) II** – Dolby PL (ProLogic) II signal processing creates multi-channel surround sound from 2 channel stereo audio sources. Dolby ProLogic II can only activate when listening to DISC (CD-DA, MP3/WMA), XM radio, and AUX. When ProLogic II is active, “PL II” is shown in the audio display.

ProLogic ON/OFF settings are independently controlled for DISC, XM and AUX sources.

To set this feature on or off, select Dolby PL II, and press ENTER on the interface selector. Rotate the interface dial to ON or OFF, and press ENTER.

Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. “Dolby”, “ProLogic”, and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

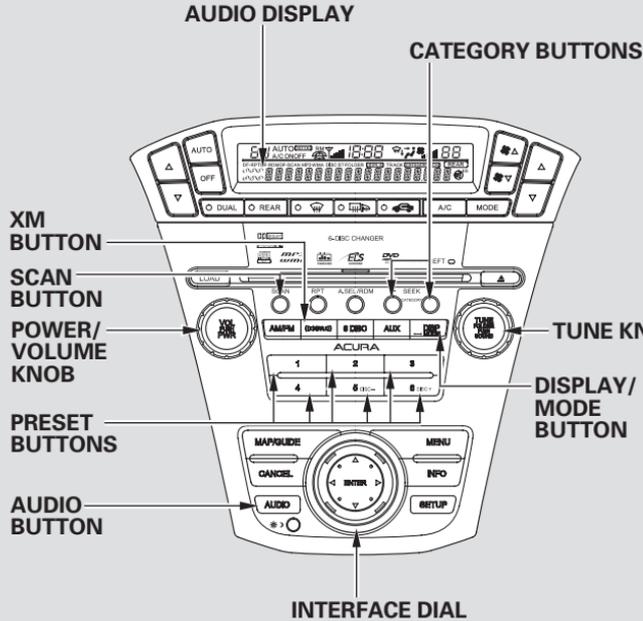
### *Speed-sensitive Volume Compensation (SVC)*

The SVC mode controls the volume based on vehicle speed. The faster you go, the louder the audio volume becomes. As you slow down, the audio volume decreases.

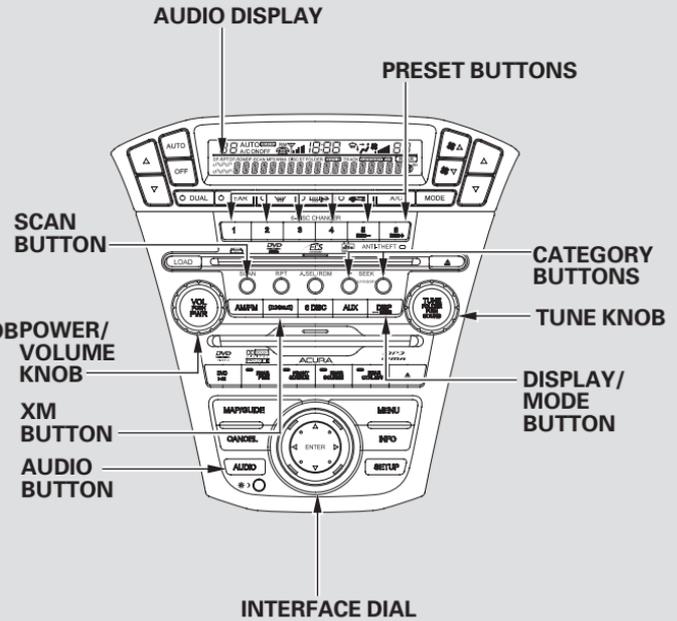
The SVC has four modes; SVC OFF, SVC LOW, SVC MID, and SVC HIGH. The default setting is MID. To change the SVC mode, select SVC, then press ENTER on the interface selector. The current setting is shown on the screen. Turn the interface knob to desired level, and enter your selection by pressing ENTER on the interface selector. If you feel the sound is too loud, choose low. If you feel the sound is too quiet, choose high.

# Playing the XM® Satellite Radio (Models with navigation system)

Without rear entertainment system



With rear entertainment system

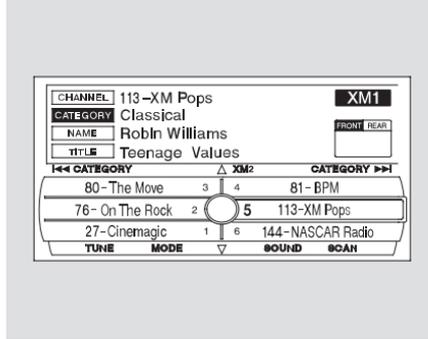


# Playing the XM<sup>®</sup> Satellite Radio (Models with navigation system)

Your vehicle is capable of receiving XM Satellite Radio anywhere in the United States, and Canada, except Hawaii and Alaska. XM is a registered trade mark of XM Satellite Radio, Inc.

XM Satellite Radio receives signals from two satellites to produce clear, high-quality digital reception. It offers many channels in several categories. Along with a large selection of different types of music, XM Satellite Radio also allows you to view channel and category selections in the audio display.

## Operating the XM Radio



To listen to XM Satellite Radio, turn the ignition switch to the ACCESSORY (I) or the ON (II) position. Push the power/volume knob to turn on the audio system, and press the « XM » button. The last channel you listened to will show in the display. Adjust the volume by turning the power/volume knob.

Push the AUDIO button to display XM in formation on the screen. You can operate XM Satellite Radio system with the interface selector.

CONTINUED

## Playing the XM<sup>®</sup> Satellite Radio (Models with navigation system)

---

**MODE** – To switch between the category mode and channel mode, press and hold the DISP/MODE button until the mode changes. The CATEGORY or CHANNEL mode is displayed on the screen. To switch the mode with the interface dial, scroll down, select MODE, and press ENTER on the selector.

In the category mode, such as Jazz, Rock, Classical, etc., you can navigate through all of the channels within that category. In the channel mode, you can select all of the available channels.

Each time you press and release the DISP/MODE button, the audio display changes in the following sequence: channel name, channel number, category, artist name, and music title.

On the screen, you will see the selected CHANNEL (number), CATEGORY, NAME (artist name), and TITLE (music title).

**TUNE** – Turn the TUNE knob to change channel selections. Turn the knob right for higher numbered channels and left for lower numbered channels. You can also change channels with the interface selector, push down the interface selector to choose TUNE and press ENTER on the selector. Turn the interface knob to the same directions. In the category mode, you can only select channels within that category.

## Playing the XM<sup>®</sup> Satellite Radio (Models with navigation system)

---

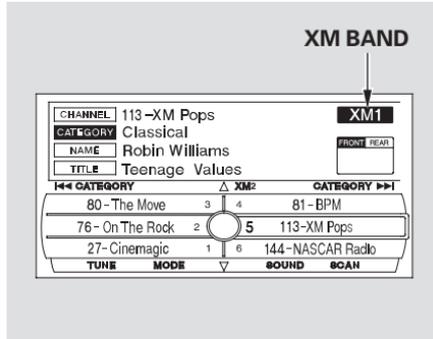
**CATEGORY** (– or +) – Press either button to select another category. You can also change by pushing the interface selector left or right.

**SCAN** – The scan function gives you a sampling of all channels while in the channel mode. In the category mode, only the channels within that category are scanned. To activate SCAN, press the SCAN button. To scan with the interface dial, scroll down, and push interface selector to the right. You will see SCAN on the screen and audio display.

The system plays each channel in numerical order for a few seconds, then selects the next channel. When you hear a channel you want to continue listening to, push the interface selector to the right again or press the SCAN button to cancel.

*CONTINUED*

## Playing the XM® Satellite Radio (Models with navigation system)



**Preset** — You can store up to 12 preset channels using the six preset buttons. Each button stores one channel from the XM1 band and one channel from the XM2 band.

To store a channel:

1. Press the «XM» button or scroll up by pushing the interface selector up. Either XM1 or XM2 will be shown on the display.

2. Use the TUNE or SCAN function to tune to a desired channel.

In category mode, only channels within that category can be selected. In channel mode, all channels can be selected.

3. Pick the preset button you want for that channel. Press and hold the PRESET button until you hear a beep. You can also pick the number with the interface dial. Select your desired number and press and hold ENTER on the interface selector.
4. Repeat steps 2 and 3 to store the first six channels.

5. Press the «XM» button or scroll up again. The other XM band will be shown. Store the next six channels using steps 2 and 3.

Once a channel is stored, press and release the proper preset button to tune to it.

## Playing the XM<sup>®</sup> Satellite Radio (Models with navigation system)

---

### XM Radio Display Messages

**“LOADING”** – XM is loading the audio or program information.

**“OFF AIR”** – The channel currently selected is no longer broadcasting.

**“UPDATING”** – The encryption code is being updated. Wait until the encryption code is fully updated. Channels 0 and 1 should still work normally.

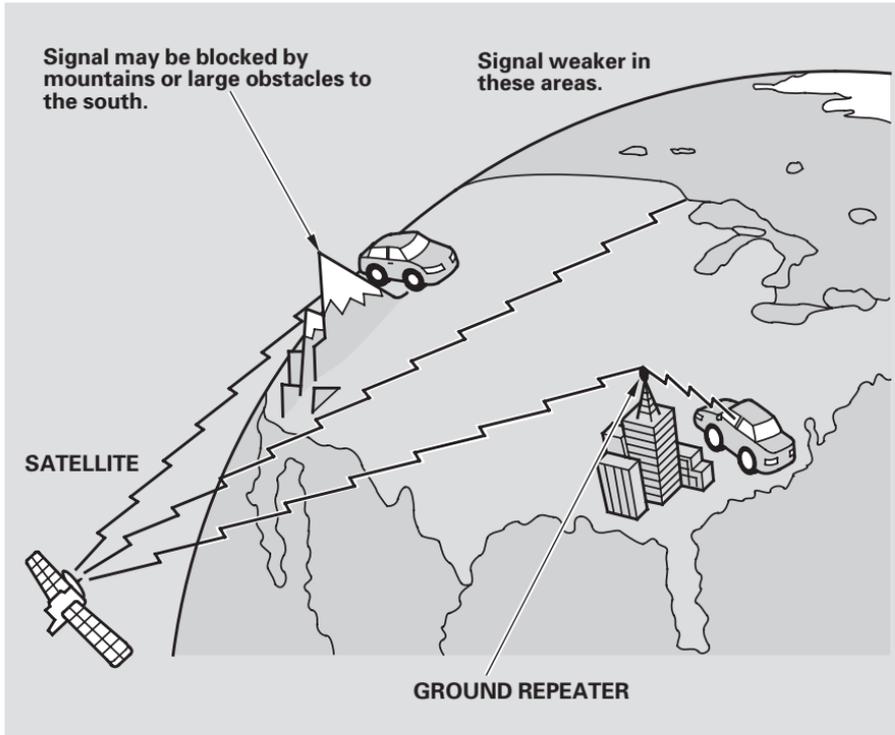
**“NO SIGNAL”** – The signal is currently too weak. Move the vehicle to an area away from tall buildings, and with an unobstructed view of the southern horizon.

**“ - - - - ”** – The selected channel number does not exist or is not part of your subscription, or this channel has no artist or title information at this time.

**“ANTENNA”** – There is a problem with the XM antenna. Please consult your dealer.

*CONTINUED*

## Playing the XM<sup>®</sup> Satellite Radio (Models with navigation system)



The XM satellites are in orbit over the equator; therefore, objects south of the vehicle may cause satellite reception interruptions. To help compensate for this, ground-based repeaters are placed in major metropolitan areas. Satellite signals are more likely to be blocked by tall buildings and mountains the farther north you travel from the equator.

## Playing the XM<sup>®</sup> Satellite Radio (Models with navigation system)

Depending on where you drive, you may experience reception problems. Interference can be caused by any of these conditions:

- Driving on the north side of an east/west mountain road.
- Driving on the north side of a large commercial truck on an east/west road.
- Driving in tunnels.
- Driving on a road beside a vertical wall, steep cliff, or hill to the south of you.
- Driving on the lower level of a multi-tiered road.
- Driving on a single lane road alongside dense trees taller than 50 ft. (15 m) to the south of you.

There may be other geographic situations that could affect satellite radio reception.

*As required by the FCC:  
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.*

### Receiving XM Satellite Radio Service

If your XM Radio service has expired or you purchased your vehicle from a previous owner, you can listen to a sampling of the broadcasts available on XM Satellite Radio. With the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY (I) or the ON (II) position, push the power/volume knob to turn on the audio system, and press the « XM » button. A variety of music types and styles will play.

If you decide to purchase XM satellite radio service, contact XM Radio at [www.xmradio.com](http://www.xmradio.com), or at 1-800-852-9696. You will need to give them your radio I.D. number and your credit card number. To get your

radio I.D. number, turn the TUNE knob until “0” appears in the display. Your I.D. will appear in the display.

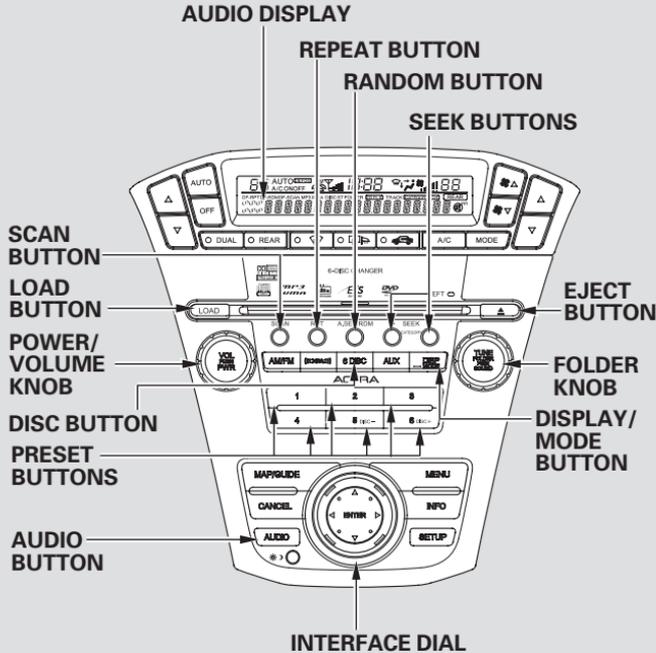
After you've registered with XM Radio, keep your audio system in the Satellite Radio mode while you wait for activation. This should take about 30 minutes.

While waiting for activation, make sure your vehicle remains in an open area with good reception. Once your audio system is activated, “category” or “CH” will appear in the display, and you'll be able to listen to XM Radio broadcasts. XM Radio will continue to send an activation signal to your vehicle for at least 12 hours from the activation request. If the service has not been activated after 36 hours, contact XM Radio.

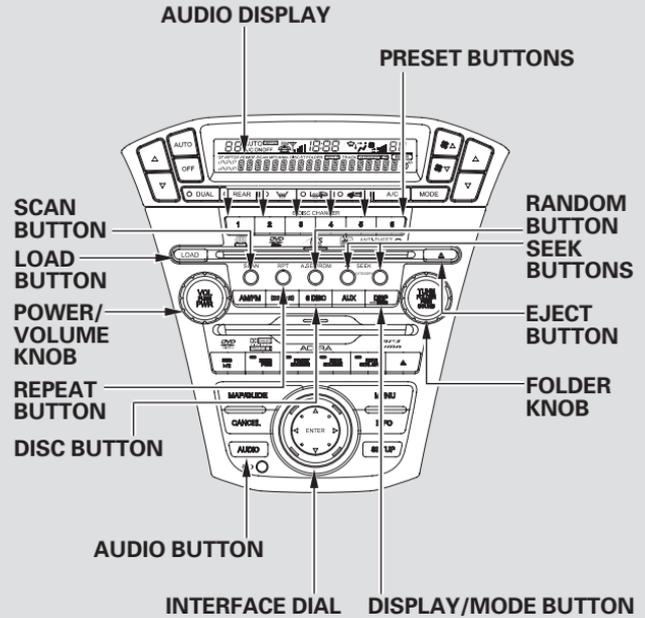
CONTINUED

# Playing Discs (Models with navigation system)

Without rear entertainment system



With rear entertainment system



## Playing Discs (Models with navigation system)

Your vehicle's audio system has an in-dash disc changer with the same controls used for the radio. To operate the disc changer, the ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or the ON (II) position.

The disc changer can play these disc formats:

- CD (CD-DA)
- CD-R/RW
- DVD-A
- DVD-R/RW
- MP3/WMA

The disc packages or jackets should have one of these marks.



The changer can also play MP3 or WMA format (see page 222).

DVD-A discs not meeting DVD verification standards may not be playable.

The changer cannot play DVD-V format.

Some CD-DA and CD-ROM mixed discs are not playable.

“DTS” and “DTS Digital Surround” are registered trademarks of Digital Theater Systems, Inc.

You cannot load and play 3-inch (8-cm) discs in this system.

### NOTICE

*Do not use discs with adhesive labels. The label can curl up and cause the disc to jam in the unit.*

## Playing Discs (Models with navigation system)

---

### Loading Discs in the Changer

To load multiple discs in one operation:

1. With the ignition in the ACCESSORY (I) or the ON (II) position, press and hold the LOAD button until you hear a beep and see "LOAD" in the upper display, then release the button.
2. Insert a disc into the slot. Insert it only about halfway; the drive will pull it in the rest of the way. You will see the "BUSY" in audio display. When you insert the first disc, the changer will start to play the disc.
3. When "LOAD" appears in the audio display again, insert the next disc into the slot.
4. Repeat this until all six positions are loaded. If you are not loading all six positions, the system will

then begin playing the last disc loaded.

If you stop loading discs before all six positions are filled, the system will wait for 10 seconds, stop the load operation, and begin playing the last disc loaded.

To load a single disc:

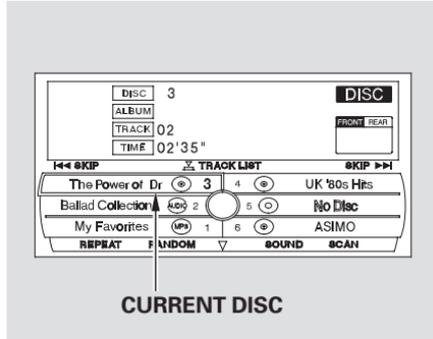
1. Press and release the LOAD button.
2. "NO DISC" is shown on the screen for an empty position in the changer. When the green load indicator comes on and you see the "LOAD" in the audio display, insert the disc into the slot. Insert it only about halfway; the drive will pull it in the rest of the way.

You can select the position to load a disc. Turn the interface knob or press a preset button to select the position, then press ENTER on the selector. This starts the loading sequence. If you do not select the position, the system loads the disc to the first empty position in numerical order.

If you press the LOAD button while a disc is playing, the system will stop playing that disc and start the loading sequence. It will then play the disc just loaded.

## Playing Discs (Models with navigation system)

### To Play a Disc



Select the changer by pressing the DISC button. The system will begin playing the last selected disc in the disc changer. You will see the current disc position highlighted.

To select a different disc, press the corresponding number on the preset buttons, or turn the interface knob to highlight the desired disc, then press ENTER on the interface selector.

The player can play CD-TEXT, MP3, and WMA formats.

When you play CD-TEXT, you will see the track name, artist name, and album name on the screen. When you play MP3/WMA discs, you will see the track name and folder name on the screen. If the disc was not recorded with this information, it will not be displayed.

Each time you press the DISP button, the audio display changes from album name, to track name, to artist name, and then to normal display that shows the track number and the current time. When playing a disc in MP3/WMA, the display mode changes from folder name, to file name, to artist tag, to album tag, to track tag, and then to normal display.

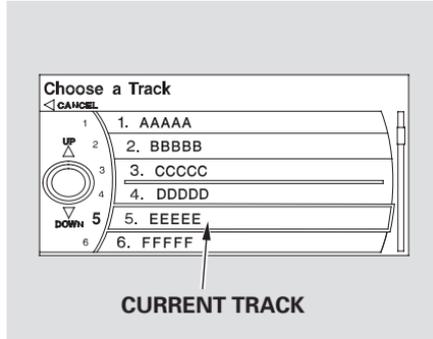
If the disc does not carry album, track, or artist name, pressing the DISP button changes the display from normal display to “NO INFO”.

### To Change Tracks

Each time you press and release the SEEK (+) button or push the interface selector to the right, the player skips forward to the beginning of the next track. Press and release the SEEK (-) button or push the interface selector to the left to skip backward to the beginning of the current track. Press the SEEK (-) button or push the interface selector to the left again to skip to the previous track. To move rapidly within a track, press and hold the SEEK (-) or SEEK (+) button.

## Playing Discs (Models with navigation system)

### To Choose a Track



You can also choose a track directly from a track list. Press ENTER on the interface selector, and the track list screen will be shown. If there are no track names, track numbers are displayed. You will see the current track is highlighted. Turn the interface knob to select the desired track, then press ENTER on the interface selector.

To exit the track list display, press the AUDIO button, or push the interface selector to the left.

### Track Scan

When you press the SCAN button or scroll down and push the interface selector to the left, the next track of the current track plays for about 10 seconds. You will see SCAN next to TRACK on the screen and audio display. To listen to the rest of the track, press and hold the SCAN button until you hear a beep or push the interface selector to the left again within 10 seconds.

If you don't, the system advances to the next track, plays about 10 seconds of it, and continues through the rest of the tracks the same way.

### Disc Scan

When you press the SCAN button repeatedly until you see D-SCAN in the audio display, or push down the interface selector to the right, the first track of the current disc plays for about 10 seconds. You will see SCAN next to DISC on the screen and D-SCAN in the audio display. To listen to the rest of the disc, press and hold the SCAN button until you hear a beep, or push down the interface selector to the right again within 10 seconds.

If you don't, the system advances to the next disc, plays about 10 seconds of it, and continues through the rest of the discs the same way. When the system reaches the last disc, DISC SCAN is canceled, and the disc plays normally.

### **Track Repeat**

To replay the current track continuously, press and release the RPT button, or use the interface selector to scroll down, select TRACK REPEAT, and press ENTER on the interface selector. As a reminder, you will see REPEAT next to TRACK on the screen and RPT in the audio display. To turn this feature off, press and hold the RPT button until you hear a beep, or highlight TRACK REPEAT (if not already highlighted), and press ENTER on the interface selector again.

### **Disc Repeat**

To replay the current disc continuously, press the RPT button repeatedly until you see D-RPT in the audio display, or use the interface selector to scroll down, select DISC REPEAT, and press ENTER on the interface selector. As a reminder, you will see REPEAT next to DISC on the screen and D-RPT in the audio display. To turn this feature off, press and hold the RPT button until you hear a beep, or highlight DISC REPEAT (if not already highlighted), and press ENTER on the interface selector again.

### **Random Play**

To play the tracks of the current disc in random order, press and release the RDM button, or use the interface selector to scroll down, select TRACK RANDOM, and press ENTER on the interface selector. As a reminder, you will see RANDOM next to TRACK on the screen and RDM in the audio display. To turn this feature off, press and hold the RDM button until you hear a beep, or highlight TRACK RANDOM (if not already highlighted), and press ENTER on the interface selector again.

## Playing Discs (Models with navigation system)

---

### To Pause a Disc

To pause a disc, press the preset button which corresponds to the current disc. To play the disc again, press the preset button again.

### To Stop Playing a Disc

To take the system out of disc mode, press the AM/FM button the « $\times$ » button, or the AUX button. To return to disc mode, press the DISC button.

If you turn the system off while a disc is playing, either with the power/volume knob or the ignition switch, play will continue at the same point when you turn it back on.

### Playing a DVD-A Disc

Use the disc controls previously described.

### Playing an MP3/WMA Disc

The changer plays MP3/WMA files in recorded order. Each disc can hold up to 400 playable files within 8 folder layers. When playing MP3 discs, a disc can support a maximum number of 100 folders, and each folder can hold 255 playable files.

The specifications of the compatible MP3 file are:

Sampling frequency: 32/44.1/48 kHz (MPEG1)

16/22.05/24 kHz (MPEG2)

Bit rate: 32/40/48/56/64/80/96/112/128/160/192/224/256/320 kbps

Compatible with variable bit rate and multi-session

The specifications of the compatible WMA file are:

Sampling frequency: 22.051/32/44.1/48 kHz

Bit rate: 48/64/80/96/128/160/192 kbps

Compatible with variable bit rate and multi-session

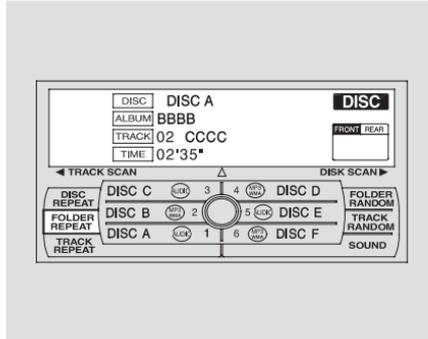
To play an MP3/WMA disc, use the disc controls previously described, along with the following information.

## Playing Discs (Models with navigation system)

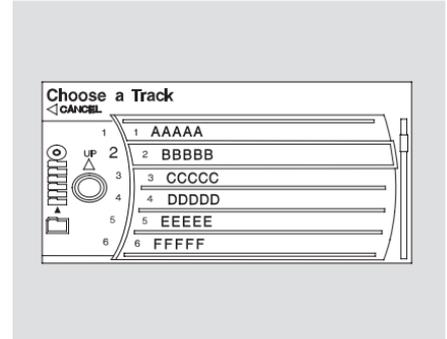
### Changing the Folders

While playing an MP3/WMA disc, you can select a folder within the disc by turning the TUNE knob. Each time you rotate the knob, the folder title and its first file's information appear in the audio display in recorded order.

### *Changing and Selecting the Folders/ Files*



If you use the interface selector, you can see the list of all the files and folders within a disc. While playing a MP3/WMA disc, press the AUDIO button. The currently playing folder and file information comes on the screen. Turn the selector knob, highlight the folder you want to see the information within, and press ENTER.



Repeat the procedure to go into a lower folder. If you highlight a file and press ENTER, the system starts to play your selected file.

## Playing Discs (Models with navigation system)

---

### Folder Scan

This feature, when activated, samples the first file of each folder for 10 seconds. To scan a folder, press the SCAN button repeatedly until you see F-SCAN in the audio display. You will see SCAN next to FOLDER and F-SCAN in the audio display.

To listen to the rest of the folder, press and hold the SCAN button until you hear a beep. If you do not, the system advances to the next folder, plays 10 seconds of it, and continues throughout the rest of the folder same way. When the system samples the first file of all folders, folder scan is canceled, and the last file played comes back.

### Folder Repeat

This feature, when activated, replays all files on the selected folder. To activate folder repeat mode, press and hold the RPT button repeatedly until you see F-RPT in the audio display, or use the interface selector to scroll down, select FOLDER REPEAT by interface knob, and press ENTER on the interface selector. You will see REPEAT next to FOLDER on the screen and F-RPT in the audio display. To turn this feature off, press and hold the PRT button until you hear a beep, or highlight FOLDER REPEAT (if not already highlighted), and press ENTER on the interface selector again.

### Folder Random

This feature, when activated, plays in the current folder in random order. To activate folder random play, press the RDM button twice, or use the interface selector to scroll down, select FOLDER RANDOM by interface knob, and press ENTER on the interface selector. You will see RANDOM next to FOLDER on the screen and F-RDM in the audio display. To turn this feature off, press and hold the RDM button until you hear a beep, or highlight FOLDER RANDOM (if not already highlighted), and press ENTER on the interface selector again.

### Removing Discs from the Changer

To remove the disc that is currently playing, press the eject button. You will see “EJECT” in the audio display. When you remove the disc from the slot, the system automatically enters the previous mode AM, FM1, FM2, or XM Satellite Radio. The system also begins the load sequence so you can load another disc. If you do not load another disc, the load sequence is canceled, and the system continues playing in the previous mode.

If you do not remove the disc from the slot, the system will reload the disc after 10 seconds. To begin playing the disc, press the disc button.

To remove a different disc from the changer, first select it by pressing the corresponding number on the preset button or turning the interface knob, and pressing ENTER on the interface selector. When that disc begins playing, press the eject button.

When you press the eject button while listening to the radio, or with the audio system turned off, the disc that was last selected is ejected. After that disc is ejected, pressing the eject button again will eject the next disc in numerical order. By doing this six times, you can remove all the discs from the changer.

You can also eject discs when the ignition switch is off:

To eject one disc, press and release the eject button.

To eject all discs, press and hold the eject button.

## Disc Changer Error Messages

---

If you see an error message in the display while playing a disc, find the cause in the chart to the right. If you cannot clear the error message, take your vehicle to your dealer.

The chart on the right explains the error messages you may see in the display while playing a disc.

If you see an error message in the display while playing a disc, press the eject button. After ejecting the disc, check it for damage or deformation. If there is no damage, insert the disc again.

The audio system will try to play the disc. If there is still a problem, the error message will reappear. Press the eject button, and pull out the disc. Insert a different disc. If the new disc plays, there is a problem with the first disc. If the error message cycle repeats and you cannot clear it, take your vehicle to a dealer.

Error Message	Cause	Solution
HEAT ERROR	High Temperature	Will disappear when the temperature returns to normal.
FORMAT	Track/File format not supported	Current track will be skipped. The next supported track or file plays automatically.
BAD DISC – PLEASE CHECK OWNER'S MANUAL PUSH EJECT	Mechanical Error	Press the EJECT button and pull out the disc(s). Check the disc for serious damage, signs of deformation, excessive scratches, and/or dirt. Insert the disc again. If the code does not disappear, or the disc(s) cannot be removed, consult your dealer. Do not try to force the disc out of the player.
BAD DISC – PLEASE CHECK OWNER'S MANUAL	Servo Error	

### General Information

- When using CD-R or CD-RW discs, use only high quality discs labeled for audio use.
- When recording a CD-R or CD-RW, the recording must be closed for it to be used by the disc changer.
- Play only standard, round, 5-inch (12 cm) discs. Smaller or odd-shaped discs may jam in the drive or cause other problems.
- Handle your discs properly to prevent damage and skipping.

### NOTICE

*Do not use discs with adhesive labels. The label can curl up and cause the disc to jam in the unit.*

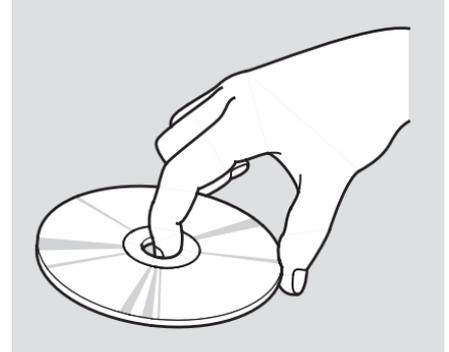
### Protecting Discs

When a disc is not being played, store it in its case to protect it from dust and other contamination. To prevent warpage, keep discs out of direct sunlight and extreme heat.

To clean a disc, use a clean soft cloth. Wipe across the disc from the center to the outside edge.

A new disc may be rough on the inner and outer edges. The small plastic pieces causing this roughness can flake off and fall on the recording surface of the disc, causing skipping or other problems. Remove these pieces by rubbing the inner and outer edges with the side of a pencil or pen.

Never try to insert foreign objects in the disc changer.

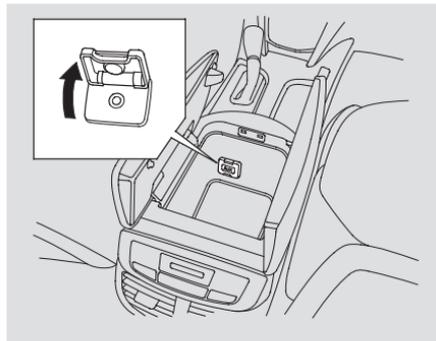


Handle a disc by its edges; never touch either surface. Do not place stabilizer rings or labels on the disc. These, along with contamination from finger prints, liquids, and felt-tip pens, can cause the disc to not play properly, or possibly jam in the drive.

## Auxiliary Input Jack

---

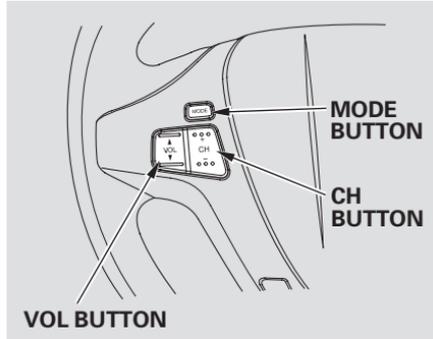
*All models except U.S. Entertainment Package and Canadian Elite Package*



The auxiliary input jack is inside the front console compartment. The system will accept auxiliary input from standard audio accessories.

When a compatible audio unit is connected to the jack, press the AUX button to select it.

### Remote Audio Controls



Three controls for the audio system are mounted in the steering wheel hub. These let you control basic functions without removing your hand from the wheel.

The VOL button adjusts the volume up (▲) or down (▼). Press the top or bottom of the button, hold it until the desired volume is reached, then release it.

The MODE button changes the mode. Pressing the button repeatedly selects FM1, FM2, AM, DISC (if a disc is loaded), DVD video (if equipped), XM1, XM2, or AUX.

If you are listening to the radio, use the CH button to change stations. Each time you press the top (+) of the button, the system goes to the next preset station on the band you are listening to. Press the bottom (-) to go back to the previous station.

To search up and down from the current frequency and find a station with a strong signal, press the top (+) or bottom (-) of the button for 1 second.

If you are playing a disc, the system skips to the beginning of the next track each time you press the top (+) of the CH button. Press the bottom (-) to return to the beginning of the current track. Press it again to return to the previous track. You will see the disc and track numbers in the upper display.

To go to the next disc, press the top (+) of the button. Press the bottom (-) to go back to the previous disc. When you play an MP3/WMA disc, press the top (+) of the button for 1 second to go to the next folder. Press the bottom (-) for 1 second to go back to the previous folder.

*CONTINUED*

## Remote Audio Controls

---

If you are listening to XM Satellite Radio, use the CH button to change channels. Each time you press the top (+) of the button, the system goes to the next preset channel. Press the bottom (-) to go back to the previous preset channel. To go to the next channel of the category you are listening to, press the top (+) of the button for 1 second. Press the bottom (-) for 1 second to go back to the previous channel.

If you are playing a DVD video, use the channel button to change chapters. Each time you press the top (+) of the button, the system goes to the next chapter. Press the bottom (-) to return to the beginning of the current chapter. Press it again to return to the previous chapter.

Your vehicle's audio system will disable itself if it is disconnected from electrical power for any reason. To make it work again, you must enter a specific five-digit code with the preset buttons. Because there are hundreds of number combinations possible from the five digits, making the system work without knowing the exact code is nearly impossible.

You should have received a card that lists your audio system code number and serial number. It is best to store this card in a safe place at home. In addition, you should write the audio system's serial number in this owner's manual.

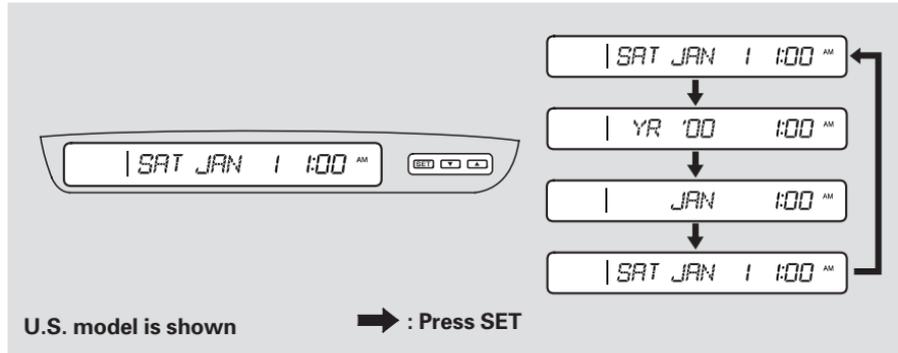
If you lose the card, you must obtain the code number from your dealer. To do this, you will need the audio system's serial number.

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead, or the radio fuse is removed, the audio system will disable itself. If this happens, you will see "ENTER CODE" in the audio display the next time you turn on the system. Use the preset buttons to enter the five-digit code. The code is located on the radio code card included in your owner's manual kit. When it is entered correctly, the radio will start playing.

If you make a mistake entering the code, do not start over; complete the five-digit sequence, then enter the correct code. You have 10 tries to enter the correct code. If you are unsuccessful in 10 attempts, you must then leave the system on for 1 hour before trying again.

The system will retain your AM and FM presets even if power is disconnected.

## Setting the Clock and Calendar



*On models without navigation system*  
You can see the clock and calendar information on the upper display.

To set the clock and the calendar:

1. Press and hold the SET button until the clock display begins to blink.
2. Press and release the SET button repeatedly. The mode switches from hours, minutes, AM/PM, year, month, then to day as shown above.
3. Select the desired mode by pressing the SET button, then press either ▼ or ▲ button to change the setting.
4. After you set the day information, pressing the SET button again will cancel this setting mode and the system shows the adjusted display.

The system will also automatically return to the normal display about 10 seconds after you stop adjusting a mode.

*On models with navigation system*  
The navigation system receives signals from the global positioning system (GPS), and the displayed time is updated automatically by the GPS. Refer to the navigation system manual for how to adjust the time.

*Available on U.S. Entertainment Package and Canadian Elite Package models*

Your vehicle is equipped with a rear entertainment system that includes a DVD player for the enjoyment of the rear passengers.

With this system, the rear passengers can enjoy a different entertainment source (radio, disc changer, DVD player, XM Radio, or optional CD changer/tape player) than the front seat occupants. The audio is broadcast through the supplied wireless headphones.

The ignition switch must be in the ACCESSORY (I) or the ON (II) position to operate the rear entertainment system.

### **To Turn On the System**

Press the REAR PWR button. The indicator on the REAR PWR button will come on, as well as the indicator on the FRONT SOURCE button. The rear seat passengers can then operate the rear system from the control panel in the ceiling. The rear control panel can also be detached and used as a remote control, by pushing the RELEASE button, and pulling the remote toward you. Pressing the REAR CTRL OFF button disables rear control. The indicator in the button comes on and your passengers can no longer operate the system with the rear control panel. When the button is pressed, the “CTRL OFF” message appears in the overhead screen to let your passengers know that the control panel is disabled. The rear system selects the source it was last set to. If that source has been removed (the DVD has been ejected from the player, for example),

you will see “DVD EJECT” in the display. You should select another source or insert a DVD.

### **Rear Speakers**

When you turn on the system, the rear speakers are automatically turned off if the rear system selects a different entertainment source than the front system. You will see the Rear Speakers Off icon both in the audio display and the overhead screen. The sound for the rear system is sent to the wireless headphones.

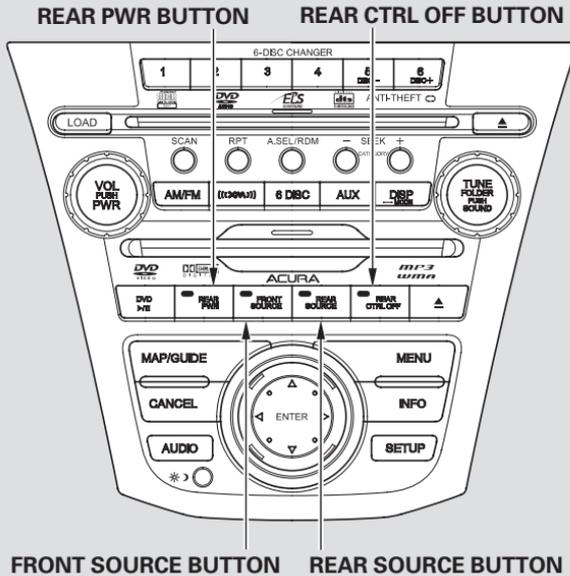
If you want to turn the rear speakers on again, press and hold the REAR PWR button until the Rear Speakers Off icon goes off.

**NOTE:** The rear speakers are connected to the front system, so they will always play the source that the front system is set to.

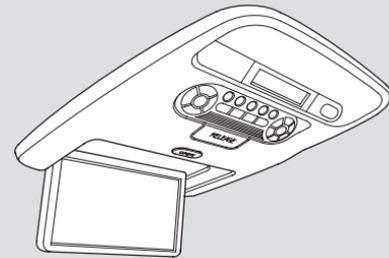
*CONTINUED*

# Rear Entertainment System

*U.S. Entertainment Package and  
Canadian Elite Package models*



Overhead Screen Unit



### To Select Rear Entertainment from the Front Control Panel

To operate the rear entertainment system from the front panel, press the REAR SOURCE button. You will hear two beeps and the indicator in the button comes on to show that the control panel is enabled.

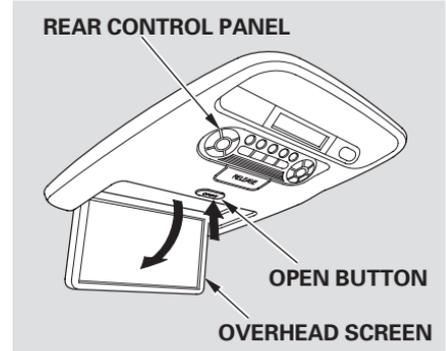
If you do not operate the rear entertainment system from the front panel within 10 seconds, the indicator goes off and the FRONT SOURCE indicator comes on automatically.

To play the radio, the buttons for the front entertainment system have the same functions.

If discs are loaded in the disc changer of the upper part, select the 6 DISC button. If a disc is loaded in the lower player, select the DVD button.

### Operating the DVD Player from the Front Control Panel

The DVD player in your rear entertainment system can play DVD video discs, audio CDs MP3/WMA discs and DTS CDs.

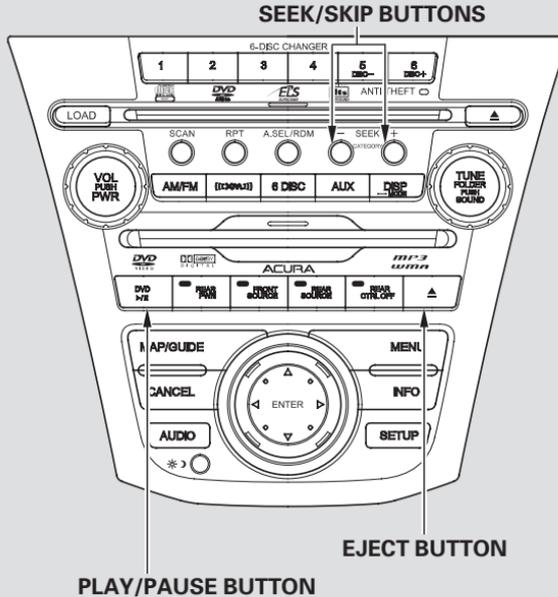


Open the overhead screen by pushing the OPEN button. The screen will swing down part-way. Pivot the screen the rest of the way. If you pivot the screen too far forward, past the second detent, the display will turn off. Pivot the screen back to the second or first detent to turn the display back on. To close the screen, pivot it up until it latches.

*CONTINUED*

## Rear Entertainment System

### *U.S. Entertainment Package and Canadian Elite Package models*



Insert a DVD into the lower DVD/CD slot in the audio unit.

Push the DVD in halfway, the drive will pull it in the rest of the way.

**PLAY** – Press the DVD (▶/||) button if the DVD does not start playing automatically.

**PAUSE** – Press the DVD (▶/||) button to pause the DVD. Press the button again or press PLAY to resume. Pause works only with the DVD player.

**SEEK/SKIP** — Press and hold the + button to move forward; you will see the time elapsed shown in the overhead screen advances rapidly. Press and hold the – button to move backward; you will see the time elapsed shown in the overhead screen decreases. Release the button when the system reaches the point you want.

Each time you press the + button and release it, the system skips forward to the beginning of the next track or chapter. Press and release the – button to skip backward to the beginning of the current track. Press and release it again to skip to the beginning of the previous track or chapter.

**EJECT** — Press the eject button to remove the DVD from the drive.

### To Return to Front Audio Controls

To return front panel control to the front audio system. Press the FRONT SOURCE button. You will hear a beep and the indicator in the button comes on. The indicator also comes on automatically, when you do not operate the rear entertainment system for 10 seconds.

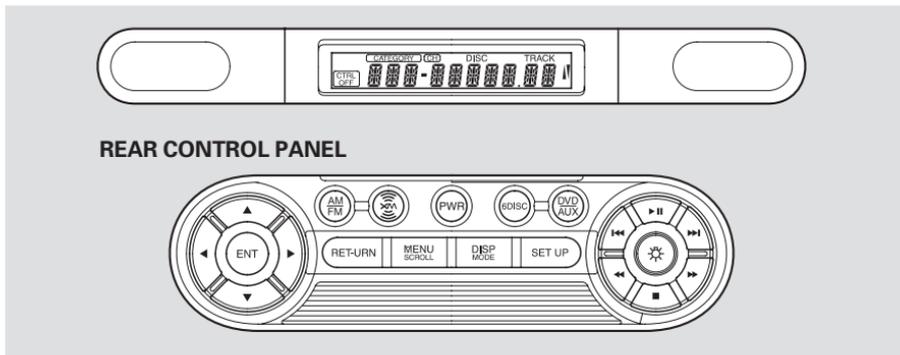
### Using the Rear Control Panel

To turn on the rear entertainment system from the rear control panel, press the PWR button. Use the AM/FM button, XM RADIO button, 6 DISC button, DVD button, or AUX button to select the entertainment source. The selected source will be shown in the display. Make sure the rear control operation has not been disabled with the REAR CTRL button on the front panel. When the audio system is off or the front side rear power is off, the rear control panel cannot be turned on.

## Rear Entertainment System

### To Play the Radio from the Rear Control Panel

Use the ▲, ▼, ◀, or ▶ button to highlight SEEK, TUNE, AUTO SELECT, SCAN, or one of the preset radio stations on the overhead screen. You can enter the highlighted function by pressing the ENT button. These functions have the same features as those of the front audio system. You can also use the ◀◀ or ▶▶ buttons to seek up/down and ▶▶ or ◀◀ to tune up/down.



### To Play the XM Radio from the Rear Control Panel

You can also use the ◀◀ or ▶▶ buttons to change categories up/down and ▶▶ or ◀◀ to change channels up/down within a category (in CATEGORY mode) or up/down for all channels (in CH mode).

Use the ▲, ▼, ◀, or ▶ button to highlight CATE (to change categories), CHAN (to change channels), MODE (to

change category or channel mode), SCAN, or one of the preset channels on the overhead screen. You can enter the highlighted function by pressing the ENT button. These functions have the same features as those of the front audio system.

While the overhead screen is closed, you can see the XM radio information in the subsidiary display in the ceiling. Pressing the DISP MODE button repeatedly changes the subsidiary display from the channel number, to the category name, to the music title, to the artist name, and to the channel name, and then back to the channel number.

To change mode, press and hold the DISP MODE button for 5 seconds.

### To Play a Disc in the 6-Disc Changer from the Rear Control Panel

If discs are loaded in the disc changer, select them by pressing the 6 DISC button.

Use the ▲, ▼, ◀, or ▶ button to highlight REPEAT, RANDOM, SCAN, ⏮, ⏭ (skip), ⏪, or ⏩ (cue) on the overhead screen. You can enter the highlighted function by pressing the ENT button. These functions have the same features as those of the front audio system.

To change the disc currently playing, use the ▲, ▼, ◀, or ▶ button to highlight your selected disc icon, and press ENT.

If CDs are loaded in the CD changer and the overhead screen is not open, pressing the ▲ or ▼ button changes the discs.

## Rear Entertainment System

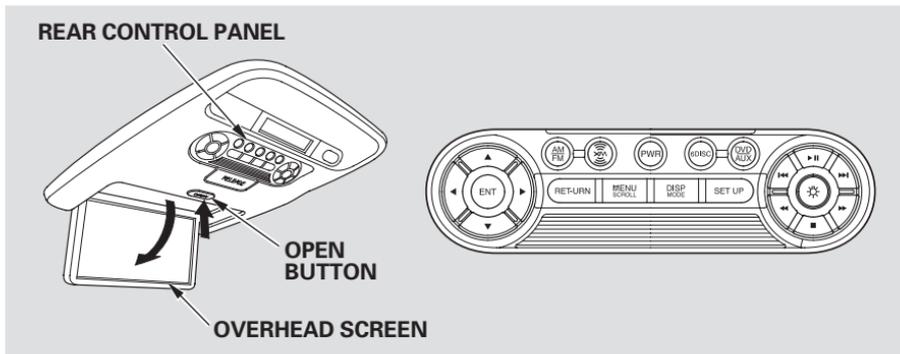
### To Play a DVD from the Rear Control Panel

The video screen is for use by rear seat passengers only. The driver and front seat passenger should not try to view the screen while driving.

Open the overhead screen by pushing the OPEN button. The screen will swing down part-way. Pivot the screen the rest of the way. If you pivot the screen too far forward, past the second detent, the display will turn off. Pivot the screen back to the second or first detent to turn the display back on. To close the screen, pivot it up until it latches.

Press the **▶||** button when you want to pause the DVD. Press this button again to go back to PLAY.

Press the **▶▶** button to skip to the beginning of the next chapter. Press the **◀◀** button to return to the beginning of the current chapter.

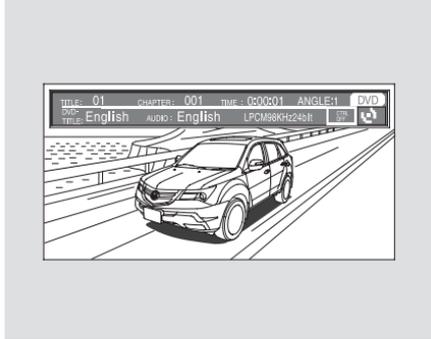


Press the **◀◀** button again quickly to go to the previous chapter.

To move rapidly within a chapter, press and hold the **▶▶** or **◀◀** button. The system will continue to move through the chapter. Press the **▶▶** button to move forward, or the **◀◀** button to move backward. Release the button when the system reaches the point you want.

To select the menu on the DVD, press the MENU/SCROLL button. Use the **▲**, **▼**, **▶**, and **◀** buttons to move to the desired menu selection, then press the ENT button to enter your selection.

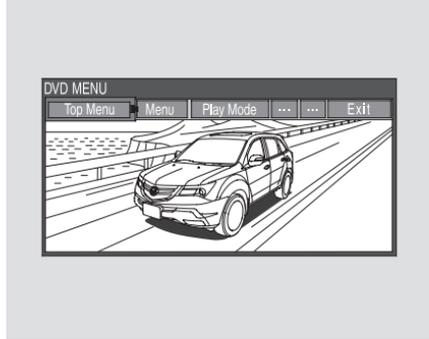
## DISP Button



When you press the DISP button while a DVD is playing, the current statuses of title, chapter, elapsed time, angle, subtitle, audio, and sound characteristics, with the personal surround logo are displayed. To return to the DVD video screen, press the DISP button again.

If you do not press the DISP button, the screen returns to the DVD video screen after several seconds.

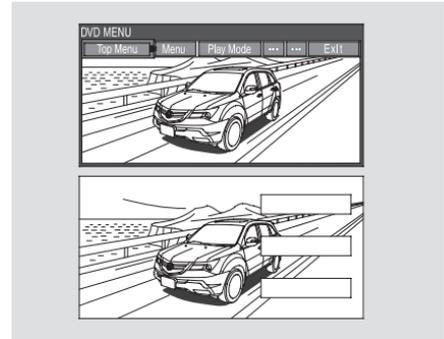
## MENU SCROLL Button



When you press the MENU SCROLL button while a DVD is playing, the DVD Menu appears. The menu options are TOP MENU, MENU, PLAY MODE, SEARCH, and NumInput.

To go to your selected menu, use the **▶** or **◀** button to highlight the icon and press the ENT button. To return to the DVD video screen, select EXIT.

## Top Menu

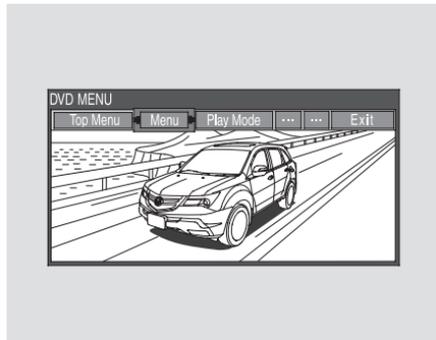


When you select "TOP MENU", the screen changes to the DVD's title menu. This menu also appears when you press the MENU SCROLL button while a DVD is not playing. To go back to play, press the RETURN button.

*CONTINUED*

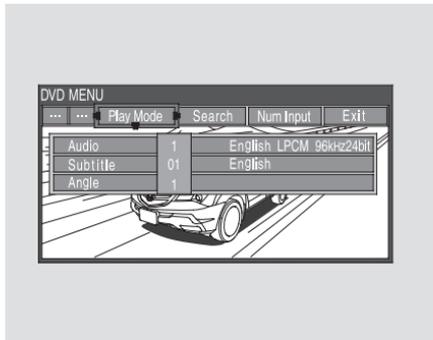
## Rear Entertainment System

### Menu



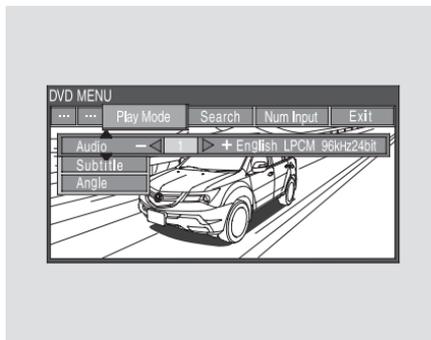
When you select “MENU” with the **▶** or **◀** button, the screen changes to the DVD’s title menu.

### Play Mode



When you select “PLAY MODE” with the **▶** or **◀** button, you can change the DVD’s Audio, Subtitle or Angle setting.

### “Audio”

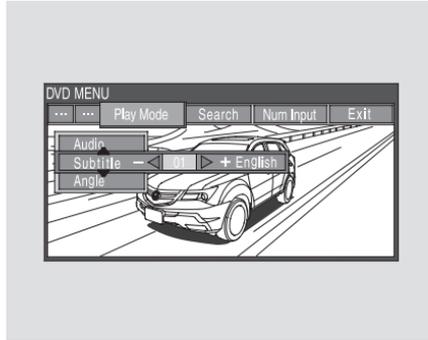


To change the Audio setting, highlight “Audio” from the play mode menu with the **▼** or **▲** button and press the ENT button. A submenu of the dubbed language appears. You can select another language by pressing the **▶** or **◀** button. The sound characteristics (Dolby Digital, LPCM, MPEG Audio, dts) recorded with the selected language is also displayed next to the language.

The selectable languages vary from DVD to DVD, and this feature may not be available on some DVDs.

Press the RETURN button or cursor back with the ▼ or ▲ button to go back to the top of the Play Mode menu. Press the RETURN button again to exit completely.

### *“Subtitle”*



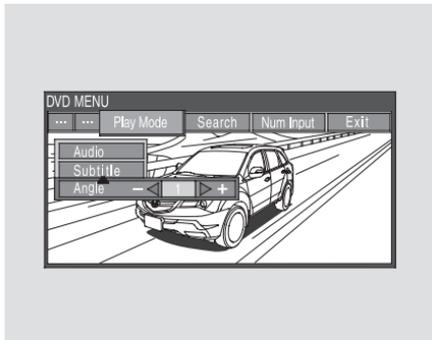
To change the DVD's subtitle, highlight "Subtitle" from the play mode menu with the ▼ or ▲ button and press the ENT button. You can see the available subtitles with the ► or ◀ button. Press the ENT button when your desired subtitle is highlighted.

After selecting your desired subtitle, press the RETURN button or cursor back with the ▼ or ▲ button to go back to the top of the Play Mode menu. Press the RETURN button again to exit completely.

CONTINUED

## Rear Entertainment System

### “Angle”



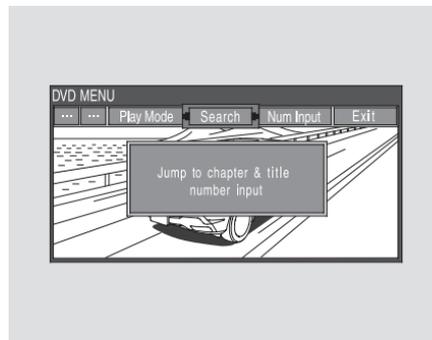
To change the view angle, highlight “Angle” from the play mode menu with the ▼ or ▲ button and press the ENT button. You can see the available angle options with the ► or ◀ button. Press the ENT button when your desired subtitle is highlighted.

If there are no multiple angles available on the DVD, you cannot change from “Angle 1”.

Press the RETURN button or cursor back with the ▼ or ▲ button to go back to the top of the Play Mode menu.

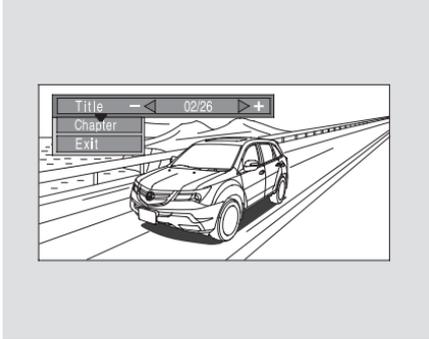
Press the RETURN button again to exit completely.

### Search



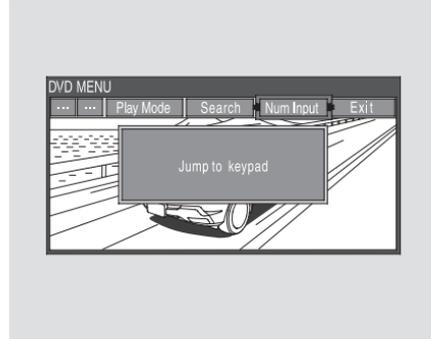
When you highlight “Search” with the ► or ◀ button, the “Jump to chapter and title number input” message appears. To select “Chapter” or “Title” search, press the ENT button.

## “Title/Chapter Search”



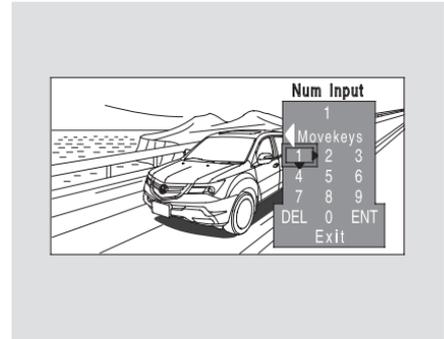
When you “Title” highlighted, use the **▶** or **◀** button to jump to your desired title and press the ENT button. When “Chapter” is highlighted, follow the same procedure for the chapter search.

## NumInput



A numerical command can be issued to a DVD by inputting a two digit number, and a button number can be selected on the screen.

When you highlight, “NumInput” with the **▶** or **◀** button, the “Jump to keypad” message appears. Press the ENT button to go to the NumInput selection screen.



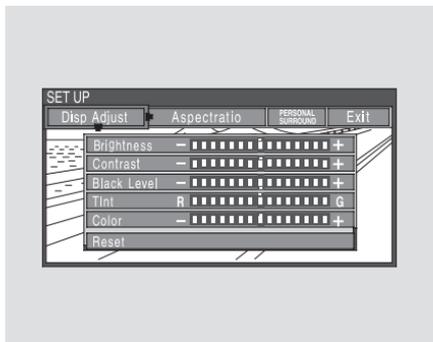
Select the first digit number using the **▼**, **▲**, **▶**, or **◀** button, and enter it by pressing the ENT button. If you want to change the number, select “DEL,” and press the ENT button, then select and enter the new number.

CONTINUED

## Rear Entertainment System

Select and enter the second digit number the same way. The cursor will automatically move to the “ENT” icon when you press the ENT button. Press the ENT button to enter the number command. To go back to the DVD screen, press the RETURN button or select EXIT and press the ENT button.

### SETUP Button



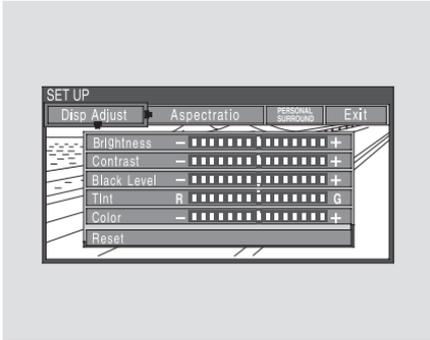
When you press the SETUP button while a DVD is playing, the setup menu appears. The menu options are DISP ADJUSTMENT, ASPECT RATIO, and PERSONAL SURROUND.

To change a setup, use the ► or ◀ button to highlight your selection and press the ENT button. To return to the DVD video screen, select EXIT.

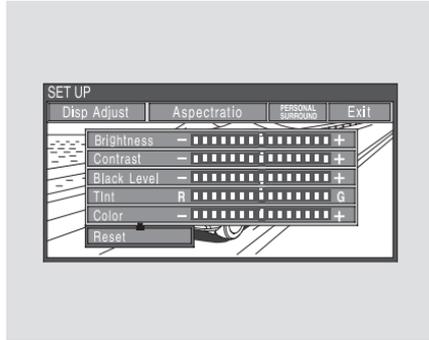
### *Disp Adjust*

To adjust the display, highlight “Disp Adjust” from the setup menu with the ▼ or ▲ button and press the ENT button. You can adjust these display settings:

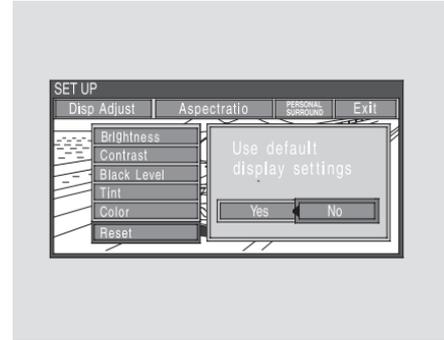
- Brightness
- Contrast
- Black Level
- Tint
- Color



Select the quality you want to adjust by pressing the ▼ or ▲ button. Adjust the setting by pressing the ◀ or ▶ button. When you are finished with your adjustment, cursor back to the top of the setup menu, or press the RETURN button to exit.



If you want to set the display to the default setting, select “Reset” by pressing the ▼ or ▲ button, and, then pressing the ENT button.



The display changes as shown above.

Select “Yes,” and press the ENT button. You will see the message “Default display settings applied” on the display for 5 seconds.

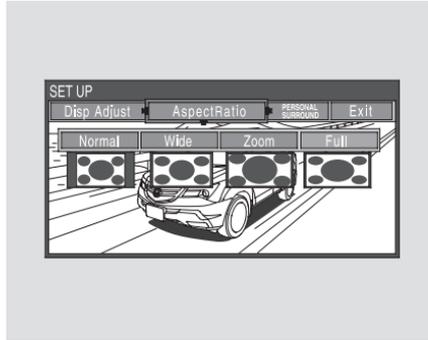
CONTINUED

## Rear Entertainment System

### *Aspect Ratio*

You can set the screen mode to these settings:

- Normal
- Wide
- Zoom
- Full



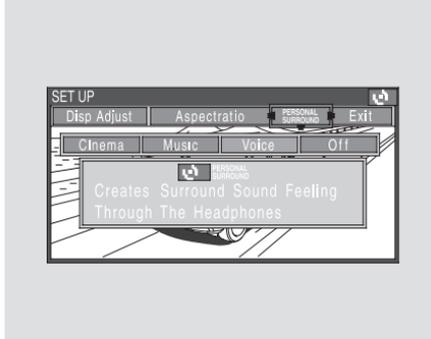
Select the “Aspect Ratio” by pressing the ► or ◀ button, then press the ENT button.

The selectable setting menu is displayed, and the current setting is highlighted in blue.

Select the desired setting by pressing the ► or ◀ button, then press the ENT button.

The selected setting will be highlighted in blue for one second, and the screen returns to the play mode in the selected setting.

### *Personal Surround*



To change the Personal Surround setting, highlight “PERSONAL SURROUND” from the setup menu with the ▼ or ▲ button and press the ENT button. The effect selection appears.

Select “Cinema,” “Music,” or “Voice” by pressing the ► or ◀ button, and enter your selection by pressing the ENT button. The “PERSONAL SURROUND” logo is displayed in the upper right corner of the screen.

If you select “Off,” the logo disappears, and there will be no special sound effect.

CONTINUED

# Rear Entertainment System

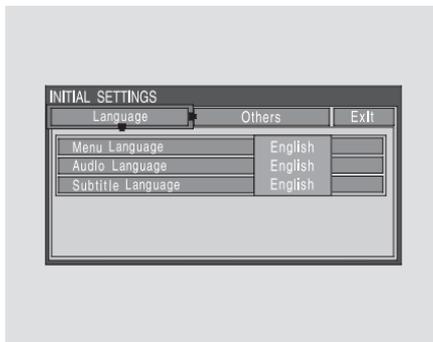
## INITIAL SETTINGS Menu



When you press the SETUP button on the rear control panel when a DVD is not playing, the “INITIAL SETTINGS” menu is displayed.

There are two selectable menus: “Language” and “Others.”

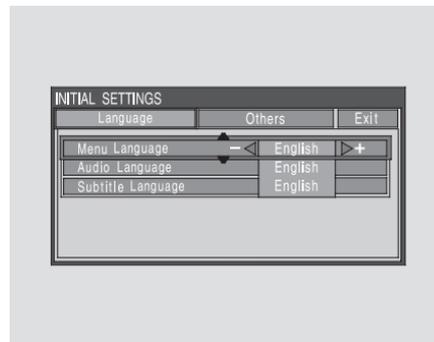
## INITIAL SETTINGS (Language)



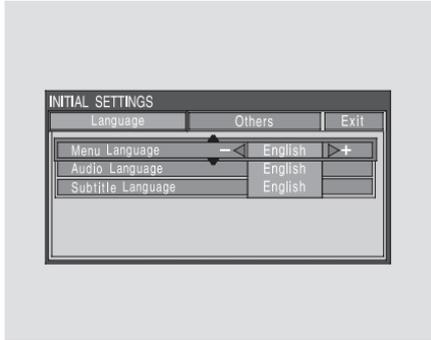
When you select “Language” with the ► or ◀ button, the menu shown above appears.

To return to the stop or prestop screen, select “Exit” using the ► or ◀ button, and then press the ENT, or the SETUP button.

## Menu Language

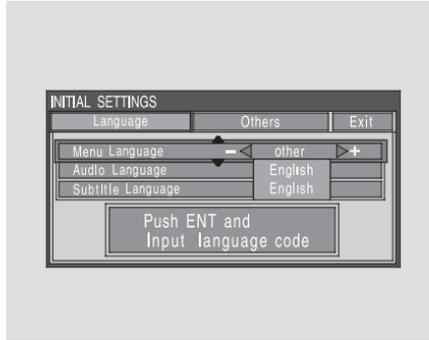


To select the language used in the DISC menus, select “Menu Language” by pressing the ▼ or ▲ button.

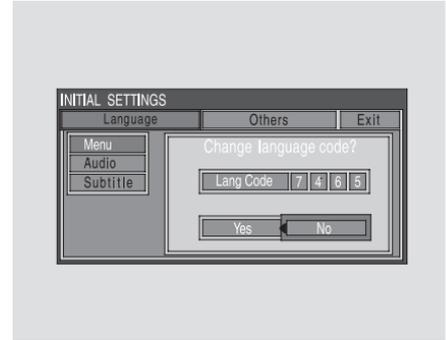


Select the desired language by pressing the ► or ◀ button, and then pressing the ENT button.

The selectable languages are, English, French, Spanish, German, Italian, Dutch, Chinese, Korean, Thai, Japanese or others.



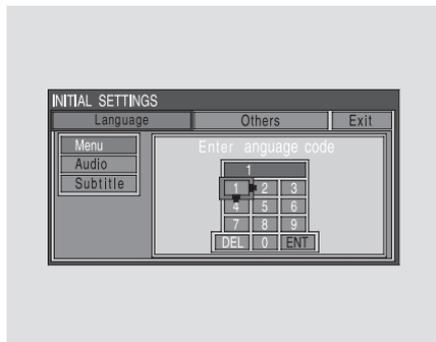
If you want another language than those listed, you need to enter the code number of the desired language. Select "other," and press the ENT button. The display changes as shown in the next column.



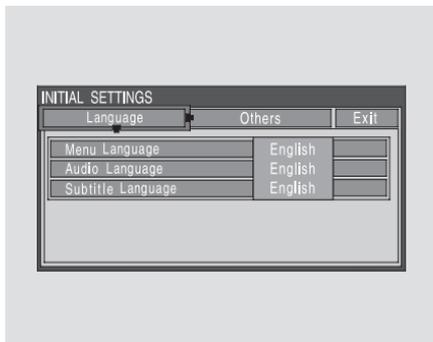
If you select "No," and press the ENT button, the display returns to the initial screen of the "Language" menu.

CONTINUED

## Rear Entertainment System



If you select “Yes,” the display changes to the language code input mode. Select the first number digit using the  $\blacktriangledown$ ,  $\blacktriangle$ ,  $\blacktriangleright$ , or  $\blacktriangleleft$  button, and press the ENT button to enter it. Repeat this until all four digits are filled. When the fourth digit is entered, the cursor automatically moves to “ENT” on the display. Press the ENT button on the control panel to enter the new language code.



If you made a mistake entering a number digit, select “DEL” on the display with the  $\blacktriangledown$ ,  $\blacktriangle$ ,  $\blacktriangleright$ , or  $\blacktriangleleft$  button, and press the ENT button on the control panel. Then select and enter the correct number digit as described. The display returns to the initial “Language” menu screen.

## Audio Language



You can select the dubbed language before playing DVDs. Select “Audio Lang” by pressing the  $\blacktriangledown$  or  $\blacktriangle$  button. You will see the submenu next to “Audio Lang.”

Follow the same instructions you used to set the menu language.

## Subtitle Language



You can select the subtitle language before playing DVDs. Select "Subtitle Lang" by pressing the ▼ or ▲ button. You will see the submenu next to the "Subtitle Lang."

Follow the same instructions you used to set the menu language.

## INITIAL SETTINGS (Others)

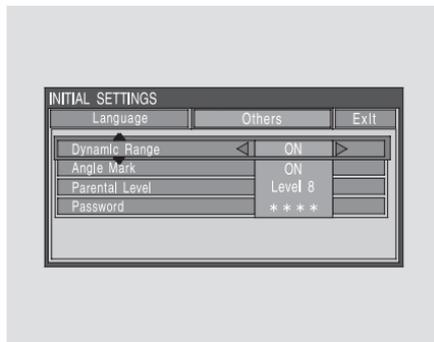


When you select "Others" at the top of the "INITIAL SETTINGS" screen, the above menu appears on the screen.

**Dynamic Range**  
"Dynamic Range" reduces the differences between the loud and quiet sound levels throughout the disc. When this is on, the louder sounds are lowered, and quieter sounds are increased.

CONTINUED

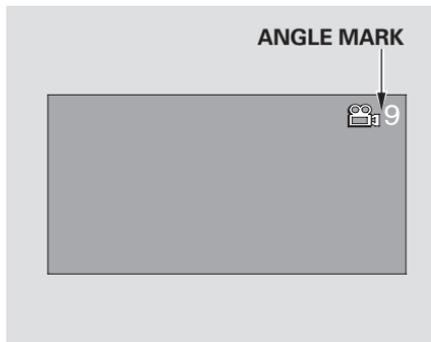
## Rear Entertainment System



When you select the “Dynamic Range” by pressing the ▼ or ▲ button, you will see the submenu next to the “Dynamic Range” as shown above.

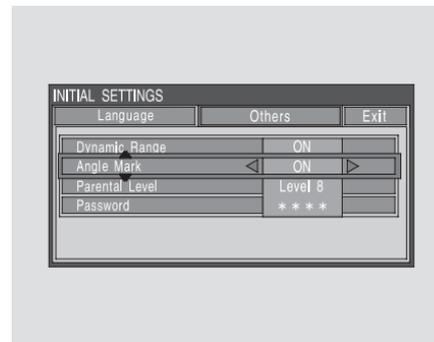
To turn “Dynamic Range” on or off, select “ON” or “OFF” by pressing the ► or ◀ button.

### Angle Mark



When you switch to another angle while playing a DVD, the angle mark is displayed in the upper right corner of the screen.

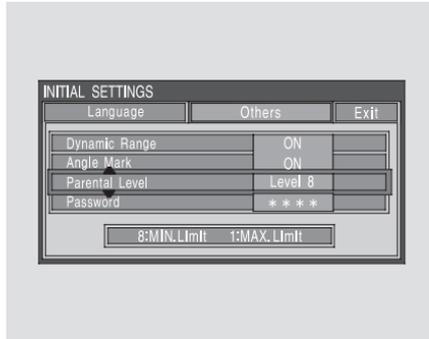
You can set the system to display or not display this angle mark.



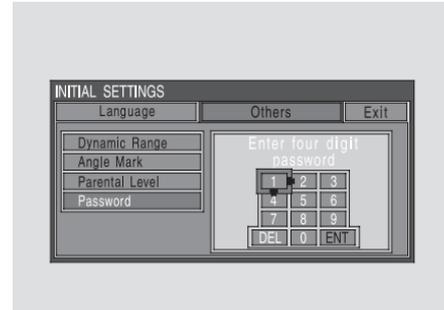
Select “Angle Mark” by pressing the ▼ or ▲ button. The above submenu appears. If you want the angle mark to be displayed, select “ON” with the ► or ◀ button.

## Parental Level

You can place an auditory restriction by changing the parental control level. The higher the level number, the lower the restriction.



Highlight “Parental Level” and press ENT button. You will see the submenu. If you select “No” and press the ENT button, the screen goes back to the “Others” menu.



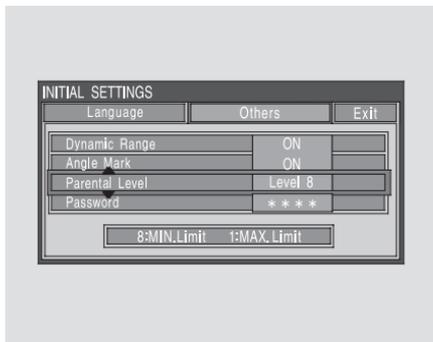
When you select and enter “Yes,” the display changes as shown above. To change the level, you need to enter your four digit password. Select the number for the first digit by pressing the ▼, ▲, ►, or ◀ button, and enter it by pressing the ENT button. Repeat this until all four digits are filled. When you enter the fourth number, the cursor automatically moves to “ENT” on the display. Press the ENT button on the control panel.

*CONTINUED*

## Rear Entertainment System



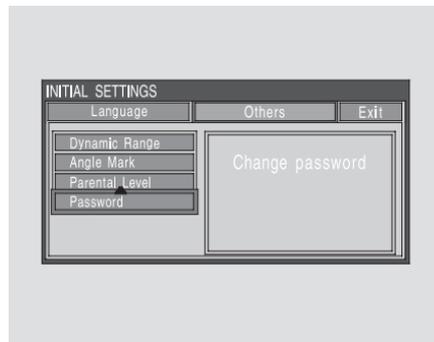
If the system does not recognize the password you entered, you will see the above display. Repeat the parental control level steps until you enter the correct password.



If you enter the password correctly, you can then change the parental control level.

Once you correctly enter the password, press the **▶** or **◀** button to change the level, and then press the ENT button to enter your selection.

### Changing the Password

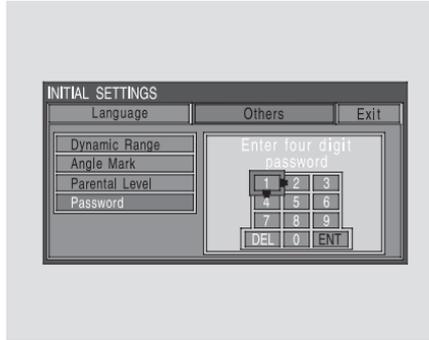


The password was set to “1111” when the vehicle left the factory.

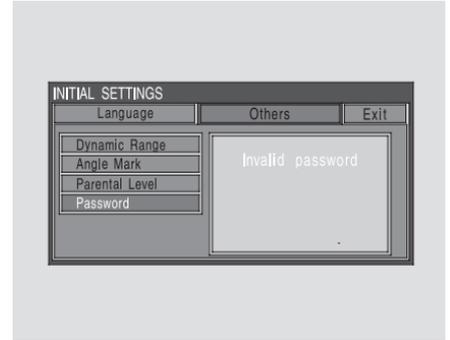


To change the password, select “Password.” You will see the above menu displayed. Select “Yes” by pressing the **▶** or **◀** button, then press the ENT button.

If you select “No,” and press the ENT button, the display returns to the “Others” menu.



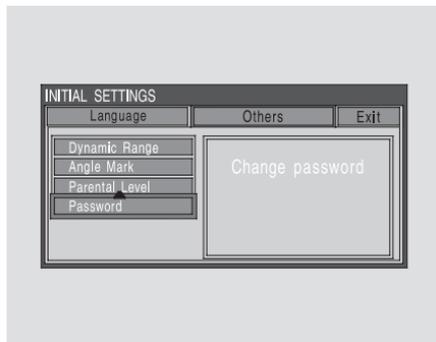
Select the first digit by pressing the **▼**, **▲**, **▶**, or **◀** button, and enter it by pressing the ENT button. Repeat this until all four digits are entered. When you enter the fourth number, the cursor automatically moves to “ENT” on the display. Press the ENT button on the control panel.



If the system does not recognize the password you entered, you will see the above display. Repeat the password setting steps until you enter the correct password.

CONTINUED

## Rear Entertainment System



If you forget the password, select “Password,” and press the ▲ button 10 times.



The display changes as shown above. If you want to use the default password (1111), select “Yes,” and press the ENT button.

The message “Default password setting applied” is displayed for 5 seconds.

## Remote Control



The rear control panel can be detached from the ceiling unit and used as a remote control. To remove it from the ceiling unit, press the release button. The control panel will swing down partway. Pivot it down further past the detent until it detaches from the hinge. To reinstall it, reverse the procedure.

### Replacing the Remote Control Batteries



If it takes several pushes on the button to operate the rear entertainment system, have your dealer replace the batteries as soon as possible.

Battery type: BR3032

An improperly disposed of battery can hurt the environment. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

## Rear Entertainment System

---

### Playable DVDs



There are various types of DVDs available. Some of them are not compatible with your system.

The DVD player in your rear entertainment system can play DVDs and CDs bearing the above marks on their packages or jackets.

The DVD player can also play discs recorded in MP3/WMA formats and DTS CDs.

Those packages or jackets should also bear the designation of “1” or “ALL”. DVD-ROMs cannot be played in this system.

This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights.

Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision.

Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

### Protecting DVDs

The tips on how to handle and protect DVDs are basically the same as those for compact discs. Refer to “Protecting Your CDs” on page [227](#).

## DVD Player Error Messages

The chart on the right explains the error messages you may see in the display while playing a disc.

If you see an error message in the display while playing a disc, press the eject button. After ejecting the disc, check it for damage or deformation. If there is no damage, insert the disc again.

The audio system will try to play the disc. If there is still a problem, the error message will reappear. Press the eject button, and pull out the disc.

Insert a different disc. If the new disc plays, there is a problem with the first disc. If the error message cycle repeats and you cannot clear it, take your vehicle to a dealer.

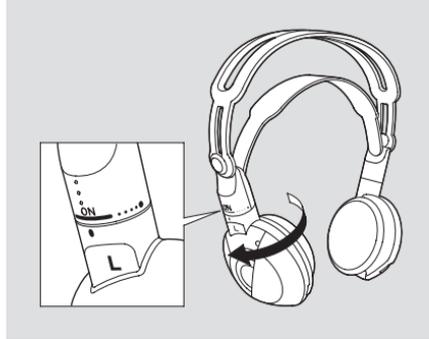
Error Message	Cause	Solution
DISC ERROR	FOCUS Error	Press the disc eject button, and remove the disc. Check for an error indication. Insert the disc again. If the code does not disappear or the disc cannot be removed, consult your dealer.
MECH ERROR	Mechanical Error	Press the disc eject button, and remove the disc. Check for an error indication. Insert the disc again. If the code does not disappear or the disc cannot be removed, consult your dealer.
HEAT ERROR	High Temperature	Will disappear when the temperature returns to normal.
REGION ERR	Invalid region code	The disc is not playable in this unit. Eject the disc, and insert a disc compatible with this system.
PARENT ERR	Invalid parental control level	Reinsert the disc, and increase the parental control level (see page 255)

## Rear Entertainment System

### Wireless Headphones



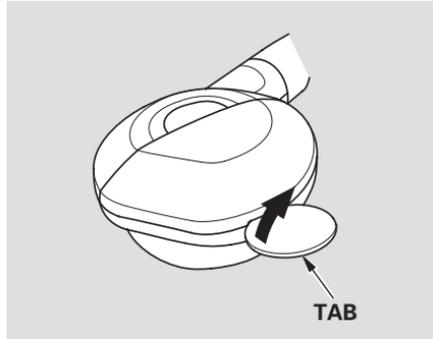
Some state and local government agencies prohibit the use of headphones by the driver of a motor vehicle. Always obey applicable laws and regulations.



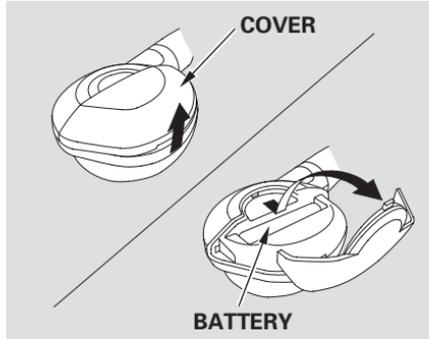
The audio for the rear entertainment system is sent to the wireless headphones that come with the system. When using the headphones, make sure you wear them correctly: L (left) and R (right) are marked on the sides of the frame. The antennas are in the front of the earpieces. If you wear the headphones backwards, the antennas will be aimed away from the system, affecting the sound quality and range.

To use the headphones, pivot the earpieces outward. This turns them on. To adjust the volume, turn the dial on the bottom of the right earpiece. When you remove the headphones, the earpieces automatically pivot inward, and the headphones turn off. When not in use, store the headphones in the pocket of either front seat.

### Replacing Batteries

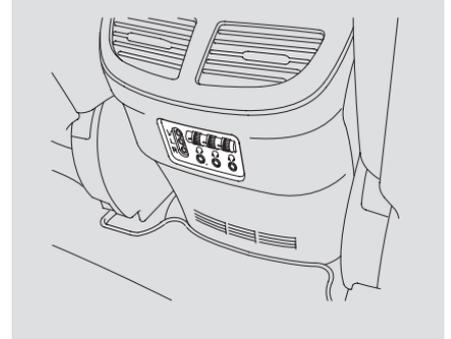


Each headphone uses one AAA battery. The battery is under the cover on the left earpiece. To remove the cover, insert a coin in the slot and twist it slightly to pry the cover away from the earpiece. Pull the cover outward, and pivot it out of the way.



Remove the battery. Install the new battery in the earpiece as shown in the diagram next to the battery slot. Slide the cover back into place on the earpiece, then press down on the back edge to lock it in place.

### Auxiliary Input Jacks

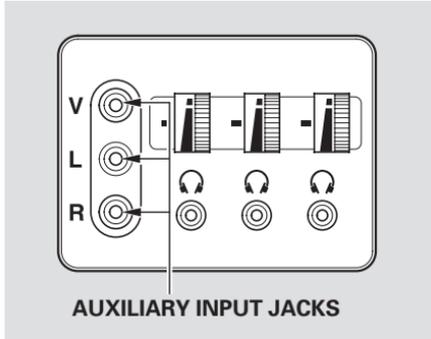


Auxiliary input jacks and headphone connectors for the rear entertainment system are on the back of the center console compartment.

CONTINUED

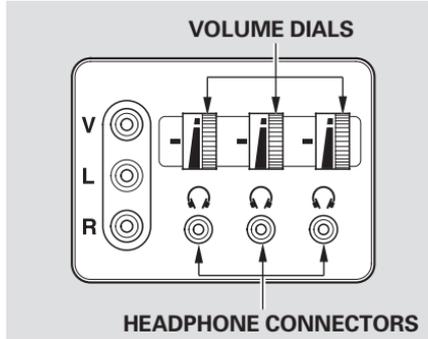
## Rear Entertainment System

---



The system will accept auxiliary inputs from standard video games and video equipment. Some video game power supplies may cause poor picture quality.

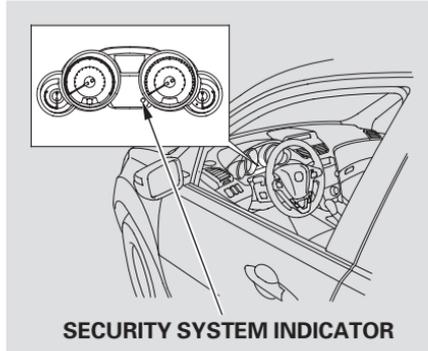
V = Video jack  
L = Left audio jack  
R = Right audio jack



There are three headphone connectors for the third seat passengers. Each connector has its own volume control.

The security system helps to protect your vehicle and valuables from theft. The horn sounds and a combination of headlights, parking lights, side marker lights, and taillights flash if someone attempts to break into your vehicle or remove the radio. This alarm continues for 2 minutes, then it stops. To reset an alarming system before the 2 minutes have elapsed, unlock the driver's door with the key or the remote transmitter.

The security system automatically sets 15 seconds after you lock the doors, hood, and the tailgate. For the system to activate, you must lock the doors and the tailgate from the outside with the key, the lock tab, the door lock switch, or the remote transmitter. The security system indicator in the instrument panel starts blinking immediately to show you the system is setting itself.



Once the security system is set, opening any door, the tailgate, or the hood without using the key or the remote transmitter, will cause it to alarm. It also alarms if the radio is removed from the dashboard or the wiring is cut.

The security system will not set if the hood, tailgate, or any door is not fully closed. If the system will not set, check that the doors, the tailgate and the hood are fully closed.

Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it.

# Cruise Control

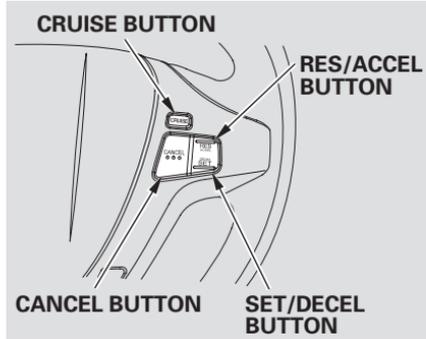
Cruise control allows you to maintain a set speed above 25 mph (40 km/h) without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal. It should be used for cruising on straight, open highways. It is not recommended for city driving, winding roads, slippery roads, heavy rain, or bad weather.

## **⚠ WARNING**

Improper use of the cruise control can lead to a crash.

Use the cruise control only when traveling on open highways in good weather.

## Using Cruise Control



1. Push in the CRUISE button on the steering wheel. The CRUISE MAIN indicator on the instrument panel comes on.
2. Accelerate to the desired cruising speed above 25 mph (40 km/h).

3. Press and release the SET/DECEL button on the steering wheel. The CRUISE CONTROL indicator on the instrument panel comes on to show the system is now activated.

Cruise control may not hold the set speed when you are going up and down hills. If your vehicle speed increases going down a hill, use the brakes to slow down. This will cancel the cruise control. To resume the set speed, press the RES/ACCEL button. The CRUISE CONTROL indicator on the instrument panel will come back on.

When climbing a steep hill, the automatic transmission may downshift to hold the set speed.

### Changing the Set Speed

You can increase the set cruising speed in any of these ways:

- Press and hold the RES/ACCEL button. When you reach the desired cruising speed, release the button.
- Push on the accelerator pedal. Accelerate to the desired cruising speed, then press the SET/DECEL button.
- To increase your speed in very small amounts, tap the RES/ACCEL button. Each time you do this, the vehicle speeds up about 1 mph (1.6 km/h).

You can decrease the set cruising speed in any of these ways:

- Press and hold the SET/DECEL button. Release the button when you reach the desired speed.
- To slow down in very small amounts, tap the SET/DECEL button. Each time you do this, your vehicle will slow down about 1 mph (1.6 km/h).
- Tap the brake pedal lightly with your foot. The CRUISE CONTROL indicator on the instrument panel will go out. When the vehicle slows to the desired speed, press the SET/DECEL button.

*CONTINUED*

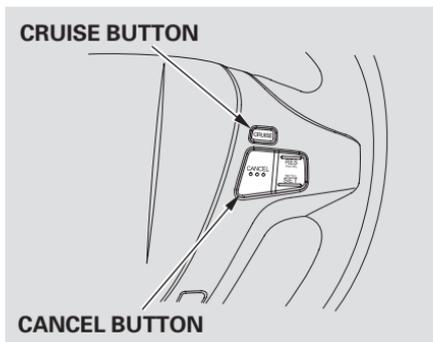
## Cruise Control

---

Even with cruise control on, you can still use the accelerator pedal to speed up for passing. After completing the pass, take your foot off the accelerator pedal. The vehicle will return to the set cruising speed.

Resting your foot on the brake pedal causes cruise control to cancel.

### Canceling Cruise Control



You can cancel cruise control in any of these ways:

- Tap the brake pedal.
- Push the CANCEL button on the steering wheel.
- Push the CRUISE button on the steering wheel.

### Resuming the Set Speed

When you push the CANCEL button or tap the brake pedal, the system remembers the previously set speed. To return to that speed, accelerate to above 25 mph (40 km/h), then press and release the RES/ACCEL button. The CRUISE CONTROL indicator comes on. The vehicle accelerates to the same speed as before.

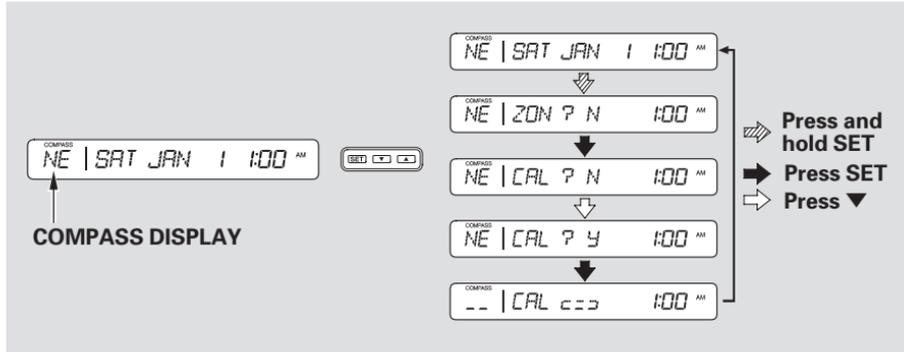
Pressing the CRUISE button turns the system completely off and erases the previous cruising speed.

*Canadian MDX model***Compass Operation**

Compass operation can be affected by driving near power lines or stations, across bridges, through tunnels, over railroad crossings, past large vehicles, or driving near large objects that can cause a magnetic disturbance. It can also be affected by accessories such as antennas and roof racks that are mounted by magnets.

**Compass Calibration**

If you see “--” in the compass display and “CAL” and “ㄟㄩㄩ” are shown in the calendar display, the compass is self-calibrating. The compass may need to be manually calibrated after exposure to a strong magnetic field. If the compass seems to be continually showing the wrong direction and is not self-calibrating, do the following.



1. Press and hold the SET button for five seconds until the Clock display changes to “ZON? N.” (Please note that clock adjustment mode will be started after the first two seconds.)
2. Press the SET button. “CAL? N” will be displayed. At this point, pressing SET button will exist calibration mode.
3. Press the ▼ button. “CAL? Y” will be displayed.
4. Press the SET button. The compass display will change to “--” and “CAL” and “ㄟㄩㄩ” are shown.
5. Drive the vehicle slowly in two complete circles.

CONTINUED

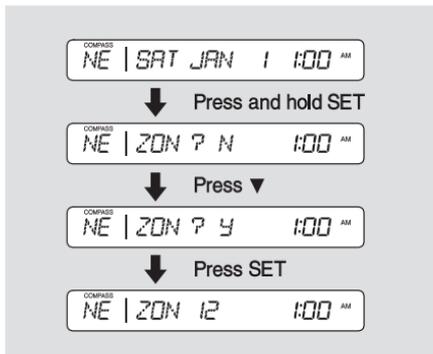
## Compass

- When the display goes from “— —” to an actual heading, the unit is calibrated and the display returns to normal.

**NOTE:** Do this procedure in an open area, away from buildings, power lines, and other vehicles.

### *Compass Zone Selection*

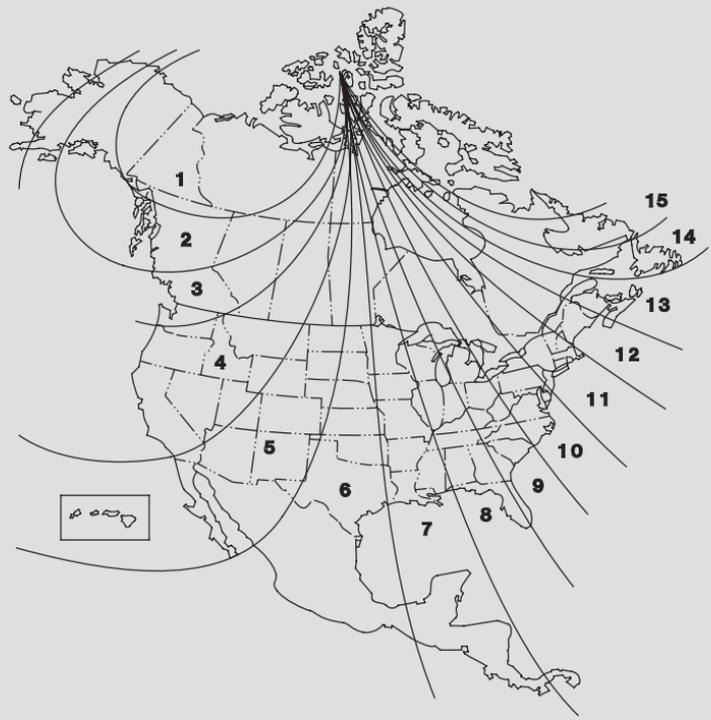
In most areas, there is a variation between magnetic north and true north. Zone selection is required so the compass can compensate for this variation. To check and select the zone, do this:



- Press and hold the SET button for five seconds until the Clock display changes to “ZON? N.” (Please note that clock adjustment mode will be started after the first two seconds.)
- Press the ▼ button. “ZON? Y” will be displayed.
- Press the SET button. The zone the compass is currently in will be displayed.

- Find the zone for your area on the map.
- If the zone is incorrect, press the ▼ button to cycle the count down, or the ▲ button to cycle the count up. Once the correct zone is displayed, continue to step 6.
- Press the SET button to set the zone selection.
- Press and hold the SET button for about 5 seconds to exit the zone selection and return display to normal.

## Zone Map



# HomeLink Universal Transceiver

---

The HomeLink® universal transceiver built into your vehicle can be programmed to operate up to three remotely controlled devices around your home, such as garage doors, lighting, or home security systems.

## General Information

If you are training HomeLink to operate a garage door or gate, you should unplug the motor for that device during training. Repeatedly pressing the remote control button could burn out the motor.

HomeLink stores the code in a permanent memory. There should be no need to retrain HomeLink if your vehicle's battery goes dead or is disconnected. If your garage door opener was manufactured before April 1982, you may not be able to program HomeLink to operate it. They do not have the safety feature that causes the motor to stop and

reverse if an obstacle is detected during closing, increasing the risk of injury.

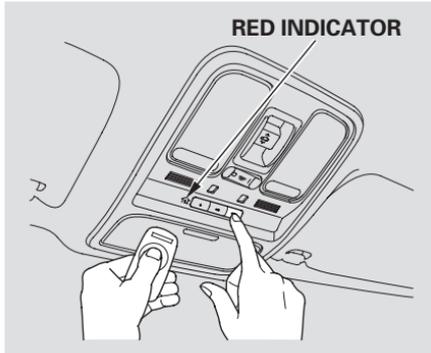
## Important Safety Precautions

Always refer to the opening instructions and safety information that came with your garage door opener or other equipment you intend to operate with HomeLink. If you do not have this information, contact the manufacturer of the equipment.

For quick and accurate training, make sure the remote transmitter for the device (garage door, automatic gate, security system, etc.) has a fresh battery.

## Training HomeLink

1. Unplug the garage door opener motor from the electrical outlet.
2. Hold the end of the garage door opener remote 1 to 3 feet from HomeLink. Make sure you are not blocking your view of the red indicator in HomeLink.



3. Press and hold the remote transmitter button and one of the HomeLink buttons at the same time.
  - If the red indicator in HomeLink begins to flash slowly at first, then rapidly, release both buttons, and go to step 5.

- If the red indicator in HomeLink continues to flash slowly (does not flash rapidly), your remote transmitter may stop transmitting after a short time. Go to step 4.
4. Press and hold the remote transmitter button and one of the HomeLink buttons at the same time. While continuing to hold the HomeLink button, press and release the remote transmitter button every 2 seconds.
    - If the red indicator in HomeLink begins to flash slowly at first, then rapidly, release both buttons, and go to step 5.
    - If the red indicator in HomeLink continues to flash slowly (does not begin to flash rapidly), repeat steps 2 thru 4.
  5. Plug in the garage door opener motor, then test the HomeLink button by pushing it for about 1

second.

- If the button works, programming is complete.
  - If the button does not work go to step 6.
6. Push and hold the HomeLink button for a few seconds, then watch the red indicator on HomeLink.
    - If the indicator stays on or flashes slowly, repeat steps 2 thru 5.
    - If the indicator flashes rapidly for 2 seconds then stays on, you have a rolling code transmitter: go to “Training with a Rolling Code System” (see page 274 ).
  7. Repeat these steps to train the other two HomeLink buttons to operate any other compatible remotely controlled devices around your home (lighting, automatic gate, security system, etc.).

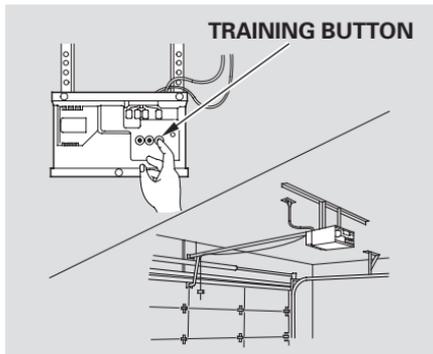
# HomeLink Universal Transceiver

## Training With a Rolling Code System

For security purposes, newer garage door opening systems use a “rolling” or variable code. Information from the remote control and the garage door opener is needed before HomeLink can operate the garage door opener.

The “Training HomeLink” procedure trains HomeLink to the proper garage door opener code. The following procedure synchronizes HomeLink to the garage door opener so it sends and receives the correct codes.

1. Make sure you have properly completed the “Training HomeLink” procedure.
2. Find the “training” button on your garage door opener unit. The location will vary, depending on the manufacturer.



3. Press the training button on the garage door opener unit until the indicator next to the button comes on. The indicator may blink, or come on and stay on. You then have approximately 30 seconds to complete the following steps.

4. Press and hold the button on HomeLink for 3 to 4 seconds.
5. Press and hold the HomeLink button again for 3 to 4 seconds. This should turn off the training indicator on the garage door opener unit. (Some systems may require you to press the button up to three times.)
6. Press the HomeLink button again for about 1 second. It should operate the garage door.

## Erasing Codes

To erase the codes stored in all three buttons, press and hold the two outside buttons until the red indicator begins to flash, then release the buttons.

You should erase all three codes before selling the vehicle.

## Retraining a Button

If you want to retrain a programmed button for a new device, you do not have to erase all button memory. You can replace the existing memory code using this procedure:

1. Press and hold the HomeLink button to be trained until the HomeLink indicator begins to flash slowly.
  - If a rolling code transmitter was previously programmed, the indicator will flash rapidly for 2 seconds, and then stay on for about 23 seconds.

- If a standard transmitter was programmed, the indicator will stay on for about 25 seconds.

2. Once the HomeLink indicator begins to flash slowly, continue to hold the HomeLink button, and follow steps 3 thru 6 under “Training HomeLink” (see page 274).

## Customer Assistance

If you have problems with training the HomeLink Universal Transceiver, or would like information on home products that can be operated by HomeLink, call (800) 355-3515. On the Internet, go to [www.homelink.com](http://www.homelink.com).

HomeLink® is a registered trademark of Johnson Controls, Inc.

*As required by the FCC:*

*This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.*

*Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.*

*This device complies with Industry Canada Standard RSS-210. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.*

Your vehicle is equipped with the HandsFreeLink (HFL). HFL uses Bluetooth® technology as a wireless link between it and your Bluetooth® compatible cellphone. When you are in your vehicle and your phone is linked to the HFL, you'll enjoy hands-free phone use. The HFL is available in both English and French (Canadian models only). To change the language, see page [300](#).

Here are the main features of the HFL. Instructions for using the HFL begin on page [286](#).

### **Voice Control**

HFL recognizes simple voice commands, such as phone numbers and names. It uses these commands to automatically dial, receive, and store numbers. For more information on voice control, see Using Voice Control on page [279](#).

### **Bluetooth® Wireless Technology**

Bluetooth® is a registered trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc. Bluetooth is the wireless technology that links your phone to the HFL. The HFL uses a Class 2 Bluetooth, which means the maximum range between your phone and vehicle is 30 feet (10 meters).

To use the HFL, your phone must have approved Bluetooth capability along with the Hands Free Profile. This type of phone is available through many phone makers and cellular carriers. You can also find an approved phone by visiting [handsfreelink.com](http://handsfreelink.com). ( In Canada, visit [www.acura.ca](http://www.acura.ca).) or by calling the Hands Free Link customer support at (888) 528-7876.

### **Incoming/Outgoing Calls**

With a linked phone, the HFL allows you to send and receive calls in your vehicle without holding the phone.

### **Phonebook**

The HFL can store up to 50 names and phone numbers in its phonebook. With a linked phone, you can then automatically dial any name or number in the phonebook.

#### *On vehicles with navigation system*

Your vehicle's HFL system has the cellular phonebook import function. This allows you to import your cellular phonebook to the HFL. Using the navigation system, you can make a call directly and store a desired number in the HFL from the list shown on the navigation display. For more information on how to import the phonebook or to make a call, see page [287](#).

#### *On all models*

You can also store the desired number to the HFL directly from your cellphone using the receive contact function in the HFL.

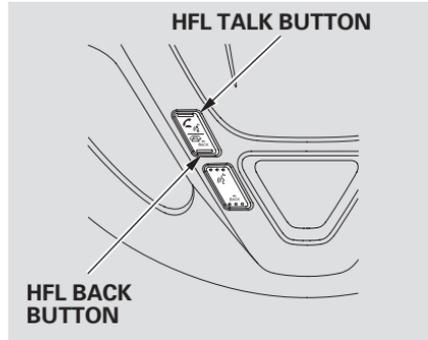
## Microphone

The HFL microphone is on the ceiling, between the front map lights and the console buttons. On models with navigation system, the microphone is shared with the navigation system.

## Audio System

When the HFL is in use, the sound comes through the vehicle's front audio system speakers. If the audio system is in use while operating either of HFL buttons or making a call, the HFL over-rides the audio system. To change the volume level, use the audio system volume knob.

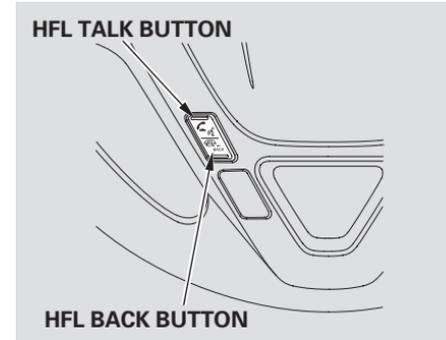
## HFL Buttons



To operate the HFL, use the HFL Talk and Back buttons on the left side of the steering wheel.

The HFL buttons are used as follows:

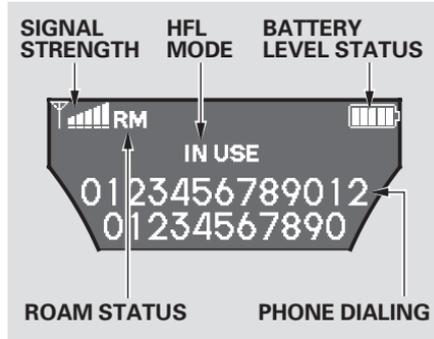
**HFL Talk:** This button is used before you give a command, to answer incoming calls, and to confirm system information.



Press and release the button, then wait for a beep before giving a command.

**HFL Back:** This button is used to end a call, go back to the previous voice control command, and to cancel an operation.

## Multi-Information Display



When you are operating the HFL, or when you manually select HFL on the multi-information display, you will see this information on the screen:

- Signal Strength\* – Indicates the network signal strength of the current phone. Five bars equals full strength.
  - ROAM Status\* – Indicates your phone is roaming.
  - Battery Level Status\* – Indicates the power currently remaining in your phone's battery. Five bars equals full battery strength.
  - HFL Mode – Indicates when you are dialing and receiving calls.
  - Phone Dialing – Indicates the number you entered or the number of the incoming call.
- \* : Some phones do not send this information to the HFL.

### How to Use the HFL

The HFL is operated by the HFL Talk and Back buttons on the left side of the steering wheel. The next few pages provide instructions for all basic features of the HFL.

**NOTE:** All phones may not operate identically, and some may cause inconsistent operation of the HFL.

### Using Voice Control

Here are some guidelines for using voice control:

- To enter a command, press and release the Talk button. Then, after the beep, say your command in a clear, natural tone.
  - Close the windows and the moonroof.
  - When voice commands are used, the fan speed will be automatically adjusted to low. However, for better voice recognition, lowering the fan speed may be necessary.
  - Adjust the air flow from both the dashboard and side vents so they do not blow against the microphone on the ceiling.
  - After pressing the Talk button, wait for the beep, then give a voice command.
- Give a voice command in a clear natural speaking voice without pausing between words or numbers. If the system cannot recognize your command because of the background noise, speak louder.
  - If the microphone picks up voices other than yours, the system may not interpret your voice commands correctly.
  - If the HFL does not recognize a command, its response is, "Pardon." If it doesn't recognize the command a second time, its response is, "Please repeat." If it doesn't recognize the command a third time, it plays the Help prompt.

*CONTINUED*

- To hear a list of available options at any time, press the Talk button, wait for the beep, and say, “Hands free link help.”
  - Many commands can be spoken together. For example, you can say, “Dial 123-456-7891.”
  - To enter a string of numbers in a Call or Dial command, you can say them all at once, or you can separate them in blocks of 3, 4, 7, 10, and 11.
  - To skip a voice prompt, press the Talk button while the HFL is speaking. The HFL will then begin listening for your next command.
- To go back one step in a command process, say, “Go back,” or press the Back button.  
If nothing is said while the HFL is listening for a command, the HFL will time out and stop its voice recognition. The next time you press the Talk button, the HFL begins listening from the point at which it timed out.
  - To end a command sequence at any time, press and hold the Back button, or press and release the Talk button, wait for the beep, and say, “Cancel.” The next time you press the Talk button, the HFL begins from its main menu.
- When you finish a command sequence, the HFL goes back to its main menu. For example, when you store the name, “Eric,” the HFL response is, “Eric has been stored.” The next time you press the Talk button, you will be at the main menu.

## Setting Up the System

The voice of the HFL can be set to male or female (U.S. models only). Also, the incoming notification can be set to a ring tone, a prompt, or no notification.

*To set up the system, do this:*

1. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say "System." The HFL response is, "System options are setup and clear."
2. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say "Setup." The HFL response is "Would you like male or female prompts?"
3. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say "Male" or "Female," depending on the system voice you want. The HFL response is, "Male (Female) prompts have been selected. Would you like an audible notification of an incoming call?"
4. Press and release the Talk button. If you say "Yes" after the beep, the HFL response is, "Would you like the notification to be a ring tone or a prompt?" If you say "No" after the beep, the HFL returns to its main menu. Saying "No" will result in no ring tone or prompt playback during an incoming call. The audio system will still mute, and a message will be displayed.
5. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say "Ring tone" or "Prompt." The HFT system response is "A ring tone will be used." or "An incoming call prompt will be used." If you choose "Ring tone," you will hear a ring tone through the audio speakers to announce an incoming call. If you choose "Prompt," you will hear this message to announce an incoming call: "You have an incoming call."
6. The HFL response continues "A security option is available to lock the HFL. Each time the vehicle is turned on, a passcode would be required to use this system. Would you like this security option turned on?" If you say "Yes," you can set your passcode. Refer to the setting procedure in the next column.

## Setting Your Passcode

The HFL will accept a numeric, four-digit passcode that you can use for security purposes.

*To set your passcode, do this:*

1. Follow the system setup procedure as described previously.
2. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Yes.”
3. The HFL response is “What is the four-digit number you would like to set as your passcode?”
4. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say the four-digit passcode you want to use. For example, say “1, 2, 3, 4.” The HFL response is “1, 2, 3, 4. Is this correct?”

5. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Yes.” The HFL response is, “Security is enabled. Each time the vehicle is turned on, the passcode will be required to use the system. The system setup is complete. Returning to the main menu.”

6. Press and release the Talk button. If you say “No.” after the beep, the HFL response is “Security will not be used. The system setup is complete.”

*To enter your passcode, do this:*

Once a passcode is set, you can lock the HFL so it only operates after the passcode is entered.

1. The HFL will prompt you for your passcode each time the ignition switch is turned to the ON (II) position and you press the Talk button. You will only be asked for the passcode once per ignition

cycle. If the passcode is set, its response is “The system is locked. What is the four-digit passcode?”

2. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say your four-digit passcode. For example, say “1, 2, 3, 4.”

3. If the passcode is correct, the HFL response is “Main menu.” If the passcode is not correct, the HFL response is “1,2,3,4 is incorrect. Please try again.” Go back to the step 2.

If you forget your passcode and you cannot activate the HFL, consult your dealer to cancel the passcode.

## Pairing Your Phone

Your Bluetooth® compatible phone with HandsFree Profile must be paired to the HFL before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

### NOTE:

- HFL does not allow you to pair your phone if the vehicle is moving.
- For pairing, your phone must be in its Discovery mode.
- Up to six phones can be paired to the HFL.
- The following procedure works for most phones. If you cannot pair your phone to the HFL with this procedure, refer to your phone's operating manual, visit [handsfreelink.com](http://handsfreelink.com), call the HandsFreeLink customer support at (888) 528-7876 or call your phone retailer.

- During the pairing process, turn off any previously paired phones before pairing a new phone.
1. With your phone on and the ignition in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position, press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say "Phone setup." The HFL response is "Phone setup options are status, pair, edit, delete, and list."
  2. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say "Pair." The HFL response is "The pairing process requires operation of your mobile phone. For safety, only perform this function while the vehicle is stopped. State a four-digit code for pairing. Note this code. It will be requested by the phone."
  3. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say the four-digit code you want to use. For example, say "1, 2, 3, 4." The HFL response is, "1, 2, 3, 4. Is this correct?"
  4. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say "Yes." The HFL response is "Searching for a Bluetooth phone."
- NOTE:** Steps 5 and 6 show a common way to get your phone into its Discovery mode. If these steps do not work on your phone, refer to the phone's operating manual.
5. Follow the prompts on your phone to get it into its Discovery mode. The phone will search for the HFL. When it comes up, select HandsFreeLink from the list of options displayed on your phone.

CONTINUED

6. When asked by the phone, enter the four-digit code from step 3 into your phone. The HFL response is “A new phone has been found. What would you like to name this phone?”

7. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say the name you want to use. For example, say “Eric’s phone.” The HFL response is “Eric’s phone has been successfully paired. Returning to the main menu.”

8. If you want to pair another phone, repeat steps 1 through 7.

Once the pairing process is completed, AcuraLink may display a connection confirmation screen. This screen is used to create a data connection between your cellphone and the AcuraLink system. You can choose to set up the data connection now, or do it later. If you want to do

it now, exit the HFL menu by pressing the HFL Back button one or more times.

*To rename a paired phone, do this:*

1. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Phone setup.” The HFL response is “Phone setup options are status, pair, edit, delete, and list.”

2. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Edit.” The HFL response is “Which phone would you like to edit?”

3. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say the name of the phone you want to rename. For example, say “Eric’s phone.” The HFL response is “What is the new name for Eric’s phone?”

4. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say the new name of the phone. For example, say “Lisa’s phone.” The HFL response is, “The name has been changed. Returning to the main menu.”

*To delete a paired phone, do this:*

1. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Phone setup.” The HFL response is, “Phone setup options are status, pair, edit, delete, and list.”

2. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Delete.” The HFL response is, “Which phone would you like to delete?”

3. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say the name of the phone you want to delete. For example say “Eric’s phone.” The HFL response is “Would you like to delete Eric’s phone?”

4. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Yes.” The HFL response is “Preparing to delete Eric’s phone.” Say “OK” to continue. Otherwise, say “Go back,” or “Cancel.”
5. Press and release the Talk button. If you say “OK” after the beep, the HFL response is “The phone has been deleted. Returning to the main menu.” If you say “Go back,” or “Cancel,” the phone will not be deleted.

*To list all paired phones, do this:*

1. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Phone setup.” The HFL response is “Phone setup options are status, pair, edit, delete, and list.”
2. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “List.” The HFL responds by listing the name of each paired phone. When all

phones paired to the system have been read, the HFL response is “The entire list has been read. Returning to the main menu.”

*To find out the status of the phone being used, do this:*

1. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Phone setup.” The HFL response is, “Phone setup options are status, pair, edit, delete, and list.”
2. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Status.” An example of the HFL response is, “Eric’s phone is linked. Battery strength is three bars. Signal strength is five bars, and the phone is roaming. Returning to the main menu.”

*To change from the currently linked phone to another paired phone, do this:*

1. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Next phone.” The HFL response is “Searching for the next phone.” The HFL then disconnects the linked phone and searches for another paired phone. If no other phones are found, the first phone remains linked.

## Making a Call

You can make calls using any phone number, or by using a name in the HFL phonebook. You can also redial the last number called. During a call, the HFL allows you to talk up to 30 minutes after you remove the key from the ignition switch.

*To make a call using a phone number, do this:*

1. With your phone on and the ignition in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position, press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Call” or “Dial.” The HFL response is, “What name or number would you like to call/dial?”

2. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say the number you want to call. For example, say “123 456 7891.” The HFL response is “123 456 7891. Say call, dial, or continue to add numbers.”

*On vehicles with navigation system*  
You can also make a call directly from the list shown on the navigation display.

3. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Call” or “Dial.” The HFL response is “Calling” or “Dialing.” Once connected, you will hear the person you called through the audio speakers. To change the volume, use the audio system volume knob.
4. To end the call, press the Back button.

*To make a call using a name in the HFL phonebook, do this:*

1. With your phone on and the ignition in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position, press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Call” or “Dial.” The HFL response is, “What name or number would you like to call/dial?”
2. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say the name you want to call. For example, say “Eric.” The HFL response is “Would you like to call Eric?”
3. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Yes.” The HFL response is “Calling” or “Dialing.” Once connected, you will hear the person you called through the audio speakers. To change the volume, use the audio system volume knob.

4. To end the call, press the Back button.

To redial the last number called by the phone, press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Redial.” The HFL response is, “Redialing.” Once connected, you will hear the person you called through the audio speakers. To change the volume, use the audio system volume knob.

## **Sending Numbers or Names During a Call**

The HFL allows you to send numbers or names during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system. You can also program account numbers into the HFL phonebook for easy retrieval during menu-driven calls.

*To send a number during a call, do this:*

1. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Send.” The HFL response is, “What name or number would you like to send?”
2. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say the number you want to send. For example, say “1, 2, 3.” The HFL response is “1, 2, 3. Say send, or continue to add numbers.”

3. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Send.” The dial tones will be sent, and the call will continue.

*To send a name during a call, do this:*

1. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Send.” The HFL response is, “What name or number would you like to send?”
2. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say the name you want to send. For example, say “Account number.” The HFL response is “Would you like to send account number?”
3. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Send.” The dial tones will be sent, and the call will continue.

## **Receiving a Call**

If you receive a call when you are not on the phone, the HFL interrupts the audio system (if it is on), and plays the incoming call notification, if activated. To answer the call, press the Talk button and begin speaking. If you don’t want to answer the call, press the Back button.

If your phone has Call Waiting, and you receive a call when you are on the phone, press and release the Talk button to answer it. When you do this, the original call is placed on hold. To return to the original call, press the Talk button again. If you don’t want to answer the new call, disregard it, and continue with your original call. If you want to hang up the original call and answer the new call, press the Back button.

## **Transferring a Call**

During a call, you can transfer it from the HFL to your phone, or from your phone to the HFL.

*To transfer a call from the HFL to your phone, do this:*

Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Transfer.” The audio switches from the HFL to the phone.

*To transfer a call from your phone to the HFL, do this:*

Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Transfer.” The audio switches from your phone to the HFL.

### Muting a Call

During a call, you can mute or unmute your voice to the person you are talking to.

*To mute your voice, do this:*

1. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Mute.” The HFL response is, “Mute is active.”

*To unmute your voice, do this:*

2. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Mute.” The HFL response is, “Mute is canceled.”

### Setting up the Phonebook

The HFL phonebook can store up to 50 names with their associated numbers. These can be any types of numbers. For example, you can store a phone number and use it to make a call, or you can store an account number and use it during a call to a menu-driven phone system.

*To add a name, do this:*

1. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Phonebook.” The HFL response is “Phonebook options are store, edit, delete, receive contact, and list.”
2. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Store.” The HFL response is, “What name would you like to store?”

3. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say the name you would like to store. For example, say “Eric” or say “account number.” The HFL response is “What is the number for Eric,” or “What is the number for account number?”
4. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say the number. For example, say “123 456 7891.” The HFL response is “123 456 7891.”
5. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Enter.” The HFL response is “Eric (or account number) has been stored. Returning to the main menu.”

CONTINUED

*To edit the number of a name, do this:*

1. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Phonebook.” The HFL response is “Phonebook options are store, edit, delete, receive contact, and list.”
2. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Edit.” The HFL response is, “What name would you like to edit?”
3. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say the name you would like to edit. For example, say “Eric.” The HFL response is “What is the new number for Eric?”
4. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say the new number for Eric. For example, say “987 654 3219.” The HFL response is, “987 654 3219.”

5. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Enter.” The HFL response is “The number has been changed. Returning to the main menu.”

*To delete a name, do this:*

1. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Phonebook.” The HFL response is “Phonebook options are store, edit, delete, receive contact, and list.”
2. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Delete.” The HFL response is, “What name would you like to delete?”
3. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say the name you would like to delete. For example, say “Eric.” The HFL response is “Do you want to delete Eric?”

4. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Yes.” The HFL response is, “The name has been deleted. Returning to the main menu.”

*To list all names in the phonebook, do this:*

1. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Phonebook.” The HFL response is, “The Phonebook options are store, edit, delete, receive contact, and list.”
2. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “List.” The HFL responds by listing the names in the phonebook. When the end of the list is reached, the HFL response is, “The entire list has been read. Returning to the main menu.”

To call a name from the phonebook list, do this:

1. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Phonebook.” The HFL response is “Phonebook options are store, edit, delete, receive contact, and list.”
2. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “List.” The HFL responds by listing the names in the phonebook. When it says the name you want to call, for example, Eric, press the Talk button, and then say “Call.” The HFL response is, “Would you like to call Eric?”
3. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Yes.” The HFL response is “Calling.” Once connected, you will hear the person you called through the audio speakers. To change the volume, use the audio system volume knob.

## Storing a Phone Number Directly from Your Phone

You can store the desired number to the HFL phonebook directly from your cellular phone.

NOTE: Your phone may not have this capability. Visit [handsfreelink.com](http://handsfreelink.com) or See your phone’s owner’s manual for information.

To store a phone number from your phone:

1. With your phone on and the ignition switch in the ACCESSORY (I) or ON (II) position, press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Phonebook.” The HFL response is, “Phonebook options are store, edit, delete, receive contact and list.”

2. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Receive contact.” The HFL response is, “The receive process requires operation of your Bluetooth device. For safety, only perform this function while the vehicle is stopped. HFL is now waiting to receive contact from a Bluetooth device.”
3. Select a desired number from the list on your phone, and transmit/send (individual steps will vary for each type of phone, refer to your phone’s owner’s manual) via Bluetooth. The HFL response is “One phone number has been received for this contact. What name would you like to store for the mobile number ? To discard this, say ‘Discard.’ ”

CONTINUED

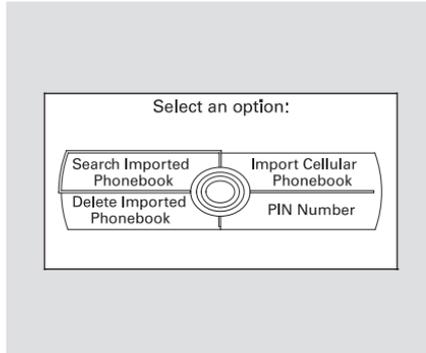
4. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say the name you would like to store. For example, say “Neil at work.” The HFL response is, “Neil at work will be stored. Is this correct ?”
5. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say either “Yes” or “No.” The HFL response is, “Neil at work has been stored. If more than one number was received for the contact entry, the HFL asks for the name of the next number. If only one number is received, or all numbers have been stored, the HFL response is, “Would you like HFL to receive another contact?”
6. If you want to continue to store any other numbers, press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Yes.” The HFL response is, “HFL is now waiting to receive a contact from a Bluetooth device.”
7. Select a desired number from the list on your phone, and transmit/ send (individual steps will vary for each type of phone, refer to your phone’s owner’s manual) via Bluetooth. The HFL response is “One phone number has been received for this contact. What name would you like to store for the mobile number ? To discard this, say ‘Discard.’”
8. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say the name you would like to store. For example, say “Susan ar work.” The HFL response is, “Susan at work will be stored. Is this correct?”
9. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say either “Yes” or “No.” The HFL response is “Susan at work has been stored. Would you like HFL to receive another contact?”
- 10.If you do not want to continue to store any other numbers, press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “No.”

## Cellular Phonebook Options

*On vehicles with navigation system*

The cellular phonebook option allows you to store up to 1,000 names and 10,000 phone numbers in the phonebook of HandsFreeLink from your cellular phonebook. With the HFL, you can then automatically dial any name or number in the phonebook.

NOTE: Your phone may not have this capability. Visit [handsfreelink.com](http://handsfreelink.com) or See your phone's owner's manual for information.



To use the cellular phonebook with the HFL, say or select “Cellular Phonebook” from the Information screen. The navigation display will change as shown above.

If any phonebook is not stored and phone is not linked to the HFL, Cellular Phonebook is grayed out.

PIN Number. This option allows you to add, change or remove a PIN Number for any phonebook that has been imported.

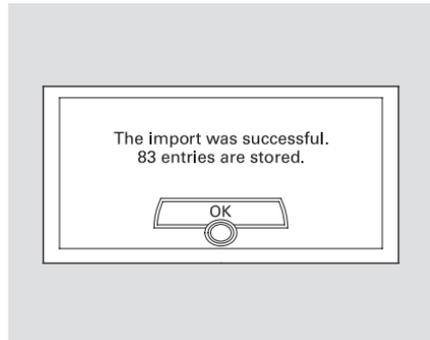
**Import Cellular Phonebook:** This option allows you to store the phonebook of your cellular phone in the HFL. When you link your phone to the HFL and select this option, the system will start importing and loading the phonebook.

CONTINUED

**Search Imported Phonebook:** This option allows you to search the phone numbers stored in the HFL. When you enter keyword for a person's name, such as the first name or last name, the system will find the number you want and let you make calls.

**Delete Imported Phonebook:** This option allows you to delete the stored phonebook from the HFL. When you link your phone to the HFL and select this option, the system will automatically delete the phonebook of the linked phone from the HFL (see page [297](#) ).

*To import the cellular phonebook*  
You can import the phonebook of your cellular phone in the HFL. Link your phone to the HFL and select "Import Cellular Phonebook" from the "Select an option" screen. When the message "The import was successful." is displayed, push in on the Interface Dial to select "OK."

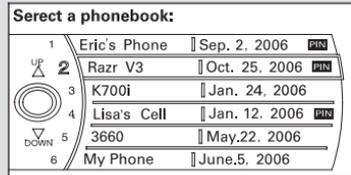


**NOTE:**

- HFL does not allow you to pair your phone if the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired to the HFL.

For information on linking to the HFL, see page [283](#) .

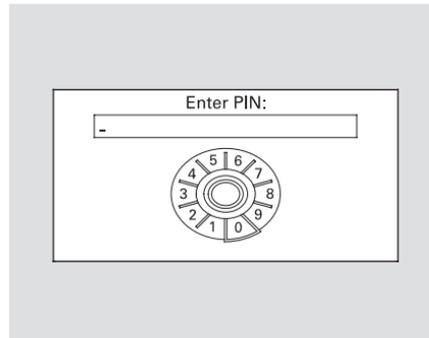
To search the imported phonebook



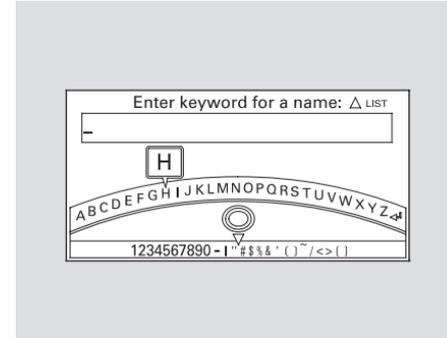
You can search the stored number by entering keywords to make calls by using the HFL.

Select “Search Imported Phonebook” from the “Select an option” screen. The display will change as shown above.

Select a phonebook from the displayed list. If the phonebook you select has a PIN icon, you will need the 4-digit PIN number to access the phonebook. The following screen will appear.



Enter the PIN number to access the phonebook. You cannot access a PIN protected phonebook if you do not use the correct PIN number.



Enter the keyword for a person's name, such as the first name or last name, using the Interface Dial. If the system does not find an exact match, say or select “LIST” when you finish entering the keyword.

The system will display a list of person's names, with the closest match to the name you entered at the top of the list.

CONTINUED

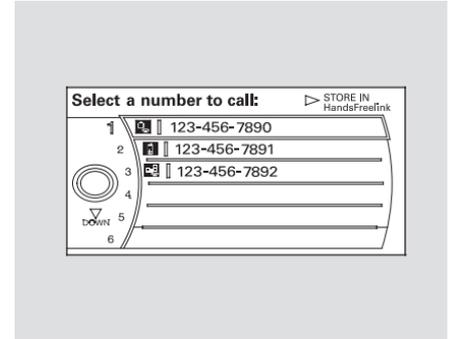
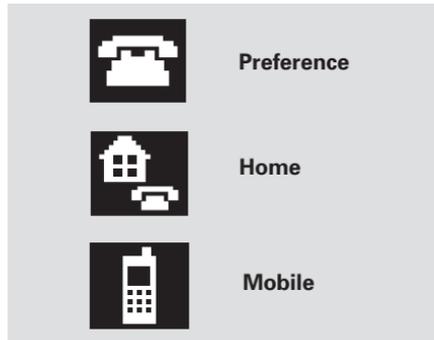
# HandsFreeLink™

Select the number (1–6) of the desired person from the list.

Up to three category icons are displayed in the right side of the list. These category icons indicate how many numbers are stored for the person.

If a name has more than three category icons,“ ... ” is displayed.

The following category icons will appear:



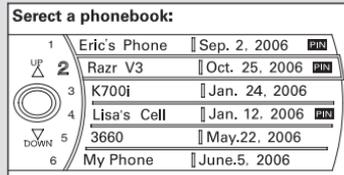
After selecting a person, the system will display a list of the person's phone numbers.

Select the desired number from the list to make a call.

*To store in the HandsFreeLink*

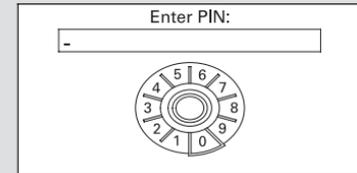
Say or select “STORE IN HandsFreeLink” from the “Select a number to call” screen. The screen shown above will appear.

Select the desired number from the list to store it in the HFL.

*To delete the imported phonebook*

You can delete the stored phonebook from the HFL. Link your phone to the HFL and select “Delete Imported Phonebook” from the “Select an option” screen. The display will change as shown above.

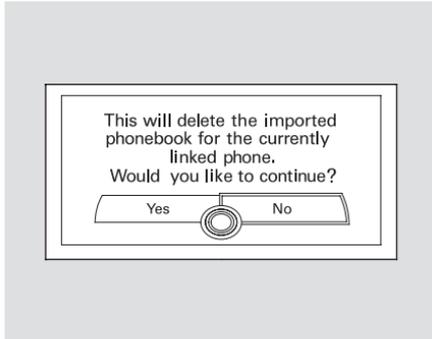
Select a phonebook from the displayed list. If the phonebook you select has a PIN icon, you will need the 4-digit PIN number to access the phonebook. The following screen will appear.



Enter the PIN number to access the phonebook. You cannot access a PIN protected phonebook if you do not use the correct PIN number.

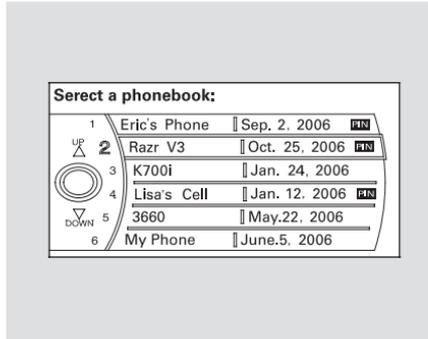
CONTINUED

After you enter the correct PIN number, or if the phonebook you select is not PIN protected, the following screen appears.



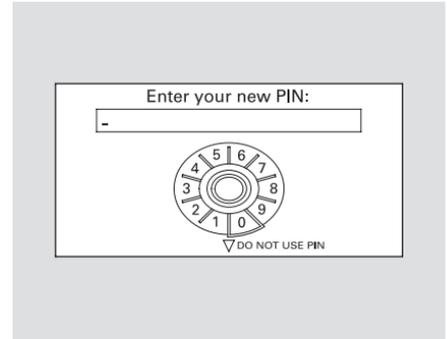
Say or select “Yes”, and the message “The imported phonebook has been deleted.” will appear. Select “OK” to complete the deletion.

*To add, change or remove a PIN number from any phonebook*

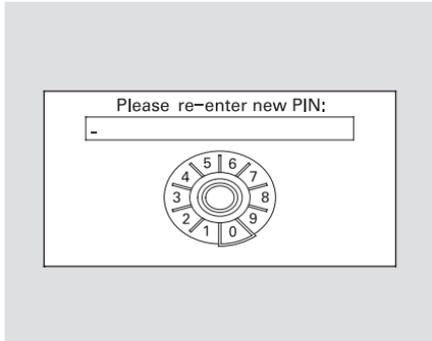


You can add, change or remove a PIN number from any phonebook. Select “PIN Number” from the “Select an Option” screen. The display will change as shown above.

*To add a PIN number*

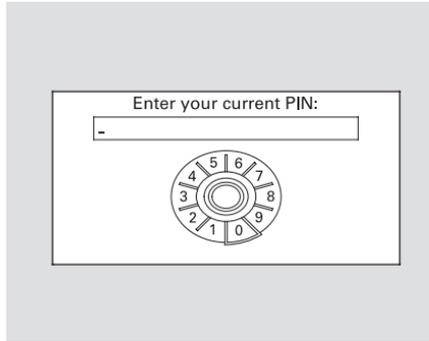


1. Select the phonebook that you wish to add the PIN number to. The phonebook you select cannot already have a PIN icon. The display will change as shown above.

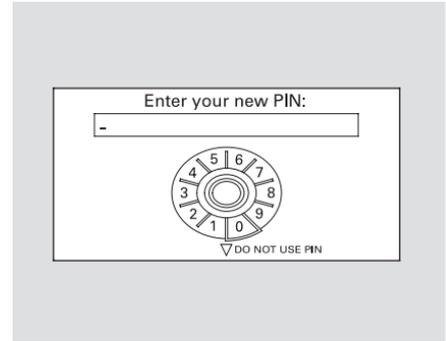


2. Enter the 4-digit PIN number. You will be asked to re-enter the PIN to verify.

## *To change a PIN number*

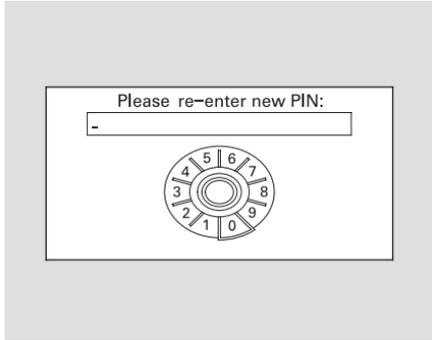


1. Select the phonebook that you wish to change the PIN number for. The display will change as shown above.



2. Enter your current PIN number.

CONTINUED



3. Enter your new 4-digit PIN number. You will be asked to re-enter the PIN to verify.

## Clearing the System

This operation clears the HFL of your passcode, your paired phones, all names in the HFL phonebook, and all imported phonebooks. Clearing is recommended before you sell your vehicle.

*To clear the system, do this:*

1. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say "System." The HFL response is, "System options are setup and clear."
2. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say "Clear." The HFL response is, "This process will clear all paired phones, clear all entries in the phonebook, and clear the passcode. Is this what you would like to do?"
3. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say "Yes." The HFL response is "Preparing to clear all paired phones, all phonebook entries, and the passcode. This may take up to 2 minutes to complete." Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say "OK" to proceed, or say "Go back" or "Cancel."
4. If you said "OK," after a short period of time, the HFL response is, "System has been cleared. Returning to the main menu."

## Changing Language

*Canadian models only*

*To change from English to French, do this:*

1. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Change language.” The HFL response is “English or French?”
2. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “French.” The HFL response is “Vous avez selectionne Francais. Les noms enregistres en mode Anglais ne seront pas accessible en mode Francais. Voulez-vous continuer? You have selected French. Name tags that were stored while in English mode will not be accessible in French mode. Would you like to continue? ”

3. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Oui” or “Yes.” If there are no paired phones without French name tags, the HFL response is “Venillez attendre que le systeme change de langue. Please wait while the language is changed.” “La langue a ete changee. Retour au menu principal.”

**NOTE:** If there are paired phones without French name tags, the following prompts will continue.

If there are paired phones without French name tags, the HFL response is “Pour que le système identifie les téléphones qui ont été jumelés dans une autre langue, les noms des téléphones doivent être ré-enregistrés.”

4. The HFL response is, for example, “Quel est le nom Français pour <Paul’s phone>?” Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Téléphone de Paul.” The HFL response is, “Quel est le nom Français pour <Pat’s phone>?” Press and release the Talk button. Say “Téléphone de Pat.” After all paired phones missing a French name tag are re-recorded, the HFL will prompt, “Retour au menu principal.”

CONTINUED

*To change from French to English, do this:*

1. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Changer Langue.” The HFL response is, “Anglais ou Francais?”
2. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Anglais.” The HFL response is, “You have selected English. Name tags that were stored while in French mode will not be accessible in English mode. Would you like to continue? Vous avez selectionne Anglais. Les noms enregistres en mode Francais ne seront pas accessible en mode Anglais. Voulez-vous contnuez?”

3. Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Yes” or “Oui.” If there are no paired phones without English name tags, the HFL response is “Please wait while the language is changed. Venillez attendre que le systeme change de langue.” “The language has been changed. Returning to the main menu.”

**NOTE:** If there are paired phones without English name tags, the following prompts will continue.

If there are paired phones without English name tags, the HFL response is “The language has been changed. For the system to identify phones that were paired while in another language, the phone names need to be re-recorded.”

4. The HFL says, for example, “What is the English name for <Téléphone de Paul>?” Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Paul’s phone.” The HFL response is “What is the English name for <Téléphone de Pat>?” Press and release the Talk button. After the beep, say “Pat’s phone.” After all paired phones missing an English name tag are re-recorded, the HFL will say “Returning to the main menu.”

### **HFL Limitations**

In addition, you cannot use the HFL while using AcuraLink.

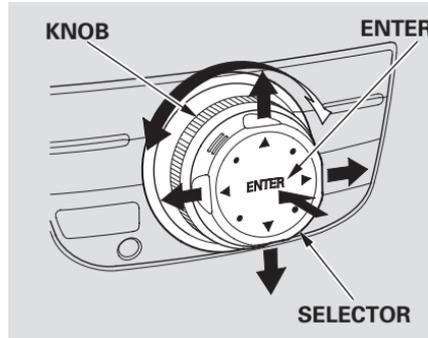
*U.S. Technology and Sport Packages*

AcuraLink enhances your ownership experience by providing a direct communication link between your vehicle and the Acura Server. Working through the XM radio satellite, AcuraLink works in conjunction with the navigation system, HandsFreeLink (HFL), and audio system in your vehicle. It displays and receives several kinds of messages, including:

- Operating tips and information on your vehicle's features.
- Important recall and safety information.
- Maintenance information to keep your vehicle in top condition.
- Diagnostic information to provide information about any problems with your vehicle.

**Interface Dial**

Most AcuraLink functions are controlled by the interface dial. The interface dial has two parts, a knob and a selector.

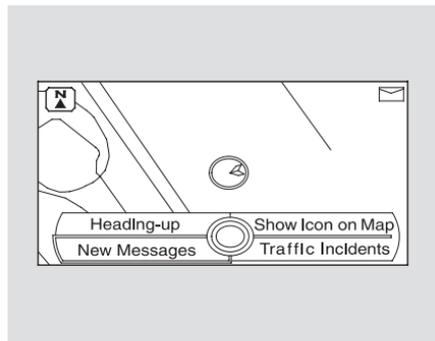


The knob turns left and right. Use it to make selections or adjustments to a list or menu on the screen.

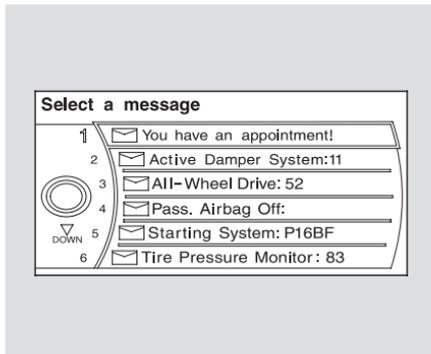
The selector can be pushed left, right, up, down, and in. Use the selector to scroll through lists, to select menus, and to highlight menu items. When you make a selection, push the center of the selector (ENTER) to go to that selection.

## Reading Messages

If you have new messages, an envelope icon appears in the top right corner of the navigation screen.

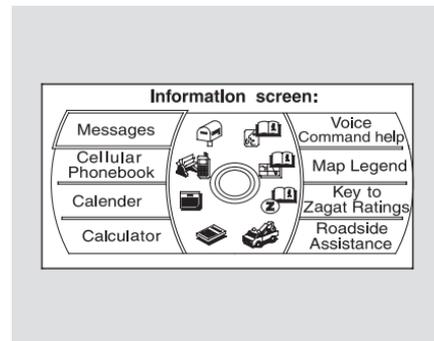


To open a message:  
Press ENTER on the interface selector, then select New Message from the navigation system map menu.

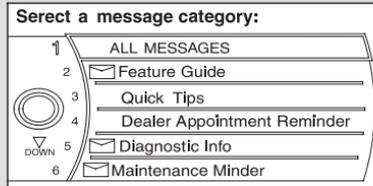


A list of all messages will be shown. New Messages will be at the top. Select the message you want to read by pressing ENTER.

To view previously read messages:



Press the INFO button. The information screen will be shown.



Select “Messages”, then select a message category by pressing ENTER. Select the message you want to read and press ENTER.

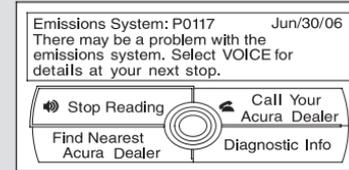
Unread messages have a closed envelope icon next to them. The icon disappears when it has already been read.

**NOTE:** Only diagnostic info messages overlay the navigation screen while driving. They indicate if your vehicle has a problem that may need immediate attention (see page 310).

After purchasing your vehicle, messages may not appear immediately.

Your dealer has to register the vehicle identification before you can receive messages. This can take several days to process.

## Message Options



When you open a message, you can read a summary of it, and then choose one of several options. If an option is not available for a message, that button will not be highlighted.

CONTINUED

## AcuraLink

---

**Delete** — Select this button to delete the current message.

**Voice** — Select this button to hear a voice read the entire message. This gives you more information than the screen can display at one time. When you select the Voice button, it changes to a Stop Reading button. Select the button again to stop the voice.

**Call** — Select this button to call a phone number embedded in the message. When you select **Call**, the HandsFreeLink (HFL) dials the number for you.

To make a call, your Bluetooth® compatible phone must be paired to the vehicle's HandsFreeLink system, powered on, and located within the vehicle (see page 276).

**Find Nearest Acura Dealer** — Select this button to find the nearest Acura dealer using the navigation system.

**Call Your Acura Dealer** — Select this button to call the Acura dealer you purchased your vehicle from. AcuraLink also directs you to this dealer so you can schedule a maintenance appointment or receive information about a message. If your assigned servicing dealer changes, AcuraLink will reset to call that dealer.

**Diagnostic Info** — Select this button to get more information about the current diagnostic message. To use this option, your cellphone must be paired with the HFL. In addition, the paired phone must have a compatible data service and be set up with the AcuraLink system to make a data connection. Access the [handsfreelink.com](http://handsfreelink.com) website to find out which data services are currently compatible with AcuraLink.

### Message Preferences

To set your AcuraLink preferences (the types of messages you want to receive, if any), visit the Owner Link website at [www.owners.acura.com](http://www.owners.acura.com), and choose what you would like to receive. If you do not have internet access, call Acura Client Services at (800) 382-2238; they can set your message preferences for you.

### Deleting Messages

**NOTE:** Diagnostic info and recall/campaign messages can only be deleted by your dealer.

To delete a single message:

- Press the INFO button to bring up the Information screen.
- Scroll to the Messages option, then select it by pressing ENTER on the interface selector.
- Select the message category that contains the message you want to delete.
- Use the interface knob to scroll up or down to the message title you want to delete, and select it by pressing ENTER on the interface selector.
- Scroll to Delete with the interface knob, and select it by pressing ENTER on the interface selector.

To delete all messages:

**NOTE:** The Delete All Messages command does not apply to Diagnostic Info and Recall messages. They can only be deleted by your dealer.

- Press the SETUP button to view the setup screen.
- Select MORE by pushing the interface selector to the right.

- Use the interface knob to scroll to the AcuraLink/Messages button, and select it by pressing ENTER on the interface selector.
- Scroll to the Delete Messages option, and select it by pressing ENTER on the interface selector.
- Scroll to the category with the messages you want to delete, and select the category by pressing ENTER on the interface selector.

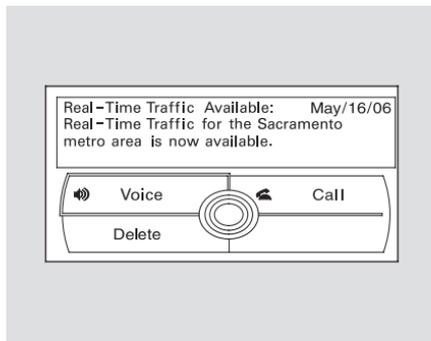
# AcuraLink

## Message Categories

There are six message categories in AcuraLink: Quick Tips, Feature Guides, Maintenance Minders, Recalls/Campaigns, Diagnostic Info, and Dealer Appointment Reminders. The system can store up to 256 messages.

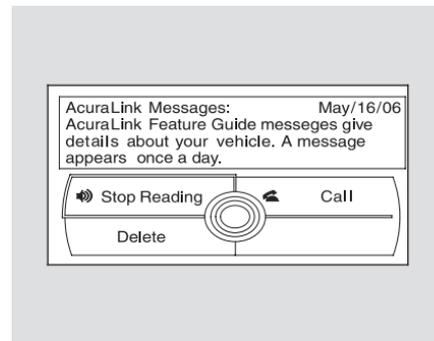
Message categories can be added, revised, or deleted through broadcast messages from Acura.

## Quick Tips



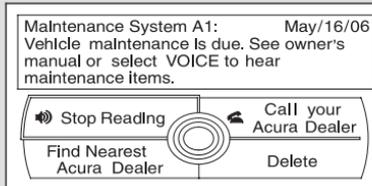
These messages, based on updated vehicle information and comments from other MDX owners, supplement your Owner's Manual and Quick Start Guide. They provide you with relevant information for a safe and enjoyable ownership experience. For additional information, call Acura Client Services directly through the HFL.

## Feature Guide



During the first 90 days of ownership, one of up to 32 different messages appears each day. These messages help you to use and understand the features of your vehicle.

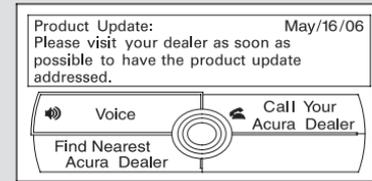
## Maintenance Minder



These messages provide detailed information about the service needed for your vehicle. When a maintenance message appears on the multi-information display, a list of needed maintenance items also appears in an AcuraLink message. These messages tell you the exact maintenance needed, helping you to avoid unnecessary maintenance costs.

You can then use the message options to call your dealer for an appointment or to find the nearest dealer.

## Recall/Campaigns



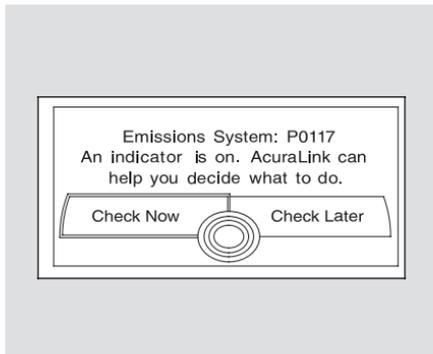
If your vehicle is affected by a recall or other important safety information, a letter will be mailed to you about the issue and how to fix it. If you don't get your vehicle fixed, you will also receive a reminder message through AcuraLink. You can then use the message options to call your dealer for an appointment or to find the nearest dealer.

## Diagnostic Info

When an indicator comes on or a message is displayed on the Multi-Information Display (MID), AcuraLink can provide information about the cause of the indicator or message and the recommended action to address it. This helps you handle the problem as it occurs, preventing or limiting costly repairs.

The AcuraLink system cannot determine some mechanical problems (such as squeaks or rattles) that are not triggered by the diagnostic indicator monitors.

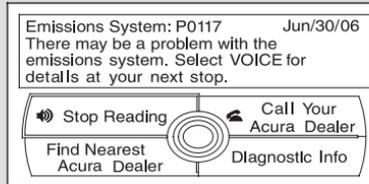
For more information on the instrument panel indicators, see page [64](#).



When an indicator comes on or a message is displayed on the MID, AcuraLink immediately notifies you with the message, "An indicator is on. AcuraLink can help you decide what to do." If you do not want the information right away, select the Check Later option. If you want the information now, select the Check Now option. (If the navigation screen is not active, you must select OK from the navigation disclaimer screen before you can check the

information.)

Depending on the severity of the problem, the message will let you know if you should see your dealer immediately or if you can wait until a later date.

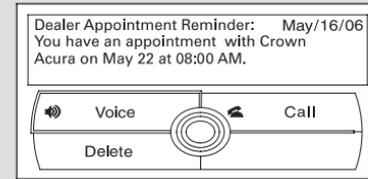


You can then use the message options to call your dealer for an appointment or to find the nearest dealer.

When viewing a diagnostic info message through the INFO menu, you can use the Diagnostic Info button to connect to the Acura server to retrieve the latest information regarding the problem.

**NOTE:** There may not be any additional information depending on the time elapsed since the previous time you retrieved the information from the Acura server.

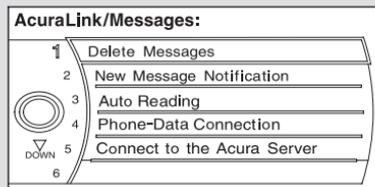
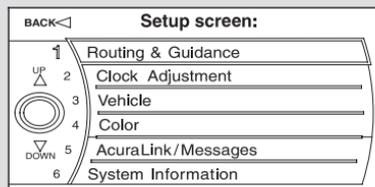
## Dealer Appointment Reminder



When you make an appointment through the Owner Link Online Scheduling Service, you can be reminded about that appointment through AcuraLink in advance. If you need to reschedule, you can call your dealer directly with the HFL.

The timing of your reminder is based on your reminder preference established on Owner Link.

## AcuraLink/Message Screen



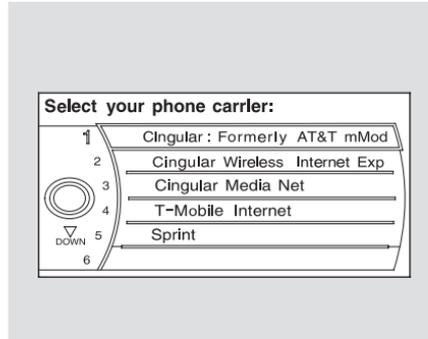
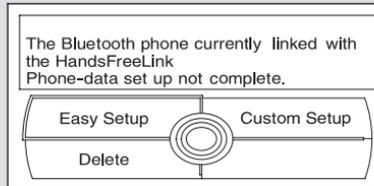
To access the following functions, press the SETUP button, push the interface dial to the right to select MORE, then rotate the interface dial to select AcuraLink/Messages.

**Delete Messages** – Select this button to delete all stored messages within a category, except for diagnostic info and recall campaign messages. These messages can only be deleted by a certified technician after the recall is done or the problem is corrected, or through a broadcast message from Acura.

**New Message Notification** – Select ON if you want to be notified of new messages (envelope icon appears on the navigation screen). Select OFF if you do not want to be notified of new messages (envelope icon does not appear on the screen). Messages can still be accessed using the INFO menu. If you would like to stop receiving messages, visit the OwnerLink website at [www.owners.acura.com](http://www.owners.acura.com) to change your messaging preferences.

**Auto Reading** – Select ON to have the system automatically read each message to you. Select OFF to manually select the Voice button when you want a message read to you.

**Phone-Data Connection** — Select this button to begin the process required to connect to Acura. This is used to access the most recent diagnostic information when a problem occurs.



**NOTE:** For the Phone Data Connection button to be active, you need a Bluetooth® compatible and enabled cellphone paired to the HandsFreeLink (HFL), and a compatible data service (see *Pairing Your Phone* on page 283 ).

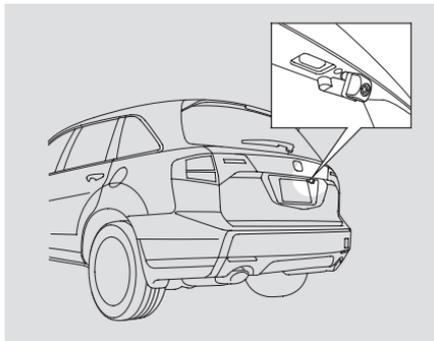
To find more information on Bluetooth® compatible and enabled cellphones, visit [handsfreelink.com](http://handsfreelink.com). or call the Hands Free Link customer support at (888) 528-7876.

**Connect to the Acura Server** — The default setting is prompt. When a diagnostic info message appears, and you select the Check Now button, the system will prompt you before connecting to the Acura server. If you do not wish to connect at that time, select No at the prompt, and you will see the information from the onboard database. The “Auto” setting will remove the prompt when you select the Check Now button and will automatically connect to the Acura server. This setting only applies when you have a Bluetooth® enabled phone that is paired with the HFL and you have completed the Phone-Data Connection setup.

## Rearview Camera and Monitor

---

*On vehicles with navigation system*



Whenever you shift to reverse (R) with the ignition switch in the ON (II) position, the rear view is shown on the navigation system screen.

For the best picture, always keep the rearview camera clean, and do not cover the camera lens. To avoid scratching the lens when you clean it, use a moist, soft cloth.

Since the rearview camera display area is limited, you should always back up slowly and carefully, and look behind you for obstacles.

Before you begin driving your vehicle, you should know what gasoline to use and how to check the levels of important fluids. You also need to know how to properly store luggage or packages. The information in this section will help you. If you plan to add any accessories to your vehicle, please read the information in this section first.

Break-in Period .....	316
Fuel Recommendation .....	316
Service Station Procedures .....	317
Refueling.....	317
Tighten Fuel Cap Message .....	318
Opening and Closing the Hood.....	319
Oil Check .....	320
Engine Coolant Check .....	320
Fuel Economy .....	321
Accessories and Modifications ....	322
Carrying Cargo .....	324

## Break-in Period, Fuel Recommendation

---

### Break-in Period

Help assure your vehicle's future reliability and performance by paying extra attention to how you drive during the first 600 miles (1,000 km). During this period:

- Avoid full-throttle starts and rapid acceleration.
- Avoid hard braking for the first 200 miles (300 km).
- Do not change the oil until the scheduled maintenance time.
- Do not tow a trailer.

You should also follow these recommendations with an overhauled or exchanged engine, or when the brakes are replaced.

### Fuel Recommendation

Your vehicle is designed to operate on premium unleaded gasoline with a pump octane of 91 or higher. If this octane grade is unavailable, regular unleaded gasoline with a pump octane of 87 or higher may be used temporarily. The use of regular unleaded gasoline can cause metallic knocking noises in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance. The long-term use of regular-grade gasoline can lead to engine damage.

We recommend quality gasolines containing detergent additives that help prevent fuel system and engine deposits.

In addition, in order to maintain good performance, fuel economy, and emissions control, we strongly recommend, in areas where it is available, the use of gasoline that does NOT contain manganese-based fuel additives such as MMT.

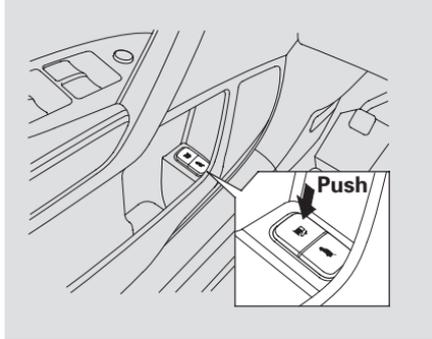
Use of gasoline with these additives may adversely affect performance, and cause the malfunction indicator lamp on your instrument panel to come on. If this happens, contact your authorized dealer for service.

Some gasoline today is blended with oxygenates such as ethanol or MTBE. Your vehicle is designed to operate on oxygenated gasoline containing up to 10% ethanol by volume and up to 15% MTBE by volume. Do not use gasoline containing methanol.

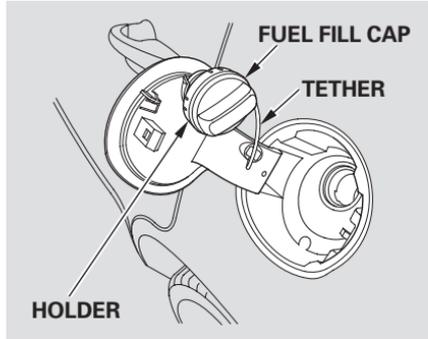
If you notice any undesirable operating symptoms, try another service station or switch to another brand of gasoline.

For further important fuel-related information, please refer to your **Quick Start Guide**.

### Refueling



1. Park with the driver's side closest to the service station pump.
2. Open the fuel fill door by pressing the button on the driver's door. (To open the fuel fill door manually, see page [433](#).)



3. Remove the fuel fill cap slowly. You may hear a hissing sound as pressure inside the tank escapes. Place the cap in the holder on the fuel fill door.

4. Stop filling the tank after the fuel nozzle automatically clicks off. Do not try to "top off" the tank. Leave some room for the fuel to expand with temperature changes.

*If the fuel nozzle keeps clicking off even though the tank is not full, there may be a problem with your vehicle's fuel vapor recovery system. The system helps keep fuel vapors from going into the atmosphere. Consult your dealer.*

### **⚠ WARNING**

Gasoline is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

- Stop the engine, and keep heat, sparks, and flame away.
- Handle fuel only outdoors.
- Wipe up spills immediately.

CONTINUED

## Service Station Procedures

---

5. Screw the fuel fill cap back on until it clicks at least once. If you do not properly tighten the cap, you will see a “TIGHTEN FUEL CAP” message on the multi-information display (see right column on this page), and the malfunction indicator lamp may also come on (see page [431](#)).
6. Push the fuel fill door closed until it latches.

### Tighten Fuel Cap Message



Your vehicle’s on board diagnostic system will detect a loose or missing fuel fill cap as an evaporative system leak. The first time a leak is detected a “TIGHTEN FUEL CAP” message appears on the multi-information display. Turn the engine off, and confirm the fuel fill cap is installed. If it is, loosen it, then retighten it until it clicks at least once. The message should go off after several days of normal driving once you tighten or

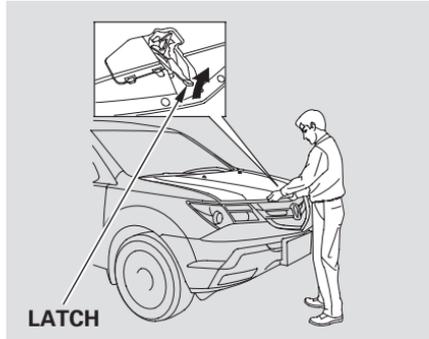
replace the fuel fill cap. To scroll to another message, press the INFO button. The “TIGHTEN FUEL CAP” message will appear each time you restart the engine until the system turns the message off.

If the system still detects a leak in the vehicle’s evaporative emissions system, the malfunction indicator lamp (MIL) comes on. If the fuel fill cap was not already tightened, turn the engine off, and check or retighten the fuel fill cap until it clicks at least once. The MIL should go off after several days of normal driving once the cap is tightened or replaced. If the MIL does not go off, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. For more information, see page [431](#).

### Opening and Closing the Hood



1. Park the vehicle, and set the parking brake. Pull the hood release handle located under the lower left corner of the dashboard. The hood will pop up slightly.



2. Put your fingers under the front edge of the hood near the center. Slide your hand to your left until you feel the hood latch handle. Push this handle up until it releases the hood. Lift up the hood.

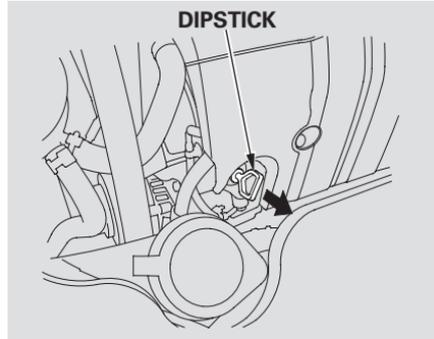
If the hood latch handle moves stiffly, or if you can open the hood without lifting the handle, the mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.

3. Lift the hood up most of the way. The hydraulic supports will lift it up the rest of the way and hold it up.

To close the hood, lower the hood to about a foot (30 cm) above the fender, then press down firmly with your hands. Make sure it is securely latched.

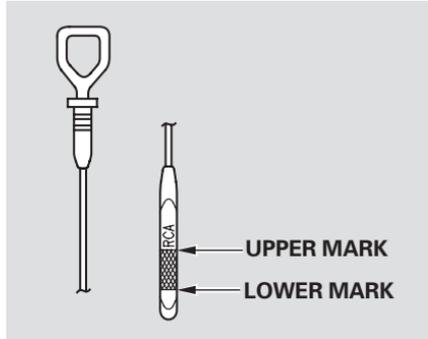
# Service Station Procedures

## Oil Check



Wait a few minutes after turning the engine off before you check the oil.

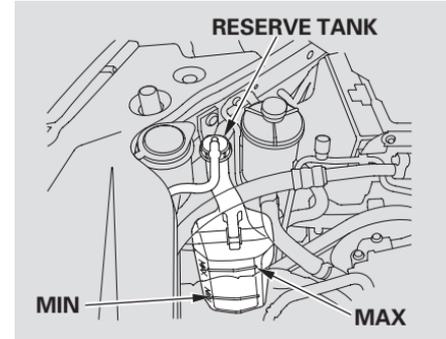
1. Remove the dipstick (orange loop).
2. Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel.
3. Hold the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel, and then insert it all the way back in its hole.



4. Remove the dipstick again, and check the level. It should be between the upper and lower marks.

If it is near or below the lower mark, see **Adding Engine Oil** on page [387](#).

## Engine Coolant Check



Look at the coolant level in the radiator reserve tank. Make sure it is between the MAX and MIN lines. If it is below the MIN line, see **Adding Engine Coolant** on page [390](#) for information on adding the proper coolant.

Refer to **Owner's Maintenance Checks** on page [381](#) for information about checking other items on your vehicle.

### Improving Fuel Economy

- Always maintain your vehicle according to the maintenance messages. See **Owner's Maintenance Checks** (page 381 ).

*For example*, an underinflated tire causes more “rolling resistance,” which uses more fuel.

The build-up of snow or mud on your vehicle's underside adds weight and rolling resistance. Frequent cleaning helps your fuel mileage and reduces the chance of corrosion.

- Drive moderately. Rapid acceleration, abrupt cornering, and hard braking use more fuel.
- Always drive in the highest gear possible.
- Try to maintain a constant speed. Every time you slow down and speed up, your vehicle uses extra fuel. Use cruise control when appropriate.
- Combine several short trips into one.
- The air conditioning puts an extra load on the engine which makes it use more fuel. Use the fresh-air ventilation when possible.

## Accessories and Modifications

---

Modifying your vehicle, or installing some non-Acura accessories, can make your vehicle unsafe. Before you make any modifications or add any accessories, be sure to read the following information.

### Accessories

Your dealer has Acura accessories that allow you to personalize your vehicle. These accessories have been designed and approved for your vehicle, and are covered by warranty.

Although non-Acura accessories may fit on your vehicle, they may not meet factory specifications, and could adversely affect your vehicle's handling and stability.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.

When properly installed, cellular phones, alarms, two-way radios, and low-powered audio systems should not interfere with your vehicle's computer controlled systems, such as your airbags, anti-lock brakes, and Tire Pressure Monitoring System.

Before installing any accessory:

- Make sure the accessory does not obscure any lights, or interfere with proper vehicle operation or performance.
- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits (see page 438 ) or interfere with proper operation of your vehicle.
- Do not install accessories on the side pillars or across the rear windows. In these areas, accessories may interfere with proper operation of the side curtain airbags.
- Before installing any electronic accessory, have the installer contact your dealer for assistance. **If possible, have your dealer inspect the final installation.**

### Modifying Your Vehicle

Removing parts from your vehicle, or replacing components with aftermarket components could seriously affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and reliability.

Some examples are:

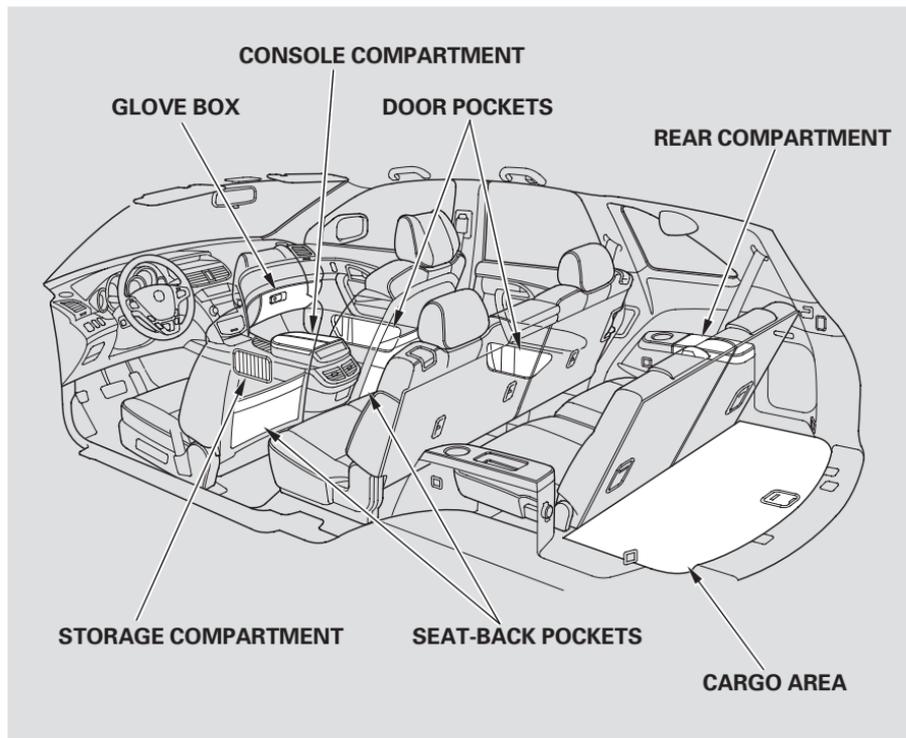
- Lowering your vehicle with a non-Acura suspension kit that significantly reduces ground clearance can allow the undercarriage to hit speed bumps or other raised objects, which could cause the airbags to deploy.
- Raising your vehicle with a non-Acura suspension kit can affect the handling and stability.
- Non-Acura wheels, because they are a universal design, can cause excessive stress on suspension components and will not be compatible with the tire Pressure Monitoring System.

- Larger or smaller wheels and tires can interfere with the operation of your vehicle's anti-lock brakes and other systems.

Modifying your steering wheel or any other part of your vehicle's safety features can make the systems ineffective.

If you plan to modify your vehicle, consult your dealer.

## Carrying Cargo



Your vehicle has several convenient storage areas:

- Glove box
- Door and seat-back pockets
- Rear cargo area, including the second and third row seats when folded flat
- Console compartment
- Storage compartment
- Rear compartment
- Roof-rack (if equipped)

However, carrying too much cargo, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, stopping distance, and tires, and make it unsafe. Before carrying any type of cargo, be sure to read the following pages.

### Load Limits

The maximum load for your vehicle is 1,158 lbs (525 kg). This figure includes the total weight of all occupants, cargo, and accessories, and the tongue load if you are towing a trailer.

To determine the correct cargo and luggage load limit:

1. Locate the statement, “the combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed 1,158 lbs” on your vehicle’s placard. The placard is driver’s doorjamb.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from 1,158 lbs.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity.  
  
For example, the maximum load is 1,158 lbs and there will be five 150 lbs passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo is 408 lbs.  $[1,158 - 750 (5 \times 150) = 408 \text{ lbs.}]$
5. Determine the combined weight of accessories, luggage, and cargo being loaded in the vehicle. The weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, the load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle (see page [356](#)).

### WARNING

Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.

In addition, the total weight of the vehicle, all occupants, accessories cargo must not exceed the gross vehicle weight rating (GVWR) or the gross axle weight rating (GAWR). Both are on a label on the driver’s doorjamb.

## Carrying Cargo

---

### Carrying Cargo in the Passenger Compartment

- Store or secure all items that could be thrown around and hurt someone during a crash.
- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll under the seats and interfere with the driver's ability to operate the pedals, the proper operation of the seats, or proper operation of the sensors under the seats.
- Keep the glove box closed while driving. If it is open, a passenger could injure their knees during a crash or sudden stop.

### Carrying Cargo in the Cargo Area or on a Roof Rack

- Distribute cargo evenly on the floor of the cargo area, placing the heaviest items on the bottom and as far forward as possible. Tie down items that could be thrown about the vehicle during a crash or sudden stop.
- If you fold down the second or third row seats, tie down items that could be thrown about the vehicle during a crash or sudden stop.

- If you carry large items that prevent you from closing the tailgate, exhaust gas can enter the passenger area. To avoid the possibility of **carbon monoxide poisoning**, follow the instructions on page [58](#) .
- If you carry any items on a roof rack, be sure the total weight of the rack and the items does not exceed 165 lbs (75 kg).

If you use an accessory roof rack, the roof rack weight limit may be lower. Refer to the information that came with your roof rack.

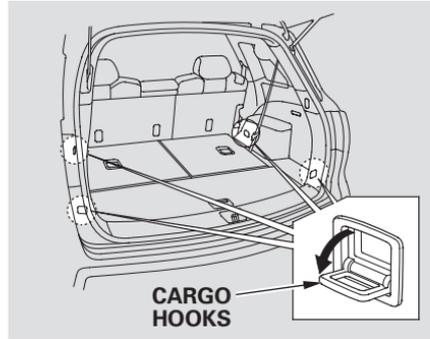
### Optional Separation Net

The separation net can be used to hold back soft, lightweight items stored in the cargo area. Heavy items should be tied down, as the net may not prevent them from being thrown about the vehicle in a crash or a sudden stop.

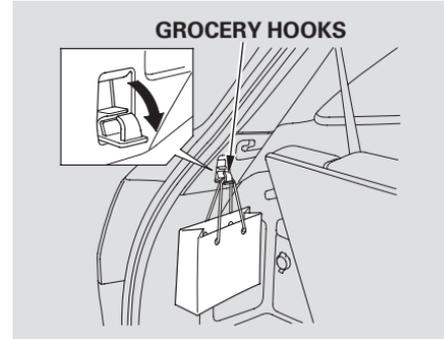
### Optional Cargo Cover

The cargo cover can be used to cover the cargo area behind the third row seats. When the third row seats are folded down, the cargo cover can be extended over the larger area. Do not install the cover over the larger area if the third row seats are not folded down.

### Cargo Hooks



The four hooks on the side panels can be used to install a net for securing items. Each hook is designed to hold up to 50 lbs (23 kg) of weight.



Your vehicle also has a grocery hook on each side panel in the cargo area. They are designed to hold light items. Heavy objects may damage the hook. Make sure any items put on each hook weigh less than 6.5 lbs (3 kg).



This section gives you tips on starting the engine under various conditions, and how to operate the automatic transmission. It also includes important information on parking your vehicle, the braking system, the super handling-all wheel drive (SH-AWD) system, the vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, active damper system, the tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS), and facts you need if you are planning to tow a trailer or drive off-high way.

Driving Guidelines.....	330
Preparing to Drive .....	330
Starting the Engine.....	332
Check Starting System	
Message.....	332
Automatic Transmission.....	333
Super Handling-All Wheel Drive	
(SH-AWD) System .....	340
Parking.....	342
Tire Pressure Monitoring System	
(TPMS) .....	343
Braking System.....	348
Anti-lock Brakes (ABS) .....	349
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA)	
System.....	351
Active Damper System .....	353
Towing a Trailer .....	355
Trailer Stability Assist.....	367
Off-Highway Guidelines .....	369

## Driving Guidelines, Preparing to Drive

---

### Driving Guidelines

Your vehicle has higher ground clearance that allows you to travel over bumps, obstacles, and rough terrain. It also provides good visibility so you can anticipate problems earlier.

Because your vehicle rides higher off the ground, it has a high center of gravity that can cause it to roll over if you make abrupt turns. Utility vehicles have a significantly higher roll over rate than other types of vehicles.

To prevent rollovers or loss of control:

- Take corners at slower speeds than you would with a passenger vehicle.
- Avoid sharp turns and abrupt maneuvers whenever possible.

- Do not modify your vehicle in any way that would raise the center of gravity.
- Do not carry heavy cargo on the roof.

*See page 369 for off-highway driving guidelines.*

### Preparing to Drive

You should do the following checks and adjustments before you drive your vehicle.

1. Make sure all windows, mirrors, and outside lights are clean and unobstructed. Remove frost, snow, or ice.
2. Check that the hood is fully closed.
3. Visually check the tires. If a tire looks low, use a gauge to check its pressure.
4. Check that any items you may be carrying are stored properly or fastened down securely.
5. Check the seat adjustment (see page 140).

6. Check the adjustment of the inside and outside mirrors (see page 152).
7. Check the steering wheel adjustment (see page 124).
8. Make sure the doors and tailgate are securely closed and locked.
9. Fasten your seat belt. Check that your passengers have fastened their seat belts (see page 15).
10. When you start the engine, check the gauges and indicators in the instrument panel, and the messages on the multi-information display (see page 63, 72 and 81).

### Starting the Engine

Your vehicle's starting system has an auto control mode. When you turn the ignition switch to the START (III) position, this feature keeps the engine's starter motor running until the engine starts. Follow these instructions to start the engine:

1. Apply the parking brake.
2. In cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories to reduce the drain on the battery.
3. Make sure the shift lever is in Park. Press on the brake pedal.
4. Without touching the accelerator pedal, turn the ignition switch to the START (III) position, then release the ignition switch. You do not need to hold the ignition switch in the START (III) position to start the engine. Depending on the outside temperature, the

starter motor runs for about 6 to 9 seconds until the engine starts.

If you hold the ignition switch in the START (III) position for more than 7 seconds, the starter motor, depending on the outside temperature, runs for about 10 to 25 seconds until the engine starts.

If the engine does not start, wait at least 10 seconds before trying again.

#### NOTICE

*The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly-coded key (or other device) is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled. For more information, see page 128.*

CONTINUED

## Starting the Engine

---

5. If the engine does not start within 15 seconds, or starts but stalls right away, repeat step 4 with the accelerator pedal pressed halfway down. If the engine starts, release pressure on the accelerator pedal so the engine does not race.
6. If the engine fails to start, press the accelerator pedal all the way down, and hold it there while starting to clear flooding. If the engine still does not start, return to step 5.

### NOTICE

*The engine is harder to start in cold weather. Also, the thinner air found at altitudes above 8,000 feet (2,400 meters) adds to this problem.*

### Check Starting System Message

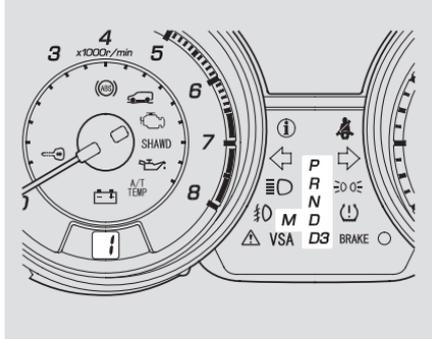


If there is a problem with the starting system, you will see a “CHECK STARTING SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display when the ignition switch is turned to the ON (II) position. You will also see this message when the auto control mode of the starting system has a problem.

If this message is on, the ignition switch has to be held in the START (III) position manually until the engine starts. The ignition switch can be held in that position up to 15 seconds.

Even though you may be able to start the engine manually without the auto control mode of the starting system, have your dealer inspect your vehicle.

## Shift Lever Position Indicators



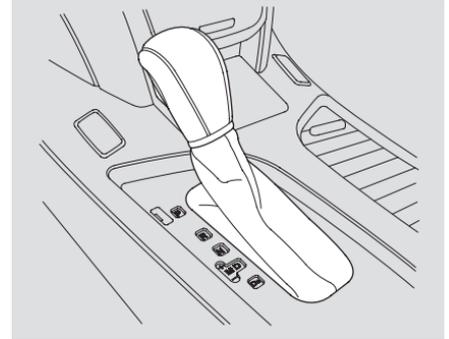
These indicators on the instrument panel show which position the shift lever is in. In the Sequential SportShift Mode, the “M” indicator next to the “D” indicator comes on, and the illuminated number under the charging system indicator shows you the gear you have selected.

The “D” indicator comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. If it flashes while driving (in any shift position), it indicates a possible problem in the transmission.

If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on along with the “D” indicator, there is a problem with the automatic transmission control system. Avoid rapid acceleration, and have the transmission checked by your dealer as soon as possible.

When the “D” indicator warns of a possible problem with the transmission, you will see a “CHECK TRANSMISSION” message on the multi-information display (see page [82](#)).

## Shifting



To shift from Park to any position, press firmly on the brake pedal and press the release button on the front of the shift lever, then pull the lever. You cannot shift out of Park when the ignition switch is in the LOCK (0) or the ACCESSORY (I) position.

CONTINUED

## Automatic Transmission

---

To shift from:	Do this:
P to R	Press the brake pedal, and press the shift lever release button.
R to P N to R D to D <sub>3</sub>	Press the shift lever release button.
D <sub>3</sub> to D D to N N to D R to N	Move the shift lever.

**Park (P)** — This position mechanically locks the transmission. Use Park whenever you are turning off or starting the engine. To shift out of Park, you must press on the brake pedal and press the release button on the shift lever. Make sure your foot is off the accelerator pedal.

If you have done all of the above and still cannot move the lever out of Park, see **Shift Lock Release** on page [338](#).

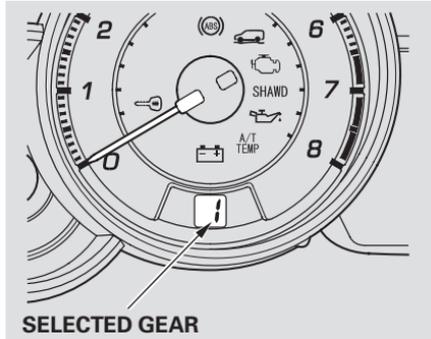
To avoid transmission damage, come to a complete stop before shifting into Park. The shift lever must be in Park before you can remove the key from the ignition switch.

**Reverse (R)** — Press the brake pedal and press the release button on the front of the shift lever to shift from Park to reverse. To shift from reverse to neutral, come to a complete stop, and then shift. Press the release button before shifting into reverse from neutral.

**Neutral (N)** — Use neutral if you need to restart a stalled engine, or if it is necessary to stop briefly with the engine idling. Shift to the Park position if you need to leave your vehicle for any reason. Press on the brake pedal when you are moving the shift lever from neutral to another gear.

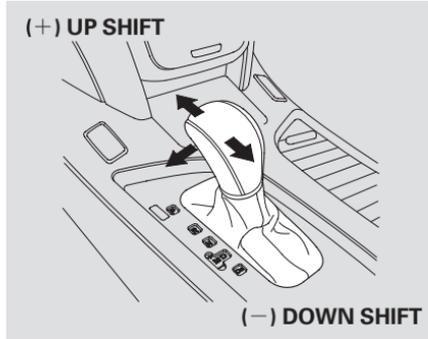
**Drive (D)** — Use this position for your normal driving. The transmission automatically selects a suitable gear (1 through 5) for your speed and acceleration. You may notice the transmission shifting up at higher engine speeds when the engine is cold. This helps the engine warm up faster.

## Sequential SportShift Mode



With the shift lever in “D” position, you can select the Sequential SportShift mode to shift gears much like a manual transmission, but without a clutch pedal.

When you move the shift lever from “D” to “M” position, the display shows the selected gear.



To enter the Sequential SportShift mode, move the shift lever further to the driver’s side. To return to “D,” move the shift lever to the passenger’s side.

In Sequential SportShift mode, each time you push forward on the shift lever, the transmission shifts to a higher gear. Pull back on the lever to downshift. The number of the gear selected is displayed on the instrument panel.

When you accelerate away from a stop, the transmission starts in first gear. You have to manually upshift between first and fifth gears. Make sure you upshift before the engine speed reaches the tachometer’s red zone.

The transmission remains in the selected gear (5, 4, 3, 2, or 1). There is no automatic downshift when you push the accelerator pedal to the floor.

CONTINUED

## Automatic Transmission

---

The transmission may automatically downshift from the higher gear to the lower gear under these conditions:

### Driving on level roads and downhill

To shift from	Speed range
4 → 3	under 19 mph (31 km/h)
5 → 4	under 38 mph (60 km/h)

### Driving uphill

To shift from	Speed range
4 → 3	under 34 mph (55 km/h)
5 → 4	under 47 mph (75 km/h)

Downshifting gives you more power when climbing, and provides engine braking when going down a steep hill.

The transmission also shifts automatically as the vehicle comes to a complete stop. It downshifts to first gear when the vehicle speed is under 10 mph (16 km/h).

If you try to manually downshift at a speed that would cause the engine to exceed the redline in a lower gear, the transmission does not downshift. The gear indicator will flash the number of the lower gear several times, then return to the higher gear.

If the vehicle speed slows to below the redline of the selected lower gear position while the indicator is flashing, the transmission downshifts, and the display shows the selected lower gear.

The table shows the speed ranges for upshifting and downshifting.

To shift from	Speed range
1 → 2	over 0 mph (0 km/h)
2 → 3	over 10 mph (16 km/h)
3 → 4	over 19 mph (31 km/h)
4 → 5	over 37 mph (60 km/h)

To shift from	Speed range
3 → 2	under 60 mph (96 km/h)
4 → 3	under 93 mph (150 km/h)
5 → 4	under 118 mph (190 km/h)

### ***Starting in Second Gear***

When you are in Sequential SportShift mode, and the vehicle is stopped, push forward on the shift lever to shift to second gear. You will see “2” in the display. Starting out in second gear will help to reduce wheelspin in deep snow or on a slippery surface.

If you start out in second gear, the transmission will be fixed in that gear.

The transmission will not automatically downshift to first gear even when the vehicle speed is under 10 mph (16 km/h). You need to shift down to first gear manually.

CONTINUED

## Automatic Transmission

---

**Drive (D3)** — This position is similar to D, except only the first three gears are selected. Use D3 when towing a trailer in hilly terrain, or to provide engine braking when going down a steep hill. D3 can also keep the transmission from cycling between third, fourth, and fifth gears in stop-and-go driving.

For faster acceleration when in D3 or D, you can get the transmission to automatically downshift by pushing the accelerator pedal to the floor. The transmission will shift down one, two, or three gears, depending on your speed.

### **Engine Speed Limiter**

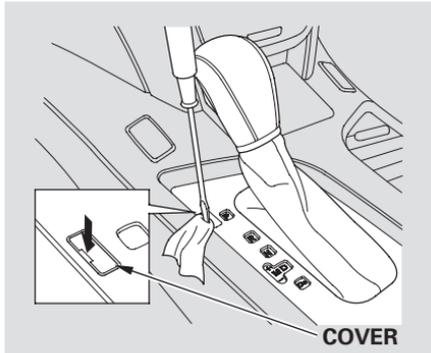
If you exceed the maximum speed for the gear you are in, the engine speed will enter into the tachometer's red zone. If this occurs, you may feel the engine cut in and out. This is caused by a limiter in the engine's computer controls. The engine will run normally when you reduce the rpm below the red zone.

Before downshifting, make sure the engine will not go into the tachometer's red zone.

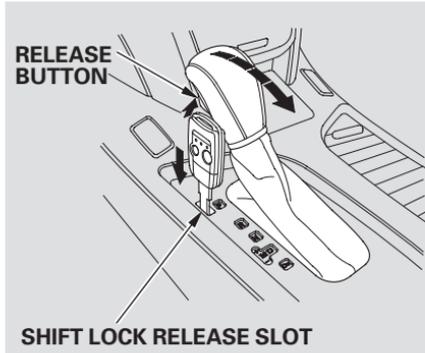
### **Shift Lock Release**

This allows you to move the shift lever out of Park if the normal method of pushing on the brake pedal and pressing the release button does not work.

1. Set the parking brake.
2. Remove the key from the ignition switch.



3. Put a cloth on the edge of the shift lock release slot cover next to the shift lever. Use a small flat-tipped screwdriver or a metal fingernail file to remove the cover. Carefully pry on the edge of the cover.



4. Insert a key into the shift lock release slot.
5. Push down on the key while you press the release button on the shift lever and move the shift lever out of Park to neutral.

6. Remove the key from the shift lock release slot, then reinstall the cover. Make sure the notch on the cover is on the driver's side. Press the brake pedal, and restart the engine.

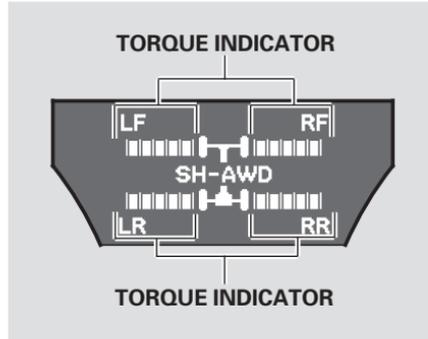
If you need to use the shift lock release, it means your vehicle is developing a problem. Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.

## Super Handling-All Wheel Drive (SH-AWD) System

The super handling-all wheel drive (SH-AWD) system is a full time all-wheel-drive system that automatically controls and transfers varying amounts of engine torque to all wheels independently, according to the driving conditions.

While the SH-AWD system helps to enhance the vehicle's driving stability in all situations, it is still your responsibility to drive and corner at reasonable speeds and to leave a sufficient margin of safety.

### SH-AWD Torque Distribution Monitor



The SH-AWD torque distribution monitor on the multi-information display shows you the amount of torque being sent to the wheels. Each wheel: right front (RF), left front (LF), right rear (RR), and left rear (LR), has its own torque indicator.

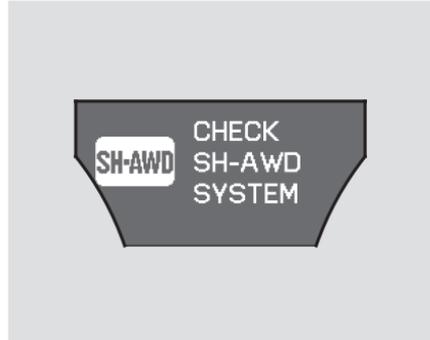
Each torque indicator is displayed as a bar graph divided into 5 segments. The number of segments represents the amount of torque distributed to each wheel.

When there is only a slight change in torque distribution while driving, such as cruising on level roads at the same speed, the torque distribution monitor may stop displaying the amount of torque. This is not a system problem. The monitor will show the amount if the system senses any change in torque distribution.

## Super Handling-All Wheel Drive (SH-AWD) System



If the SH-AWD indicator blinks while driving, it indicates the differential temperature is too high. You will also see an “SH-AWD DIFF TEMP. HIGH” message on the multi-information display. If this happens, pull to the side of the road when it is safe, shift to Park, and let the engine idle until the indicator goes out. If the indicator does not go out, take your vehicle to a dealer to have it



checked.

If the SH-AWD indicator on the instrument panel stays on, and the “CHECK SH-AWD SYSTEM” message also appears on the multi-information display, there is problem with the SH-AWD system.

Your vehicle still has normal front-wheel drive with vehicle stability assist (VSA), but does not have the advantages of SH-AWD. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

## Parking

---

Always use the parking brake when you park your vehicle. Make sure the parking brake is set firmly, or your vehicle may roll if it is parked on an incline.

Set the parking brake before you put the transmission in Park. This keeps the vehicle from moving and putting pressure on the parking mechanism in the transmission.

### **Parking Tips**

- Make sure the moonroof and the windows are closed.
  - Turn off the lights.
  - Place any packages, valuables, etc. in the cargo area or take them with you.
  - Lock the doors and the tailgate.
- Never park over dry leaves, tall grass, or other flammable materials. The hot three way catalytic converter could cause these materials to catch on fire.
  - If the vehicle is facing uphill, turn the front wheels away from the curb.
  - If the vehicle is facing downhill, turn the front wheels toward the curb, and set the parking brake.
  - Check the indicator on the instrument panel to verify that the security system is set.
  - Make sure the parking brake is fully released before driving away. Driving with the parking brake partially set can overheat or damage the rear brakes.

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Your vehicle is equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that turns on every time you start the engine and monitors the pressure in your tires while driving.

Each tire has its own pressure sensor. If the air pressure of a tire becomes significantly low, the sensor in that tire immediately sends a signal that causes the low tire pressure indicator in the instrument panel to come on. If this happens, you will see which tire is losing pressure on the multi-information display along with a “CHECK TIRE PRESSURE” message.



### Low Tire Pressure Indicator

When the low tire pressure indicator is on, one or more of your tires is significantly underinflated. You should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure as indicated on the vehicle’s tire information placard.

It is possible that the pressures shown on the multi-information display and the pressures you manually measure are slightly different.

If the difference is significant or you cannot make the low tire pressure indicator and message on the multi-information display go out after inflating the tires to the specified values, have your dealer check the system as soon as possible.

If the tire is flat, or if the tire pressure is too low to continue driving, replace the tire with the compact spare tire.

Driving on a significantly underinflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle’s handling and stopping ability.

Because tire pressure varies by temperature and other conditions, the low tire pressure indicator may come on unexpectedly.

*CONTINUED*

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

---

The TPMS can misinterpret the tire pressure because of differences in the air temperatures. For example, if you check and fill your tires in a warm area, then drive in extremely cold weather, the tire pressure will be lower than measured and could be underinflated and cause the TPMS indicators to come on. Or, if you check and adjust your tire pressure in cooler conditions, and drive into extremely hot conditions, the tires may become overinflated. However, the TPMS indicators will not come on if the tires are overinflated.

Refer to page [409](#) for tire inflation guidelines.

Although your tire pressure is monitored, you must manually check the tire pressures monthly.

Each tire, including the spare, should be checked monthly when the vehicle is cold, and set to the recommended inflation pressure as specified on the vehicle placard and in the owner's manual (see page [410](#)).

### Tire Pressure Monitor



To select the tire pressure monitor, press the INFO button several times with the ignition switch in the ON (II) position.

You will see the above display on the multi-information display when all tire pressures are normal.

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)



U.S. model



Canadian model



This shows that front left tire is losing pressure.

To see the inflation pressures of all four tires, press the SEL/RESET button. The display changes as shown above.

Each tire pressure is shown in PSI (U.S. models) or in kPa (Canadian models).

Each tire has its own pressure sensor. If the air pressure of a tire becomes significantly low, the sensor in that tire immediately sends a signal that causes the low tire pressure indicator in the instrument panel to come on. If this happens, you will see which tire is losing pressure on the multi-information display along with a "CHECK TIRE PRESSURE" message.

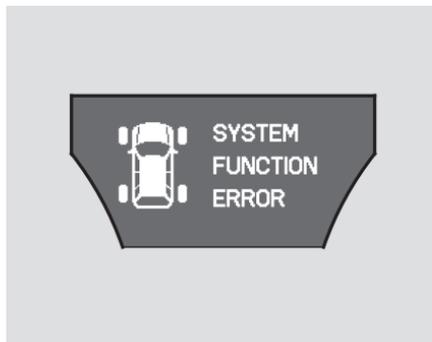
*CONTINUED*

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

---

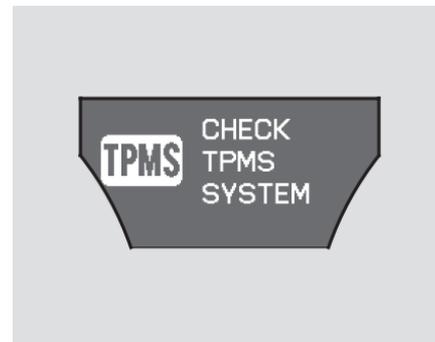


If any of the tires has low pressure, the tire pressure monitor also shows above message to warn you about the low tire pressure when you select the display by pressing the INFO button several times. Following this display, press the SEL/RESET button to see each tire pressure. When you continue driving after installing the spare tire, you will also see this message on the multi-information display.



If there is a problem with the TPMS, the tire pressure monitor shows a "SYSTEM FUNCTION ERROR" and the tire pressure readings are not displayed. If this happens, first you will see a system warning message "CHECK TPMS SYSTEM" on the multi-information display.

### TPMS System Failure



If there is a problem with the TPMS, you will see the above message on the multi-information display.

If you see this message, the system is off and is not monitoring the tire pressures. Have the system checked by your dealer as soon as possible.

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

If the low tire pressure indicator comes on, or the multi-information display shows a “CHECK TPMS SYSTEM” message, the VSA system automatically turns on even when the VSA system is turned off by pressing the VSA OFF button (see page 352 ). If this happens, you cannot turn the VSA system off by pressing the VSA OFF button again.

When you restart the vehicle with the compact spare tire, the TPMS system message may also be displayed on the multi-information display after driving several miles (kilometers).

### **Changing a Tire with TPMS**

If you have a flat tire, the low tire pressure and tire monitor indicators will come on. Replace the indicated flat tire with the compact spare tire (see page 419 ).

Each wheel is equipped with a tire pressure sensor mounted inside the tire behind the valve stem. You must use TPMS specific wheels. It is recommended that you always have your tires serviced by your dealer or qualified technician.

After you replace the flat tire, the low tire pressure indicator stays on. This is normal; the system is not monitoring the spare tire pressure. Manually check the spare tire pressure to be sure it is correct.

Never use a puncture-repairing agent in a flat tire. If used, you will have to replace the tire pressure sensor. Have the flat tire repaired by your dealer as soon as possible.

*As required by the FCC:*

*This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.*

*Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.*

*This device complies with Industry Canada Standard RSS-210. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) this device may not cause interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference that may cause undesired operation of the device.*

# Braking System

---

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at all four wheels. A power assist helps reduce the effort needed on the brake pedal. Emergency Brake Assist System increases the stopping force when you depress the brake pedal hard in an emergency situation. The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps you retain steering control when braking very hard.

Resting your foot on the brake pedal applies the brakes slightly. This builds up heat, and reduces brake effectiveness and brake pad life. In addition, fuel economy can be reduced. It also keeps your brake lights on all the time, confusing drivers behind you.

Constant application of the brakes when going down a long hill builds up heat and reduces their effectiveness. Use the engine to assist the brakes by taking your foot off the accelerator and downshifting to a lower gear.

Check the brakes after driving through deep water. Apply the brakes moderately to see if they feel normal. If not, apply them gently and frequently until they do. Be extra cautious in your driving.

## **Braking System Design**

The hydraulic system that operates the brakes has two separate circuits. Each circuit works diagonally across the vehicle (the left-front brake is connected with the right-rear brake, etc.). If one circuit should develop a problem, you will still have braking at two wheels.

## **Brake Wear Indicators**

All four brakes have audible brake wear indicators.

If the brake pads need replacing, you will hear a distinctive, metallic screeching sound when you apply the brake pedal. If you do not have the brake pads replaced, they will screech all the time. It is normal for the brakes to occasionally squeal or squeak when you apply them.

The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps prevent the wheels from locking up, and helps you retain steering control by pumping the brakes rapidly, much faster than a person can do it.

The electronic brake distribution (EBD) system, which is part of the ABS, also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.

*You should never pump the brake pedal.* Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as “stomp and steer.”

You will feel a pulsation in the brake pedal when the ABS activates, and may hear some noise. This is normal: it is the ABS rapidly pumping the brakes. On dry pavement, you will need to press on the brake pedal very hard before the ABS activates. However, you may feel the ABS activate immediately if you are trying to stop on snow or ice.



### ABS Indicator

If this indicator comes on, the anti-lock function of the braking system has shut down. The brakes still work like a conventional system, but without anti-lock. You should have your dealer inspect your vehicle as soon as possible.

You will also see a “CHECK ABS SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display (see page [81](#) ).

If the indicator comes on while driving, test the brakes as instructed on page [432](#) .

CONTINUED

## Anti-lock Brakes (ABS)

---

If the ABS indicator and the brake system indicator come on together, and the parking brake is fully released, the EBD system may also be shut down.

Test your brakes as instructed on page 432 . If the brakes feel normal, drive slowly and have your vehicle repaired by your dealer as soon as possible. Avoid sudden hard braking which could cause the rear wheels to lock up and possibly lead to a loss of control.

The VSA indicator will come on along with the ABS indicator.

**Important Safety Reminders**  
**ABS does not reduce the time or distance it takes to stop the vehicle.** It only helps with steering control during braking.

**ABS will not prevent a skid that results from changing direction abruptly,** such as trying to take a corner too fast or making a sudden lane change. Always drive at a safe speed for the road and weather conditions.

**ABS cannot prevent a loss of stability.** Always steer moderately when you are braking hard. Severe or sharp steering wheel movement can still cause your vehicle to veer into oncoming traffic or off the road.

**A vehicle with ABS may require a longer distance to stop** on loose or uneven surfaces, such as gravel or snow, than a vehicle without anti-lock.

The vehicle stability assist (VSA) system helps to stabilize the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than desired. It also assists you in maintaining traction while accelerating on loose or slippery road surfaces. It does this by regulating the engine's output and by selectively applying the brakes.

When VSA activates, you may notice that the engine does not respond to the accelerator in the same way it does at other times. There may also be some noise from the modulator.

The VSA system cannot enhance the vehicle's driving stability in all situations and does not control your vehicle's entire braking system. It is still your responsibility to drive and corner at reasonable speeds and to leave a sufficient margin of safety.



### VSA Activation Indicator

When VSA activates, you will see the VSA activation indicator blink. There may also be some noise from the modulator.



### VSA System Indicator

If the VSA system indicator comes on while driving, pull to the side of the road when it is safe, and turn off the engine. Reset the system by restarting the engine. If the VSA system indicator stays, or comes back on while driving, have the VSA system inspected by your dealer.

If the indicator does not come on when the ignition switch is turned to the ON (II) position, there may be a problem with the VSA system. Have your dealer inspect your vehicle as soon as possible.

You will also see a "CHECK VSA SYSTEM" message on the multi-information display if there is a problem with the VSA system.

If the low tire pressure indicator comes on (see page 343), or the multi-information display shows a "CHECK TPMS SYSTEM" message (see page 82), the VSA system automatically turns on even if you turn it off with the VSA OFF switch.

Without VSA, your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but it will not have VSA traction and stability enhancement.

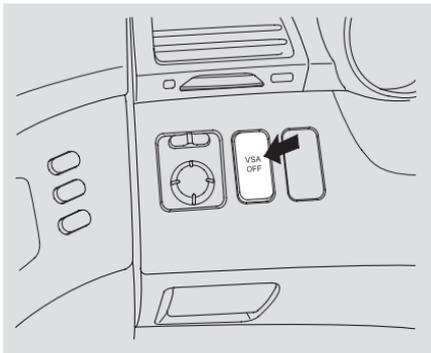
## Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

---

### VSA Off Switch

In certain unusual conditions when your vehicle gets stuck in shallow mud or fresh snow, it may be easier to free it with the VSA temporarily switched off. When the VSA system is off, the traction control system is also off. You should only attempt to free your vehicle with the VSA off if you are not able to free it when the VSA is on.

Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to switch the VSA on again. We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the VSA and traction control systems switched off.



This switch is under the driver's side vent. To turn the VSA system on and off, press and hold it until you hear a beep.

When VSA is off, the VSA activation indicator comes on as a reminder. With the VSA off, the trailer stability assist function is also turned off (see page [367](#) ).

VSA is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

### VSA and Tire Sizes

Driving with varying tire or wheel sizes may cause the VSA to malfunction. When replacing tires, make sure they are of the same size and type as your original tires (see page [413](#) ).

If you install winter tires, make sure they are the same size as those that were originally supplied with your vehicle. Exercise the same caution during winter driving as you would if your vehicle was not equipped with VSA.

## Active Damper System

*U.S. Sport Packages and Canadian Elite models*

The active damper system is always on, constantly adjusting your vehicle's dampers to the best settings for current road conditions along with vehicle speed and handling inputs.

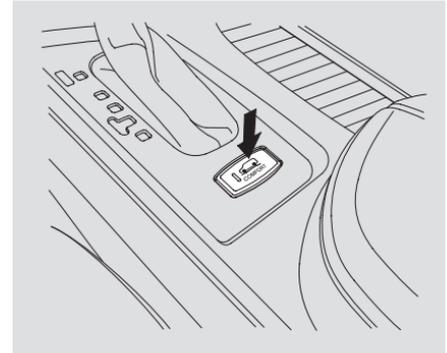
The system uses electrically controlled dampers to enhance handling precision, vehicle composure, tire to road adhesion and rough road ride comfort isolation. The system reacts to inputs from various electronic sensors to give exactly the right amount of suspension damping to provide optimal ride comfort and handling.

The system provides two selectable modes.

**Sport mode:** The system prioritizes handling response, vehicle body control and tire-to-road adhesion to allow for higher performance handling.

**Comfort mode:** The system prioritizes road isolation to allow for a more comfortable ride.

Either mode can be used in any type of operating conditions.

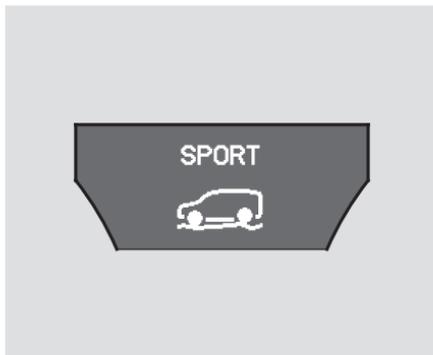


To switch between comfort and sport mode, press and release the active damper system button located on the center console to choose the desired mode.

## Active Damper System



When comfort mode is selected, the green indicator in the button comes ON, and the message "COMFORT" will appear on the multi-information display for five seconds.

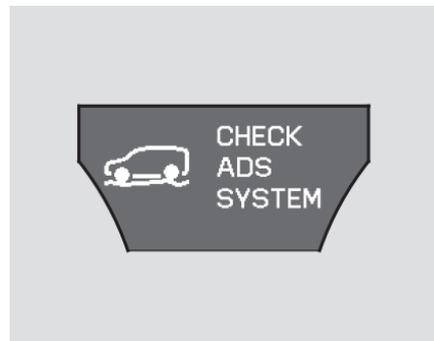


When sport mode is selected, the green indicator in the button goes off, and the message "SPORT" will appear on the multi-information display for five seconds.



### Active Damper System Indicator

If there is a problem with the active damper system, the active damper system shuts down and the active damper system indicator on the instrument panel comes on.



You will also see the "CHECK ADS SYSTEM" message appears on the multi-information display.

If you see this warning indicator and message, have your vehicle checked at your dealer as soon as possible.

In this case, your vehicle still has the normal damper function, but it will not have the active damper function.

### Towing a Trailer

Your vehicle has been designed primarily to carry passengers and their cargo. You can also use it to tow a trailer if you carefully observe the load limits, use the proper equipment, and follow the guidelines in this section.

Be sure to read the **Off-Highway Driving Guidelines** section on page [369](#) if you plan to tow off paved surfaces.

Your vehicle is equipped with a trailer stability assist to help stabilize the vehicle/trailer combination by reducing the vehicle speed. For more information, see page [367](#).

### WARNING

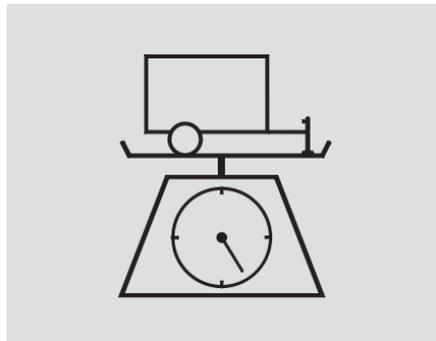
Exceeding any load limit or improperly loading your vehicle and trailer can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Check the loading of your vehicle and trailer carefully before starting to drive.

## Towing a Trailer

---

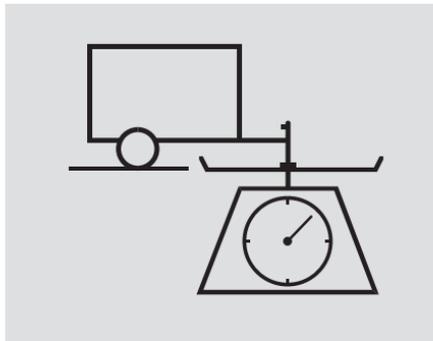
### Load Limit



#### *Total Trailer Weight*

The maximum allowable weight of the trailer and everything in or on it depends on the number of occupants in your vehicle and the type of trailer being towed (see page [358](#)).

Towing a trailer that is too heavy can seriously affect your vehicle's handling and performance. It can also damage the engine and driven.



#### *Tongue Load*

The weight that the tongue of a fully loaded trailer puts on the hitch should be 5 to 10 percent of the total trailer weight for boat trailers, and 8 to 15 percent of total trailer weight for all other trailers. (See page [358](#) for limits for your towing situation). Too much tongue load reduces front-tire traction and steering control. Too little tongue load can make the trailer unstable

and cause it to sway.

#### **Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR)**

— The maximum allowable weight of the vehicle, all occupants, all accessories, all cargo and the tongue load is 5,952 lbs (2,700 kg).

#### **Gross Axle Weight Ratings (GAWR)**

— The maximum allowable weight of the vehicle, all occupants, all accessories, all cargo, and the tongue load must not exceed 2,888 lbs (1,310 kg) on the front axle, and 3,175 lbs (1,440 kg) on the rear axle.

#### **Gross Combined Weight Rating (GCWR)**

— The maximum allowable weight of the fully loaded vehicle and trailer is 10,053 lbs (4,560 kg) with the proper hitch. The GCWR must be reduced 2 percent for every 1,000 feet (305 meters) of elevation.

## Estimating Loads

The best way to confirm that all loads are within limits is to check them at a public scale. For public scales in your area, check your local phone book, or contact your trailer dealer or rental agency for assistance.

To help ensure a safe drive to a scale, or if you cannot get to a public scale, we recommend that you estimate your total trailer weight and tongue load as described next.

### *To Estimate the Total Trailer Weight*

Add the weight of your trailer (as quoted by the manufacturer) with everything in or on the trailer. Then check the tables on page 358 to make sure you do not exceed the limit for your conditions.

### *To Estimate the Tongue Load*

1. Park the vehicle on level ground.
2. Measure and record the distance from the ground to the bottom of the trailer hitch.
3. Connect the fully loaded trailer to the hitch.
4. Measure again from the ground to the same spot on the bottom of the hitch.
5. Subtract the second measurement from the first measurement, then refer to the following table.

### *MDX and Technology Packages models*

If the difference is:	Estimated tongue load is:
13/32"	150 lbs (68 kg)
11/16"	250 lbs (114 kg)
31/32"	350 lbs (159 kg)
1 1/4"	450 lbs (205 kg)

### *U.S. Sport Packages and Canadian Elite models*

If the difference is:	Estimated tongue load is:
1/2"	150 lbs (68 kg)
27/32"	250 lbs (114 kg)
1 5/32"	350 lbs (159 kg)
1 1/2"	450 lbs (205 kg)

If the difference is more than 1 1/2 inch, you have too much load on the tongue. Redistribute the load or remove cargo as needed.

## Towing a Trailer

---

### Total Trailer Weight and Tongue Load Limits:

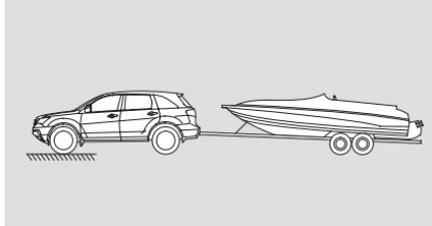
Number of Occupants*	Max. Trailer Weight	Max. Tongue Load
2	5,000 lbs (2,268 kg)	500 lbs (227 kg)
3	4,750 lbs (2,155 kg)	470 lbs (213 kg)
4	4,500 lbs (2,041 kg)	370 lbs (168 kg)
5	4,250 lbs (1,928 kg)	275 lbs (125 kg)
6	4,000 lbs (1,814 kg)	150 lbs (68 kg)
7	Towing is Not Recommended	

\* The corresponding weight limits assume occupants fill seats from the front of the vehicle to the back, each occupant weighs 150 lbs (70 kg), and each has 15 lbs (7 kg) of cargo in the cargo area. Any additional weight, including cargo or accessories, reduces the maximum trailer weight and maximum tongue load. Never exceed the gross axle weight ratings (see page 356).

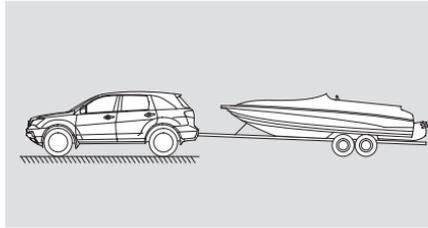
\*\* Recommended tongue load should be 5–15% of the total trailer weight for boat trailers, and 8–15% of the total trailer weight for all other trailers.

### Checking Loads

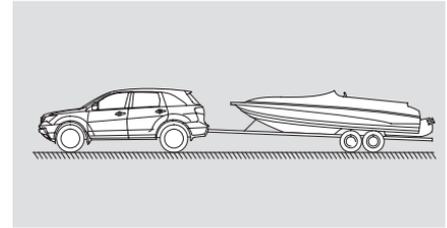
To accurately check your loads at the public scale, the vehicle and trailer should be fully loaded, and all occupants should stay in the vehicle while the attendant watches the scale.



1. Check the front gross axle weight.  
Limit: 2,888 lbs (1,310 kg)



2. Check the gross vehicle weight.  
Limit: 5,952 lbs (2,700 kg)
3. Check the rear gross axle weight.  
Limit: 3,175 lbs (1,440 kg)
4. If you cannot weigh the rear axle directly, you can calculate the rear gross axle weight by subtracting the weight in step 1 from the weight in step 2.  
Limit: 3,064 lbs (1,390 kg)

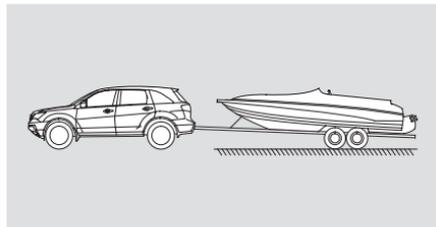


5. Check the gross combined weight.  
Limit: 10,053 lbs (4,560 kg)  
Remember, maximum gross combined weight should be decreased 2 % for every 1,000 feet (305 meters) of elevation.

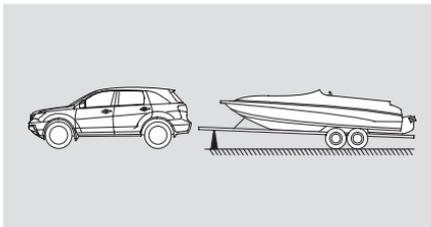
CONTINUED

## Towing a Trailer

---



6. Check the weight of the hitched trailer. Write this number down.



7. Check the weight of the unhitched trailer. Limit: See page [358](#).

8. Calculate the tongue load.  
Subtract the weight in step 6 from the weight in step 7.  
Limit: See page [358](#).  
Recommended: see page [356](#).  
Range: 5-10% for boat trailers  
8-15% for other trailers

### Towing Equipment and Accessories

Towing generally requires a variety of supplemental equipment. To ensure the best quality, we recommend that you purchase Acura equipment whenever possible.

Your dealer offers a trailer package that includes a hitch, a ball mount, and a wiring harness.

Discuss any additional needs with your trailer sales or rental agency, and make sure all equipment is properly installed, maintained, and also meets state, federal, province, and local regulations.

### **Hitch**

We strongly recommend that you have your dealer install a class 3 hitch. Using non-Acura equipment may result in serious damage to your vehicle.

Read the trailer manufacturer's instructions, and select the appropriate draw bar for the height of the trailer you will be towing.

### **Weight Distributing Hitch**

A weight distributing hitch is not recommended for use with your vehicle, as an improperly adjusted weight distributing hitch may reduce handling, stability, and braking performance.

### **Trailer Brakes**

Acura requires that any trailer with a total trailer weight of 1,000 lbs (455 kg) or more have its own brakes.

There are two common types of trailer brakes: surge and electric. Surge brakes are common for boat trailers, since the brakes will get wet.

If you choose electric brakes, be sure they are electronically actuated. Do not attempt to tap into your vehicle's hydraulic system. No matter how successful it may seem, any attempt to attach trailer brakes to your vehicle's hydraulic system will lower braking effectiveness and create a potential hazard.

See your trailer manufacturer for more information on installing electric brakes.

A 4-pin gray connector is available as an option at your dealer. This connector has all of the circuits required to install most electric trailer brake controllers. A jumper harness to adapt your electric trailer brake controller to the vehicle is included with the optional Genuine Acura trailer hitch kit. To obtain a connector and a trailer hitch kit, see your dealer.

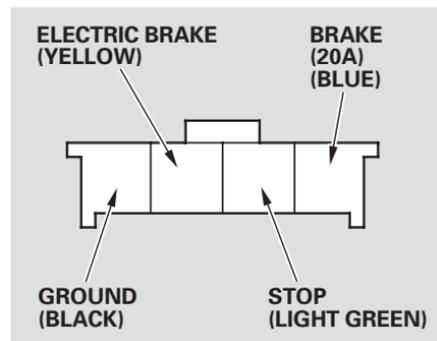
Have a qualified mechanic install your trailer brake controller following the trailer brake controller manufacturer's instructions. Failure to properly install the trailer brake controller may increase the distance it takes for you to stop your vehicle when towing a trailer.

*CONTINUED*

## Towing a Trailer

---

Use this illustration to identify each terminal in the trailer brake controller connector.



### *Safety Chains*

Always use safety chains when you tow a trailer. Make sure the chains are secured to the trailer and hitch, and that they cross under the tongue and can catch the trailer if it becomes unhitched. Leave enough slack to allow the trailer to turn corners easily, but do not let the chains drag on the ground.

### *Sway Control*

This device is recommended if your trailer tends to sway. Your trailer maker can tell you what kind of sway control you need and how to install it.

### *Trailer Mirrors*

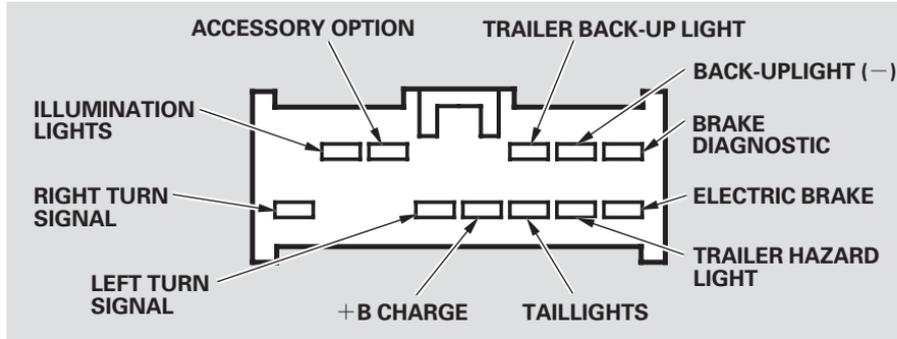
Many states and provinces require special exterior mirrors when towing a trailer. Even if they don't, you should install special mirrors if you cannot clearly see behind you, or if the trailer creates a blind spot.

### *Spare Tires*

When towing a trailer, we recommend that you carry a full-size spare wheel and tire for your vehicle and trailer. See page 413 for proper tire size, page 424 for how to store a full size wheel and tire, and page 419 for information on changing a flat tire.

Remember to unhitch the trailer before changing a flat. Ask your trailer sales or rental agency where and how to store the trailer's spare tire.

## Trailer Lights



Trailer lights and equipment must comply with federal, state, province, and local regulations. Check trailer light requirements for the areas where you plan to tow, and use only equipment designed for your vehicle.

Your vehicle is equipped with a connector to install an optional trailer lighting connector that mates with your vehicle. You can get this optional connector from your dealer.

Refer to the above illustration for wiring information.

We recommend that you have your dealer install an Acura wiring harness and converter. This harness has been designed for your vehicle.

If you use a non-Acura trailer lighting harness and converter, you can get the mating connector and pins that mate with the connector in your vehicle from your dealer.

Since lighting and wiring vary with trailer type and brand, you should also have a qualified mechanic install a suitable connector between the vehicle and the trailer.

## Towing a Trailer

---

### Pre-Tow Checklist

When preparing to tow, and before driving away, be sure to check the following:

- The vehicle has been properly serviced, and the brakes, suspension, cooling system, and lights are in good operating condition.
- The trailer has been properly serviced and is in good condition.
- All weights and loads are within limits.
- The hitch, safety chains, and any other attachments are secure.
- All items on and in the trailer are properly secured and cannot shift while you drive.

- Your vehicle tires and spare are in good condition and properly inflated.
- The trailer tires and spare are in good condition and inflated as recommended by the trailer maker.

### Driving Safely With a Trailer

The added weight, length, and height of a trailer will affect your vehicle's handling and performance, so driving with a trailer requires some special driving skills and techniques.

For your safety and the safety of others, take time to practice driving maneuvers before heading for the open road, and follow the guidelines below.

### *Break-In Period*

Avoid towing a trailer during your vehicle's first 600 miles (1,000 km) (see page [316](#)).

### ***Towing Speeds and Gears***

Drive slower than normal in all driving situations, and obey posted speed limits for vehicles with trailers. Use D position when towing a trailer on level roads. D3 is the proper shift lever position to use when towing a trailer in hilly terrain. (See “***Driving on Hills***” on the next page for additional gear information.)

When towing a fixed-sided trailer (e. g., camper), do not exceed 55 mph (88 km/h). At higher speeds, the trailer may sway or affect vehicle handling.

When driving uphill and downhill, use the Sequential SportShift mode to provide the proper engine power and engine braking on each gear. Select fourth, third, second, or first gear; depending on the vehicle speeds and road condition. Do not use fifth gear. The recommended speed range for each gear position is shown in the table.

Gear position	Speed range
1	0 – 19 mph (0 – 30 km/h)
2	19 – 31 mph (30 – 50 km/h)
3	31 – 41 mph (50 – 65 km/h)
4	over 41 mph (over 65 km/h)

If the automatic transmission fluid temperature increases and exceeds the specified limit, the A/T temperature indicator comes on (see page 68 ). You will also see a “A/T TEMP HIGH” message on the multi-information display.

### ***Making Turns and Braking***

Make turns more slowly and wider than normal. The trailer tracks a smaller arc than your vehicle, and it can hit or run over something the vehicle misses.

Allow more time and distance for braking. Do not brake or turn suddenly as this could cause the trailer to jackknife or turn over.

CONTINUED

## Towing a Trailer

---

### *Driving on Hills*

When climbing hills, closely watch your temperature gauge. If it nears the red (Hot) mark, turn the air conditioning off, reduce speed and, if necessary, pull to the side of the road to let the engine cool.

If the transmission shifts frequently while going up a hill, shift to D3.

If you must stop when facing uphill, use the foot brake or parking brake. Do not try to hold the vehicle in place by pressing on the accelerator, as this can cause the automatic transmission to overheat.

When driving down hills, reduce your speed and shift down to D3. Do not “ride” the brakes. **Remember, it takes longer to slow down and stop when towing a trailer.**

### *Handling Crosswinds and Buffeting*

Crosswinds and air turbulence caused by passing trucks can disrupt your steering and cause the trailer to sway. When being passed by a large vehicle, keep a constant speed, and steer straight ahead. Do not try to make quick steering or braking corrections.

### *Backing Up*

Always drive slowly and have someone guide you when backing up. Grip the *bottom* of the steering wheel, then turn the wheel to the left to get the trailer to move to the left. Turn the wheel to the right to move the trailer to the right.

### *Parking*

Follow all normal precautions when parking, including putting the transmission in Park and firmly setting the parking brake. Also, place wheel chocks at each of the trailer’s tires.

### *Retrieving a Boat*

If the vehicle’s tires slip when retrieving a boat from the water, keep D position and do not use the sequential sport shift mode. This prevents the transmission damage.

### *Towing Your Vehicle*

Your vehicle is not designed to be towed behind a motor home. If your vehicle needs to be towed in an emergency, see page [433](#).

Your vehicle is equipped with trailer stability assist function. This function works on the same sensors as the vehicle stability assist (VSA) system. This function helps to stabilize the vehicle/trailer combination when the trailer severely sways or oscillates. For more information of the VSA system, see page [351](#).

If the function detects the vehicle/trailer instability, it checks if the swaying is caused by the trailer, and if the trailer swaying or oscillation is increasing.

The vehicle/trailer combination is more affected by crosswinds, buffeting, and improper tongue load. These conditions can make the trailer unstable, and cause it to sway.

Under these conditions, trailer stability assist begins to stabilize the vehicle/trailer combination by reducing the vehicle speed. The control unit sends signals to selectively apply the brakes and regulate the engine output. The brake lights of your vehicle will be turned on automatically by the system even if you do not keep the pressure on the brake pedal.

When the brakes are applied, the trailer's brake lights come on along with the vehicle brake lights.

When the trailer stability assist activates, you will see the VSA activation indicator blink. There may also be some noise from the VSA hydraulic system.

Trailer stability assist cannot prevent a loss of control. Always reduce the vehicle speed and steer firmly. Do not brake suddenly or make quick steering motion. It could cause the trailer to jackknife or turn over and the system becomes ineffective.

Trailer stability assist cannot prevent swaying that can occur in crosswinds and in normal and emergency driving maneuvers. It helps only to stabilize the vehicle/trailer combination in these conditions, after the oscillation becomes severe.

Trailer stability assist will also be ineffective while driving at high speed or towing a trailer with a high center or gravity.

Always obey the recommended speed limits for towing a trailer, see page [365](#).

## Trailer Stability Assist

---

### Trailer Stability Assist Failure



The control unit monitors the VSA circuitry and the braking system. If there is a problem with the brake lighting system, the trailer stability assist function shuts down and the “CHECK TRAILER STABILITY ASSIST” message appears on the multi-information display.

If you see this message, have your vehicle checked at your dealer as soon as possible.

In this case, your vehicle still has the VSA traction and stability enhancement, but it will not have the trailer stability assist function.

If there is a problem with the VSA system, the system and Trailer Stability Assist shuts off. The VSA system and VSA activation indicators also come on (see page [351](#) ).

The ABS indicator and the brake system indicator may also come on along with the VSA system indicator.

If you see these warning indicators, have your vehicle checked at your dealer as soon as possible.

If you turn off the VSA, the trailer stability assist function also shuts off. Press and hold the VSA off switch until you hear a beep (see page [352](#) ). The VSA activation indicator comes on as a reminder. Press and hold the switch again to turn the system on.

The function turns on every time you start the engine along with the VSA, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

### General Information

Your vehicle has been designed primarily for use on pavement. But its higher ground clearance and super handling-all wheel drive (SH-AWD) system allow you to occasionally travel on unpaved roads, to campgrounds, picnic sites, and similar locations. It is not designed for trailblazing, mountain climbing, or other challenging off-road activities.

If you decide to drive on unpaved roads, you will find that it requires somewhat different driving skills. Your vehicle will also handle somewhat differently than it does on pavement. Be sure to pay extra attention to the precautions and tips in this section, and get acquainted with your vehicle before leaving the pavement.

### **⚠ WARNING**

Improperly operating this vehicle on or off-pavement can cause an accident or rollover in which you and your passengers could be seriously injured or killed.

- Follow all instructions and guidelines in this owner's manual.
- Keep your speed low, and don't drive faster than conditions permit.

### Important Safety Precautions

To avoid loss of control or rollover, be sure to follow all precautions and recommendations.

- Be sure to store cargo properly and do not exceed your cargo load limits (see page [325](#) and [327](#)).
- Whenever you drive, make sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts.
- Keep your speed low, and never go faster than the conditions allow.
- It's up to you to continually assess the situation and drive within the limits.

## Off-Highway Driving Guidelines

---

### Check Out Your Vehicle

Before you leave the pavement, be sure to do all scheduled maintenance and service, and inspect your vehicle for any problems. Pay special attention to the condition of the tires, and check the tire pressures.

After you return to the pavement, carefully inspect your vehicle to make sure there is no damage that could make driving it unsafe. Recheck the condition of the tires and the tire pressures.

### Remember

The route presents limits (too steep or bumpy roads). You have limits (driving skill and comfort). And your vehicle has limits (traction, stability, and power).

Driving off-highway can be hazardous if you fail to recognize limits and take the proper precautions.

### Accelerating and Braking

For better traction on all surfaces, accelerate slowly and gradually build up speed. If you try to start too fast on wet soil, mud, snow, or ice, you might not have enough traction to get underway, and you may dig yourself a hole. Starting with the shift lever in D position will help you have a smoother start on snow or ice.

Keep in mind that you will usually need more time and distance to brake to a stop on unpaved surfaces. Avoid hard braking. Do not “pump” the brakes; let the anti-lock braking system pump them for you.

### Avoiding Obstacles

Debris in the road can damage your suspension or other components. Because your vehicle has a high center of gravity, driving over a large obstacle, or allowing a wheel to drop into a deep hole can cause your vehicle to tip or roll over.

### Driving on Slopes

If you can't clearly see all conditions or obstacles on a slope, walk the slope before you drive on it. If you have any doubt whether or not you can safely drive on the slope, don't do it. Find another route. If you are driving up a hill and find that you cannot continue, *do not try to turn around*. Your vehicle could roll over. Slowly back down the hill, following the same route you took up the hill.

### Crossing a Stream

Before driving through water, stop, get out if necessary, and make sure that:

- The water is not deep enough to cover your wheel hubs, axles, or exhaust pipe. You could stall and not be able to restart your engine. The water can also damage important vehicle components.

- The banks are sloped so you can drive out.
- The water is not flowing too fast. Deep rushing water can sweep you downstream. Even very shallow rushing water can wash the ground from under your tires and cause you to lose traction and possibly roll over.
- The banks and surface under the water provide good traction. The water may hide hazards such as rocks, holes, or mud.

If you decide it is safe to drive through water, choose a suitable speed, and proceed without shifting, changing speeds, stopping, or shutting off the engine.

After driving through water, test your brakes. If they got wet, gently “pump” them while driving slowly until they operate normally.

If the water is deeper than the wheel hubs, some additional service may be required. This service is not covered by your warranties.

### If You Get Stuck

If you get stuck, carefully try to go in the direction (forward or reverse) that you think will get you unstuck. Do not spin the tires at high speeds. It will not help you get out and may cause damage to the transmission or SH-AWD system.

If you are still unable to free yourself, your vehicle is equipped with front and rear tow hooks designed for this purpose.

Use a nylon strap to attach the MDX to the recovery vehicle and carefully take out the slack in the strap. Once the strap is tight, the recovery vehicle should apply force. Remember that the recovery vehicle needs good traction to avoid

becoming stuck, too.

You should never use a jack to try to get unstuck. Your vehicle could easily slip off the jack and hurt you or someone else.

### Towing a Trailer Off-Road

You may be able to safely tow a lightweight trailer (such as a motorcycle or small tent trailer) off-road if you follow these guidelines.

- Do not exceed 1,000 lbs (450 kg) or a tongue weight of 100 lbs (45 kg).
- Stay on smooth, level dirt roads, and avoid driving in hilly terrain.
- Allow extra room for starting, stopping, and turning.
- Slow down if you encounter bumps or other obstacles.



This section explains why it is important to keep your vehicle well maintained and how to follow basic maintenance safety precautions.

This section also includes instructions on how to read the maintenance messages in the multi-information display, a maintenance record, and instructions for simple maintenance tasks you may want to take care of yourself.

If you have the skills and tools to perform more complex maintenance tasks on your vehicle, you may want to purchase the service manual. See page 463 for information on how to obtain a copy, or see your dealer.

Maintenance Safety.....	374
Maintenance Minder.....	375
Maintenance Record.....	383
Fluid Locations.....	385
Engine Compartment Cover.....	386
Adding Engine Oil.....	387
Changing the Engine Oil and Filter.....	388
Engine Coolant.....	390
Windshield Washers.....	392
Automatic Transmission Fluid.....	393
Brake Fluid.....	395
Power Steering Fluid.....	396
Timing Belt.....	396
Lights.....	397
Dust and Pollen Filter.....	403
Cleaning the Seat Belts.....	403
Floor Mats.....	404
Wiper Blades.....	405
Wheels.....	408
Tires.....	409
Checking the Battery.....	415
Vehicle Storage.....	416

## Maintenance Safety

---

All service items not detailed in this section should be performed by a certified technician or other qualified mechanic.

### Important Safety Precautions

To eliminate potential hazards, read the instructions before you begin, and make sure you have the tools and skills required.

- Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the engine is off.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not gasoline.
- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the battery and all fuel-related parts.

- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the battery or compressed air.

### ⚠ WARNING

Improperly maintaining this vehicle, or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations and schedules in this owner's manual.

### Potential Vehicle Hazards

- **Carbon Monoxide poison from engine exhaust.** Be sure there is adequate ventilation whenever you operate the engine.
- **Burns from hot parts.** Let the

engine and exhaust system cool down before touching any parts.

- **Injury from moving parts.** Do not run the engine unless instructed to do so.

### ⚠ WARNING

Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you to be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.

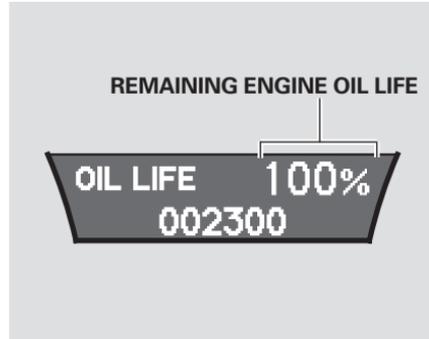
Some of the most important safety precautions are given here. However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether or not you should perform a given task.

One of the most convenient and important features of the multi-information display on your vehicle is the maintenance minder.

Based on engine operating conditions and accumulated engine revolutions, the onboard computer in your vehicle calculates the remaining engine oil life.

The system also displays the code for other scheduled maintenance items needing service.

## Engine Oil Life



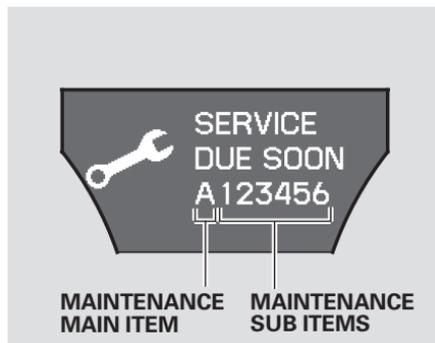
To see the remaining engine oil life displayed on the multi-information display as a percentage, turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. Make sure the display shows blank, SH-AWD and tire pressure, and then press the SEL/RESET button on the steering wheel repeatedly until the engine oil life appears (see page 73).

The remaining engine oil life is displayed according to the table shown below.

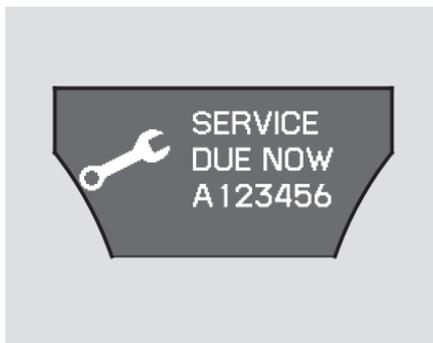
Calculated Engine Oil Life (%)	Displayed Engine Oil Life (%)
100% – 91%	100%
90% – 81%	90%
80% – 71%	80%
70% – 61%	70%
60% – 51%	60%
50% – 41%	50%
40% – 31%	40%
30% – 21%	30%
20% – 16%	20%
15% – 11%	15%
10% – 6%	10%
5% – 1%	5%
0%	0%

CONTINUED

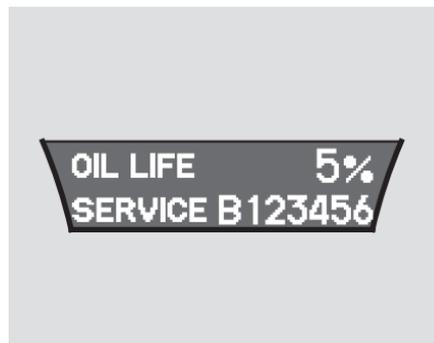
## Maintenance Minder



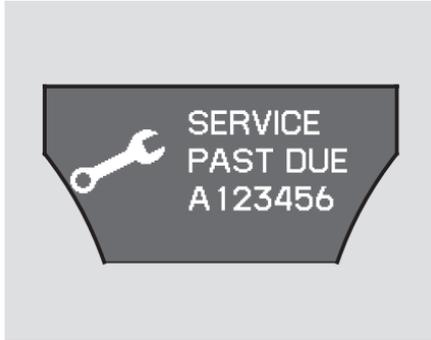
When the remaining engine oil life is 15 to 6 percent, the multi-information display shows a “SERVICE DUE SOON” message along with the maintenance schedule code indicating the main and sub items required at the time of the oil change. Refer to page [382](#) for a complete list of the maintenance main items and sub items.



When the remaining oil life is 1 to 5 percent, the multi-information display shows a “SERVICE DUE NOW” message with the same maintenance items “SERVICE DUE SOON” was displayed with. When you see this message have the indicated maintenance performed as soon as possible.



Press the SEL/RESET button on the steering wheel repeatedly to select the engine oil life. The message “SERVICE”, along with “5%”, and the maintenance item code are displayed on the lower part of the multi-information display when the calculated engine oil life is 1–5 percent (see page [375](#)).

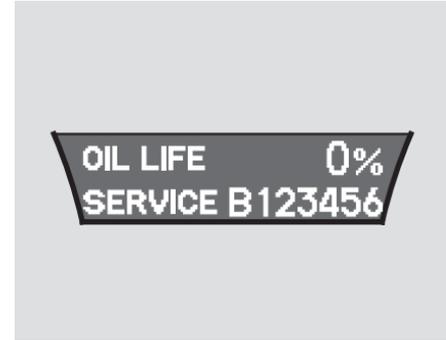


If the indicated maintenance service is not done and the remaining engine oil life reaches 0 %, the multi-information display will show the message “SERVICE PAST DUE” and the maintenance item code(s). This message is displayed when the total mileage is less than 10 miles (for U.S. models)/10 km (for Canadian models) after the engine oil life became 0 %.

These messages will come on every time you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.

Immediately have the service performed, and make sure to reset the oil life minder as previously described.

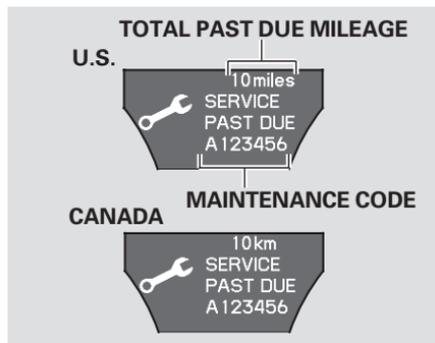
The message will be canceled if the ▼ or ▲ button on the steering wheel is pressed. Press the ▼ or ▲ button to see the message again.



Press the SEL/RESET button on the steering wheel repeatedly to select the engine oil life. The message “SERVICE”, along with “0 %”, and the maintenance item code are displayed on the lower part of the multi-information display when the calculated engine oil life is 0–1 %.

CONTINUED

## Maintenance Minder

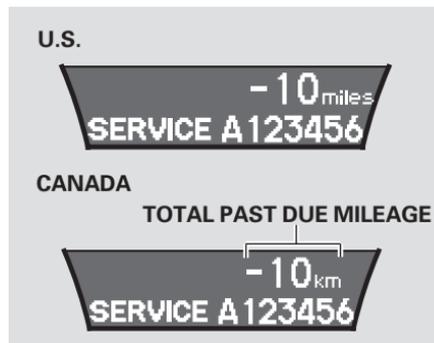


If the indicated required service is not done and the remaining engine oil life becomes 0 %, the multi-information display will show a “SERVICE PAST DUE” message, the total mileage after the remaining oil life became 0 %, and the maintenance item code(s).

This message is displayed when you drive over 10 miles (for U.S. models) or 10 km (for Canadian models) after seeing the 0 % message.

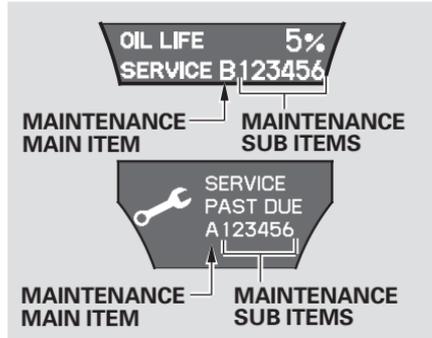
Immediately have the service performed, and make sure to reset the display as previously described.

The message will be canceled if the ▼ or ▲ button on the steering wheel is pressed. Press the ▼ or ▲ button to see the message again.



When you press the SEL/RESET button to select the engine oil life, the message “SERVICE”, along with the maintenance item code and the total negative mileage after the oil life became 0 %, will be displayed on the lower part of the multi-information display.

## Maintenance Main Items and Sub Items



All the maintenance items displayed in the multi-information display are in code.

For an explanation of the maintenance codes, see page [382](#).

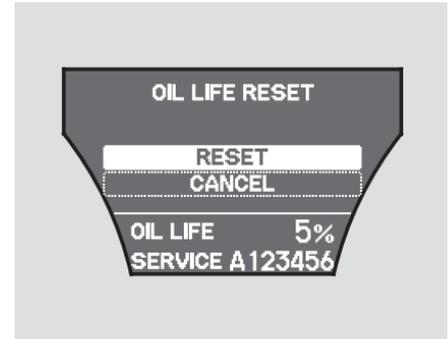
## Resetting the Engine Oil Life Display

Your dealer will reset the display after completing the required maintenance service. You will see “OIL LIFE 100%” on the display the next time you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.

If maintenance service is done by someone other than your dealer, reset the maintenance minder as follows:

1. Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position.
2. If the engine oil life is not displayed, press the SEL/RESET button on the steering wheel repeatedly until the multi-information display shows blank, SH-AWD and tire pressure.
3. Press and hold the SEL/RESET button on the steering wheel for

more than 10 seconds. The remaining engine oil life reset mode will be shown on the multi-information display.



4. Select “RESET” by pressing the INFO (▲/▼) button, then press the SEL/RESET button to reset the engine oil life display. The maintenance item code(s) will disappear, and the engine oil life will reset to “100.” If you want to cancel the oil life reset mode, select “CANCEL.”

## Maintenance Minder

---

### **Important Maintenance Precautions**

If you have the required service done but do not reset the display, or reset the display without doing the service, the system will not show the proper maintenance intervals. This can lead to serious mechanical problems because you will no longer have an accurate record of when maintenance is needed.

Your authorized Acura dealer knows your vehicle best and can provide competent, efficient service.

However, service at a dealer is not mandatory to keep your warranties in effect. Maintenance may be done by any qualified service facility or person who is skilled in this type of automotive service. Make sure to have the service facility or person reset the display as previously described. Keep all receipts as proof of completion, and have the person who does the work fill out the maintenance record. Check your warranty booklet for more information.

We recommend the use of Acura parts and fluids whenever you have maintenance done. These are manufactured to the same high-quality standards as the original components, so you can be confident of their performance and durability.

U.S. Vehicles:

**Maintenance, replacement, or repair of emissions control devices and systems may be done by any automotive repair establishment or individual using parts that are “certified” to EPA standards.**

According to state and federal regulations, failure to perform maintenance on the items marked with # will not void your emissions warranties. However, Acura recommends that all maintenance services be performed in accordance with the intervals indicated by the Multi-Information Display.

### Owner’s Maintenance Checks

You should check the following items at the specified intervals. If you are unsure of how to perform any check, turn to the appropriate page listed.

- Engine oil level — Check every time you fill the fuel tank. See page [320](#) .
  - Engine coolant level — Check the radiator reserve tank every time you fill the fuel tank. See page [320](#) .
  - Automatic transmission — Check the fluid level monthly. See page [393](#) .
  - Brakes — Check the fluid level monthly. See page [395](#) .
  - Tires — Check the tire pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects. See page [410](#) .
- Lights — Check the operation of the headlights, parking lights, taillights, high-mount brake light, and license plate lights monthly. See page [397](#) .

# Maintenance Minder

Symbol	Maintenance Main Items
A	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Replace engine oil<sup>1</sup></li> </ul>
B	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Replace engine oil<sup>1</sup> and oil filter</li> <li>• Inspect front and rear brakes</li> <li>• Check parking brake adjustment</li> <li>• Inspect these items:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Tie rod ends, steering gear box, and boots</li> <li>• Suspension components</li> <li>• Driveshaft boots</li> <li>• Brake hoses and lines (including ABS)</li> <li>• All fluid levels and condition of fluids</li> <li>• Exhaust system<sup>#</sup></li> <li>• Fuel lines and connections<sup>#</sup></li> </ul> </li> </ul>

1 : If the message "SERVICE DUE NOW" does not appear more than 12 months after the display is reset, change the engine oil every year.

# : See information on maintenance and emissions warranty in the first column on page 461.

NOTE :

- Independent of the maintenance messages in the multi-information display, replace the brake fluid every 3 years.
- Inspect idle speed every 160,000 miles (256,000 km).
- Adjust the valves during services A, B, 1, 2, or 3 if they are noisy.

Symbol	Maintenance Sub Items
1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Rotate tires</li> </ul>
2	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Replace air cleaner element If you drive in dusty conditions, replace every 15,000 miles (24,000 km).</li> <li>• Replace dust and pollen filter If you drive primarily in urban areas that have high concentrations of soot in the air from industry and from diesel-powered vehicles, replace every 15,000 miles (24,000 km).</li> <li>• Inspect drive belt</li> </ul>
3	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Replace transmission and transfer fluid</li> </ul>
4	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Replace spark plugs</li> <li>• Replace timing belt and inspect water pump If you drive regularly in very high temperatures (over 110°F, 43°C), in very low temperatures (under -20°F, -29°C), or towing a trailer, replace every 60,000 miles (U.S.)/100,000 km (Canada).</li> <li>• Inspect valve clearance</li> </ul>
5	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Replace engine coolant</li> </ul>
6	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Replace rear differential fluid Driving in mountainous areas at very low vehicle speeds or trailer towing results in higher level of mechanical (shear) stress to fluid. This requires differential fluid changes more frequently than recommended by the Maintenance Minder. If you regularly drive your vehicle under these conditions, have the differential fluid changed at 7,500 miles (12,000 km), then every 15,000 miles (24,000 km).</li> </ul>

# Maintenance Record

You or the servicing dealer can record all completed maintenance here. When maintenance is performed, record the mileage, circle the coded item(s) completed, and write in any other non-coded items (such as brake fluid replacement) below the codes. Keep the receipts for all work done on your vehicle. Maintenance can also be recorded in your-Acura maintenance journal.

Mileage	Maintenance Performed	Signature
		Date
mi km	A B 1 2 3 4 5 6	
mi km	A B 1 2 3 4 5 6	
mi km	A B 1 2 3 4 5 6	
mi km	A B 1 2 3 4 5 6	
mi km	A B 1 2 3 4 5 6	
mi km	A B 1 2 3 4 5 6	
mi km	A B 1 2 3 4 5 6	

Mileage	Maintenance Performed	Signature
		Date
mi km	A B 1 2 3 4 5 6	
mi km	A B 1 2 3 4 5 6	
mi km	A B 1 2 3 4 5 6	
mi km	A B 1 2 3 4 5 6	
mi km	A B 1 2 3 4 5 6	
mi km	A B 1 2 3 4 5 6	
mi km	A B 1 2 3 4 5 6	

Maintenance

CONTINUED

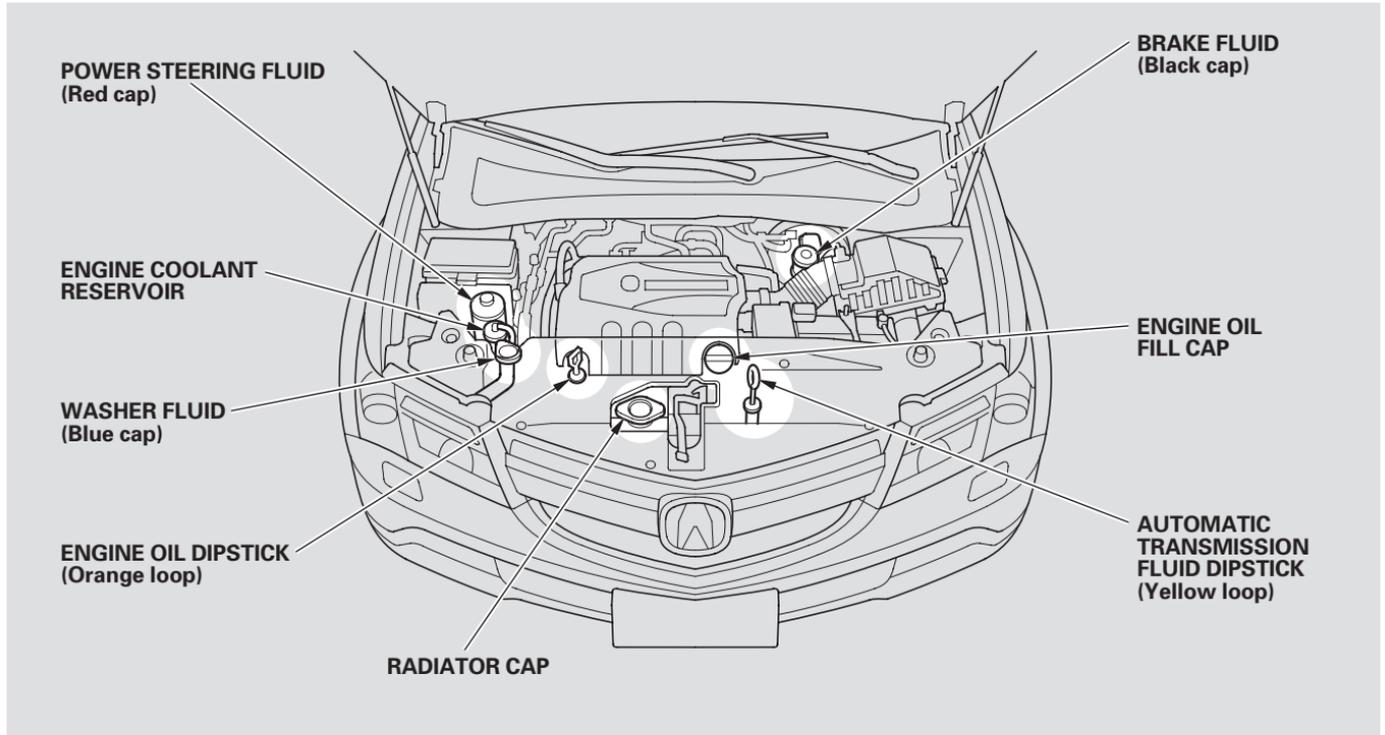
# Maintenance Record

---

Mileage	Maintenance Performed	Signature
		Date
mi km	A B 1 2 3 4 5 6	
mi km	A B 1 2 3 4 5 6	
mi km	A B 1 2 3 4 5 6	
mi km	A B 1 2 3 4 5 6	
mi km	A B 1 2 3 4 5 6	
mi km	A B 1 2 3 4 5 6	
mi km	A B 1 2 3 4 5 6	

Mileage	Maintenance Performed	Signature
		Date
mi km	A B 1 2 3 4 5 6	
mi km	A B 1 2 3 4 5 6	
mi km	A B 1 2 3 4 5 6	
mi km	A B 1 2 3 4 5 6	
mi km	A B 1 2 3 4 5 6	
mi km	A B 1 2 3 4 5 6	
mi km	A B 1 2 3 4 5 6	

# Fluid Locations

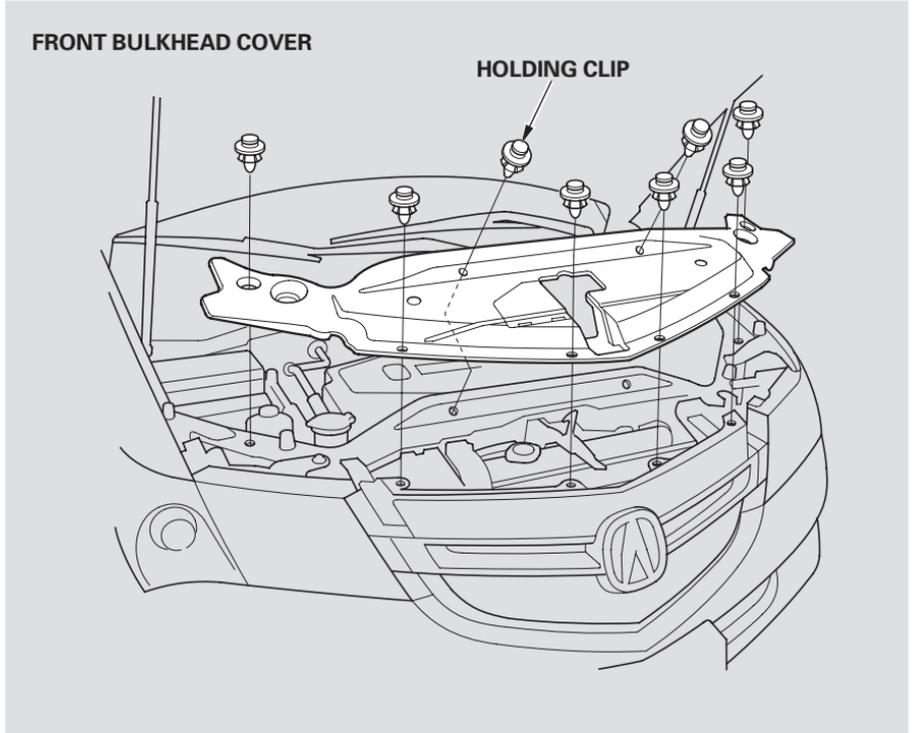


## Engine Compartment Cover

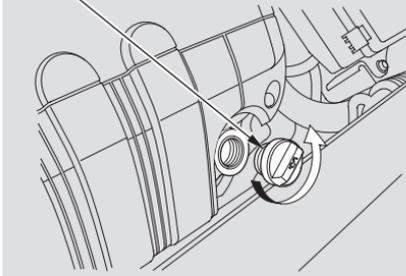
The component parts in the engine compartment are protected by the cover. You may need to remove the cover when you perform some simple maintenance work.

Cover is secured by holding clips.

To remove the front bulkhead cover, remove the holding clips with a flat-tipped screwdriver.



ENGINE OIL FILL CAP



Unscrew and remove the engine oil fill cap on top of the valve cover. Pour in the oil slowly and carefully so you do not spill. Clean up any spills immediately. Spilled oil could damage components in the engine compartment. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap, and tighten it securely. Wait a few minutes, and recheck the oil level on the engine oil dipstick. Do not fill above the upper mark; you could damage the engine.

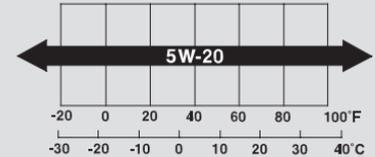
### Recommended Engine Oil

Oil is a major contributor to your engine's performance and longevity. Always use a premium-grade 5W-20 detergent oil displaying the API Certification Seal. This seal indicates the oil is energy conserving, and that it meets the American Petroleum Institute's latest requirements. It is highly recommended that you use Honda motor oil in your vehicle. Make sure the API Certification Seal says "For Gasoline Engines."



API CERTIFICATION SEAL

The oil viscosity or weight is provided on the container's label. 5W-20 oil is formulated for year-round protection of your vehicle to improve cold weather starting and fuel economy.



Ambient Temperature

## Adding Engine Oil, Changing the Engine Oil and Filter

### Synthetic Oil

You may use a synthetic motor oil if it meets the same requirements given for a conventional motor oil, it displays the API Certification Seal and it is the proper weight. You must follow the oil and filter change intervals given in the maintenance schedule.

### Engine Oil Additives

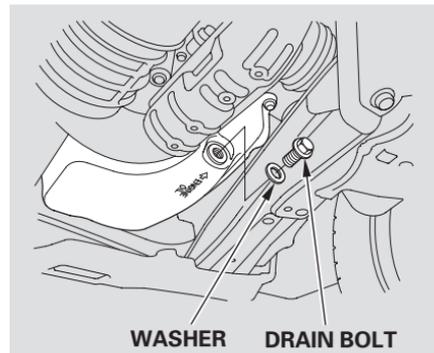
Your vehicle does not require any oil additives. Additives may adversely affect the engine or transmission performance and durability.

### Changing the Engine Oil and Filter

Always change the oil and filter according to the maintenance messages shown on the multi-information display. The oil and filter collect contaminants that can damage your engine if they are not removed regularly.

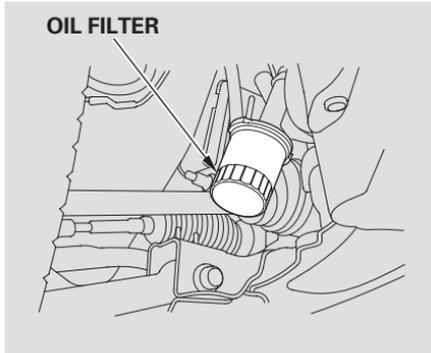
Changing the oil and filter requires special tools and access from underneath the vehicle. The vehicle should be raised on a service station-type hydraulic lift for this service. Unless you have the knowledge and proper equipment, you should have this maintenance done by a skilled mechanic.

1. Run the engine until it reaches normal operating temperature, then shut it off.



2. Open the hood, and remove the engine oil fill cap. Remove the oil drain bolt and washer from the bottom of the engine. Drain the oil into an appropriate container.

## Changing the Engine Oil and Filter



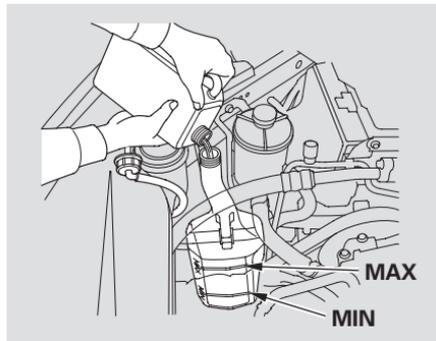
3. Remove the oil filter, and let the remaining oil drain. A special wrench (available from your dealer) is required.
4. Check the oil filter to make sure its gasket did not stick to the engine block. A stuck gasket could cause an oil leak.
5. Install a new oil filter according to the instructions that come with it.
6. Put a new washer on the drain bolt, then reinstall the drain bolt. Tighten the drain bolt to:  
29 lbf·ft (39 N·m , 4.0 kgf·m)
7. Refill the engine with the recommended oil.  
  
Engine oil change capacity (including filter):  
4.5 US qt (4.3 ℓ)
8. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap. Start the engine. The oil pressure indicator should go out within 5 seconds. If it does not, turn off the engine, and check your work.
9. Let the engine run for several minutes, then check the drain bolt and oil filter for leaks.
10. Turn off the engine and let it sit for several minutes, then check the oil level on the dipstick. If necessary, add more oil.

### NOTICE

*Improper disposal of engine oil can be harmful to the environment. If you change your own oil, please dispose of the used oil properly. Put it in a sealed container, and take it to a recycling center. Do not discard it in a trash bin or dump it on the ground.*

# Engine Coolant

## Adding Engine Coolant



If the coolant level in the reserve tank is at or below the MIN line, add coolant to bring it up to the MAX line. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

Always use Honda Long-Life Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2. This coolant is pre-mixed with 50 % antifreeze and 50 % water. Never add straight antifreeze or plain water.

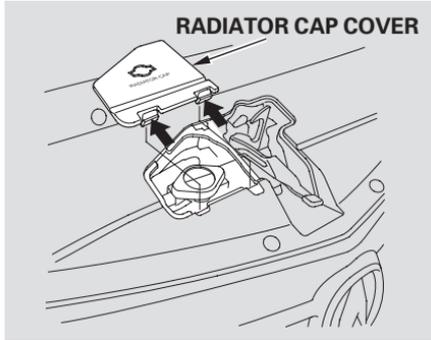
If Honda Long-life antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major-brand non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Make sure it is a high-quality coolant recommended for aluminum engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda Long-life antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

If the reserve tank is completely empty, you should also check the coolant level in the radiator.

### **⚠ WARNING**

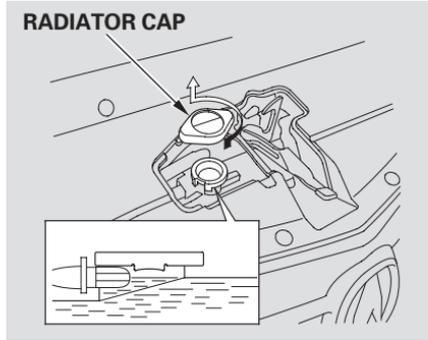
Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.



1. Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.
2. Remove the radiator cap cover.

Relieve any pressure in the cooling system by turning the radiator cap counterclockwise, without pressing down.



3. Remove the radiator cap by pushing down and turning counterclockwise.

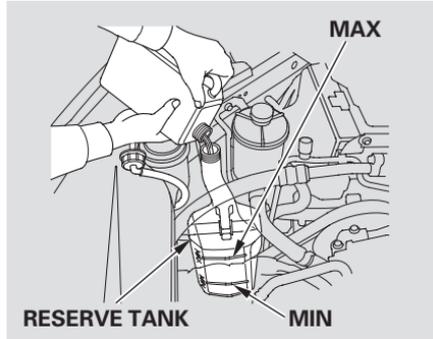
4. The coolant level should be up to the base of the filler neck. Add coolant if it is low.

Pour the coolant slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spill immediately; it could damage components in the engine compartment.

5. Put the radiator cap back on, and tighten it fully.

CONTINUED

## Engine Coolant, Windshield Washers



6. Pour coolant into the reserve tank. Fill it to halfway between the MAX and MIN marks. Put the cap back on the reserve tank.

Do not add any rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or engine components.

### Windshield Washers

Check the fluid level in the windshield washer reservoir at least monthly during normal use.

If the washer fluid is low, a "WASHER FLUID LOW" message appears on the multi-information display.

Fill the reservoir with a good-quality windshield washer fluid. This increases the cleaning capability and prevents freezing in cold weather.

When you refill the reservoir, clean the edges of the windshield wiper blades with windshield washer fluid on a clean cloth. This will help to condition them.

### NOTICE

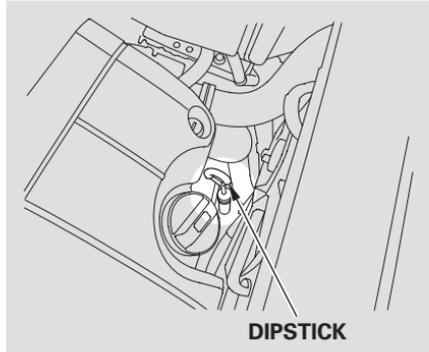
*Do not use engine antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windshield washer reservoir. Antifreeze can damage your vehicle's paint, while a vinegar/water solution can damage the windshield washer pump. Use only commercially-available windshield washer fluid.*

## Automatic Transmission Fluid

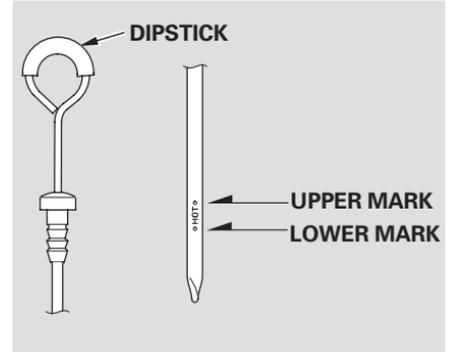
The transmission should be drained and refilled with new fluid when this service is shown on a maintenance message in the multi-information display.

Check the fluid level with the engine at normal operating temperature.

1. Park the vehicle on level ground. Start the engine and let it run until the radiator fan comes on, then shut off the engine. For accurate results, wait about 60 seconds before going to step 2, but don't wait longer than 90 seconds.



2. Remove the dipstick (yellow loop) from the transmission, and wipe it with a clean cloth.



3. Insert the dipstick all the way into the transmission securely as shown in the illustration.
4. Remove the dipstick and check the fluid level. It should be between the upper and lower marks.

CONTINUED

## Automatic Transmission Fluid

---

5. If the level is below the lower mark, add fluid into the dipstick hole to bring it to the level between the upper and lower marks.

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spill immediately; it could damage components in the engine compartment.

Always use Honda ATF-Z1 (automatic transmission fluid). If it's not available, you may use a DEXRON® III automatic transmission fluid as a temporary replacement. However, continued use can affect the shift quality. Have the transmission flushed and refilled with Honda ATF-Z1 as soon as it is convenient.

6. Insert the dipstick all the way back into the transmission securely as shown in the illustration.

Make sure the rubber cap on the dipstick fits in the dipstick guide and that you push the dipstick in all the way.

If you are not sure how to add fluid, contact your dealer.

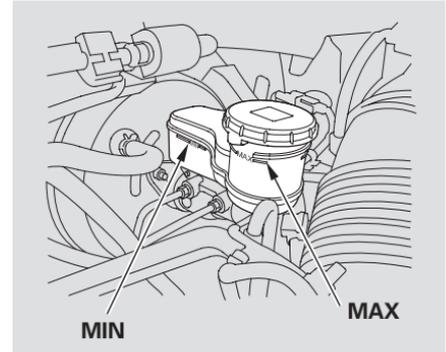
Replace the brake fluid when this service is indicated on a maintenance message in the multi-information display.

Check the fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir monthly.

Always use Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3. If it is not available, you should use only DOT 3 or DOT 4 fluid, from a sealed container, as a temporary replacement.

Using any non-Honda brake fluid can cause corrosion and decrease the life of the system. Have the brake system flushed and refilled with Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3 as soon as possible.

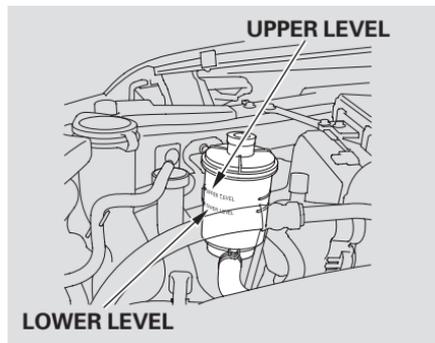
Brake fluid marked DOT 5 is not compatible with your vehicle's braking system and can cause extensive damage.



The fluid level should be between the MIN and MAX marks on the side of the reservoir. If the level is at or below the MIN mark, your brake system needs attention. Have the brake system inspected for leaks or worn brake pads.

# Power Steering Fluid, Timing Belt

## Power Steering Fluid



Check the level on the side of the reservoir when the engine is cold. The fluid should be between the UPPER LEVEL and LOWER LEVEL. If not add power steering fluid to the UPPER LEVEL mark.

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; it could damage components in the engine compartment.

Always use Honda Power Steering Fluid. You may use another power steering fluid as an emergency replacement, but have the power steering system flushed and refilled with Honda PSF as soon as possible.

A low power steering fluid level can indicate a leak in the system. Check the fluid level frequently, and have the system inspected as soon as possible.

If you are not sure how to add fluid, contact your dealer.

### NOTICE

*Turning the steering wheel to full left or right lock and holding it there can damage the power steering pump.*

## Timing Belt

The timing belt should be replaced at the intervals shown in the maintenance minder schedule.

Replace the belt at 60,000 miles (100,000 km) if you regularly drive your vehicle in one or more of these conditions:

- In very high temperatures (over 110°F, 43°C).
- In very low temperatures (under -20°F, -29°C).
- If you frequently tow a trailer.

## Headlight Aiming

*MDX and Technology Packages models*

The headlights were properly aimed when your vehicle was new. If you regularly carry heavy items in the cargo area or pull a trailer, readjustment may be required. Adjustment should be done by your dealer or other qualified mechanic.

## Low Beam Headlight Bulb Replacement

The low beam headlight bulbs are a type of high voltage discharge tube. High voltage can remain in the circuit even with the light switch off and the key removed. Because of this, you should not attempt to examine or change a low beam headlight bulb yourself. If a low beam headlight bulb fails, take the vehicle to your dealer to have it replaced.

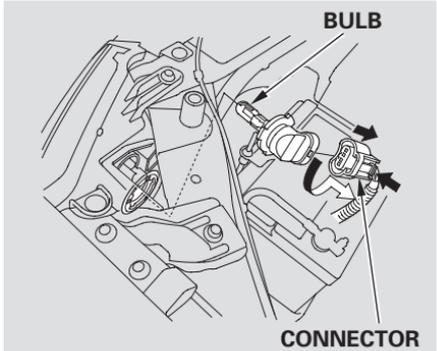
## Replacing a High Beam Headlight Bulb

Your vehicle has halogen headlight bulbs. When replacing a bulb, handle it by its base, and protect the glass from contact with your skin or hard objects. If you touch the glass, clean it with denatured alcohol and a clean cloth.

### NOTICE

*Halogen headlight bulbs get very hot when lit. Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.*

1. Open the hood.
2. Remove the front bulkhead cover (see page [386](#)).



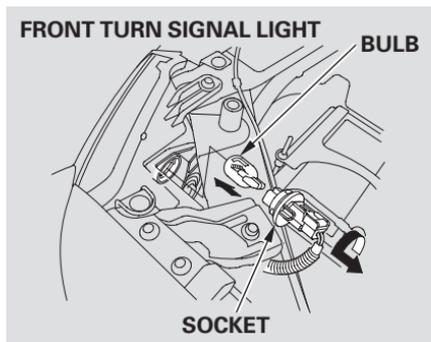
3. Remove the electrical connector from the bulb by pushing on the tab and pulling the connector down.
4. Remove the bulb by turning it about one-quarter turn counterclockwise.

CONTINUED

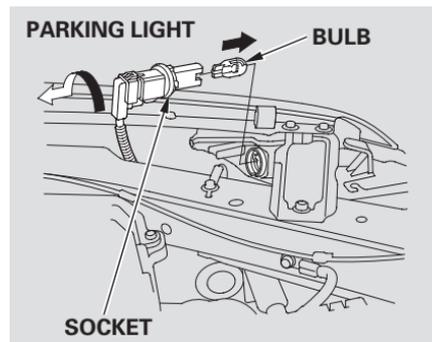
# Lights

5. Insert the new bulb into the hole, and turn it one-quarter turn clockwise to lock it in place.
6. Push the electrical connector onto the new bulb.
7. Turn on the headlights to test the new bulb.

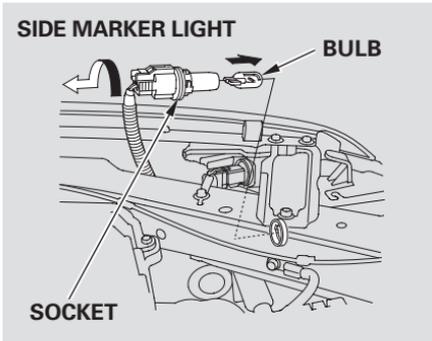
## Replacing Front Turn Signal/ Parking and Side Marker Light Bulbs



1. Open the hood.
2. Remove the front bulkhead cover (see page 386).
3. Remove the socket by turning it one-quarter turn counterclockwise.
4. Pull the bulb straight out of its socket.



5. Push the new bulb straight into the socket until it bottoms.
6. Insert the socket back into the headlight assembly. Turn it clockwise to lock it in place.
7. Turn on the lights to make sure the new bulb is working.

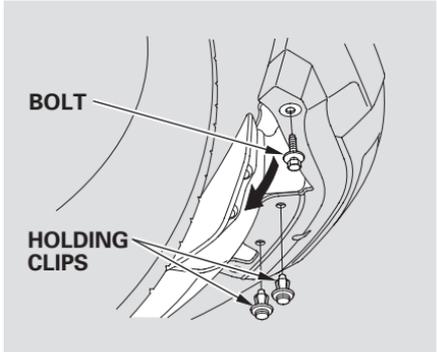


## Replacing Front Fog/Daytime Running Light Bulbs

Your vehicle uses halogen light bulbs. When replacing a bulb, handle it by its plastic case, and protect the glass from contact with your skin or hard objects. If you touch the glass, clean it with denatured alcohol and a clean cloth.

### NOTICE

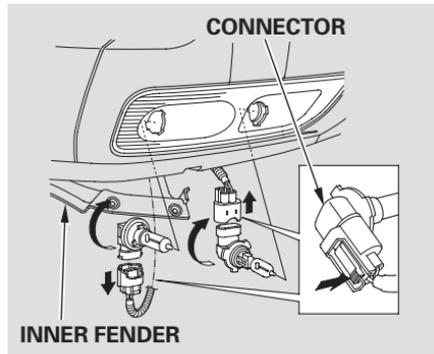
*Halogen bulbs get very hot when lit. Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.*



1. Remove the bolt and use the flat-tipped screwdriver to remove the holding clips located under the front bumper.
2. Push down the inner fender.

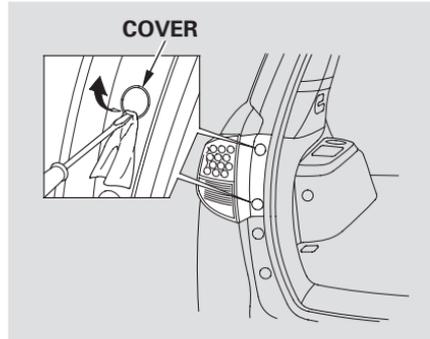
CONTINUED

# Lights

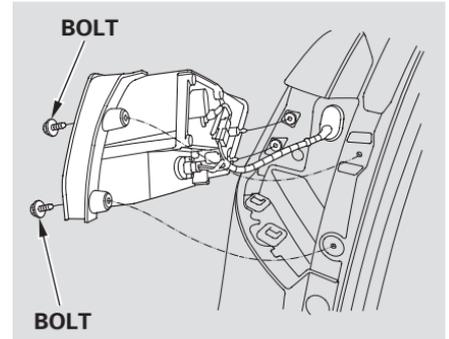


3. Remove the electrical connector from the bulb by pushing on the tab and pulling the connector down.
4. Remove the bulb from the fog light assembly by turning it one-quarter turn counterclockwise.

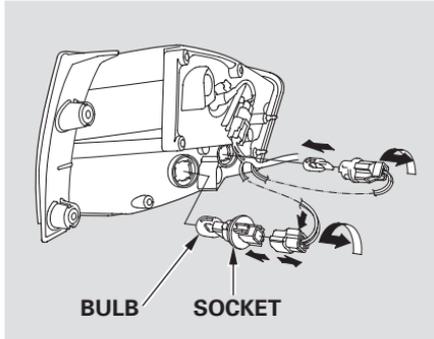
## Replacing Rear Bulbs (in Rear Pillar)



1. Open the tailgate. Use a screwdriver protected with a cloth to pry open the two covers.



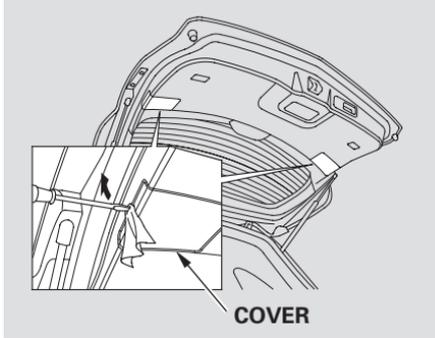
2. Remove the two bolts, and remove the rear light assembly from the rear pillar.
3. Determine which of the two bulbs is burned out: turn signal/hazard lights or side marker light.



4. Remove the socket by turning it one-quarter turn counterclockwise.
5. Pull the bulb straight out of its socket.

6. Push the new bulb straight into the socket until it bottoms.
7. Turn on the lights to make sure the new bulb is working.
8. Put the socket back into the light assembly, and turn it clockwise to lock it in place.
9. Install the rear light assembly in the rear pillar. Tighten the two bolts. Snap the bolt covers into position.

## Replacing a Back-up Light Bulb

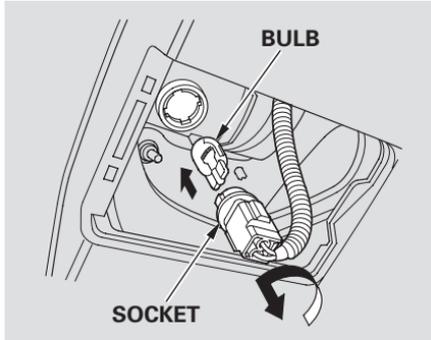


1. Open the tailgate. Place a cloth on the edge of the light assembly cover. Remove the cover by carefully prying in the notch on its middle edge with a flat-tip screwdriver.

CONTINUED

# Lights

---



2. Remove the socket by turning it one-quarter turn counterclockwise.
3. Pull the bulb straight out of its socket.
4. Push the new bulb straight into the socket until it bottoms.
5. Turn on the lights to make sure the new bulb is working.

6. Put the socket back into the light assembly, and turn it clockwise to lock it in place.

7. Place the cover back into the light assembly. Push it up until it locks in place.

## Side Turn Signal Light

Each outside mirror has side turn signal lights. The lights should be replaced by your dealer.

## Rear License Plate Bulb

The license plate has two lights above it. The bulbs should be replaced by your dealer.

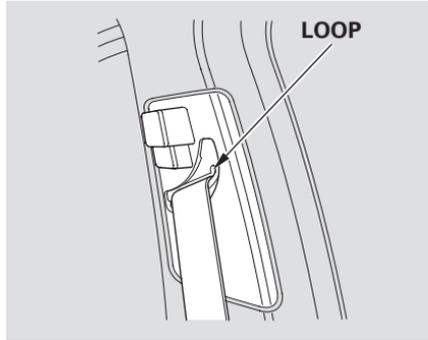
## Dust and Pollen Filter, Cleaning the Seat Belts

### Dust and Pollen Filter

This filter removes the dust and pollen that is brought in from the outside through the climate control system.

Have your dealer replace the filter when this service is indicated by a maintenance message in the multi-information display. It should be replaced every 15,000 miles (24,000 km) if you drive primarily in urban areas that have high concentrations of soot in the air, or if the flow from the climate control system becomes less than usual.

### Cleaning the Seat Belts

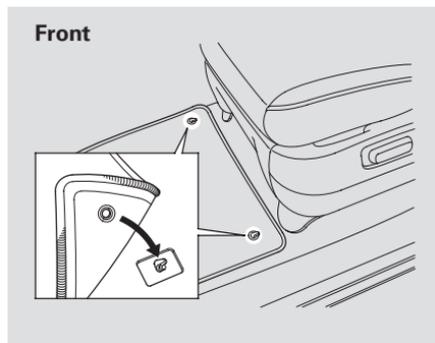


If your seat belts get dirty, use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean them. Do not use bleach, dye, or cleaning solvents. Let the belts air-dry before you use the vehicle.

Dirt build-up in the loops of the seat belt anchors can cause the belts to retract slowly. Wipe the insides of the loops with a clean cloth dampened in mild soap and warm water or isopropyl alcohol.

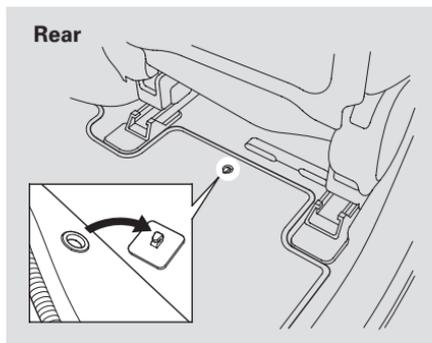
## Floor Mats

---



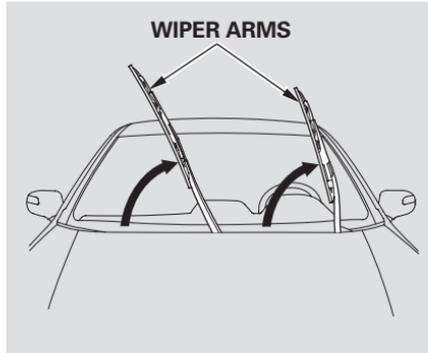
The floor mats that came with your vehicle hook over floor mat anchors. This keeps the floor mats from sliding forward or backward and possibly interfering with the pedals or making the front passenger's weight sensors ineffective.

If you remove a floor mat, make sure to re-anchor it when you put it back in your vehicle.



A non-Acura floor mat may not fit your vehicle properly. This could prevent the proper operation of the passenger's seat weight sensors. We recommend using genuine Acura floor mats. Do not put additional floor mats on top of the anchored mat.

Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every 6 months. Replace them if you find signs of cracking in the rubber, and areas that are getting hard or if they leave streaks and unwiped areas when used.

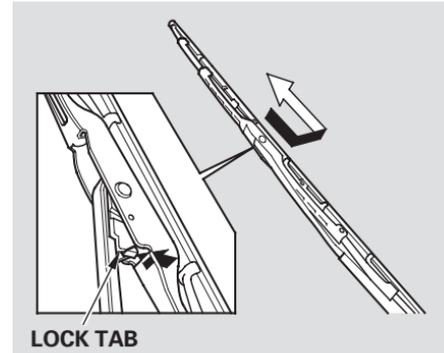


To replace the front wiper blades:

1. Raise each wiper arm off the windshield, lifting the driver's side first, then the passenger's side.

## NOTICE

*Do not open the hood when the wiper arms are raised, or you will damage the hood and the wiper arms.*

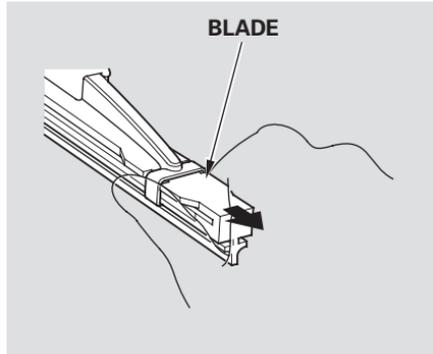


2. Disconnect the blade assembly from the wiper arm:
  - Press and hold the lock tab.
  - Slide the blade assembly toward the lock tab until it releases from the wiper arm.

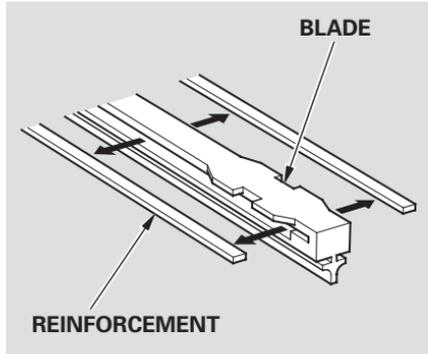
When replacing a wiper blade, make sure not to drop the wiper blade or wiper arm down on the windshield.

CONTINUED

## Wiper Blades

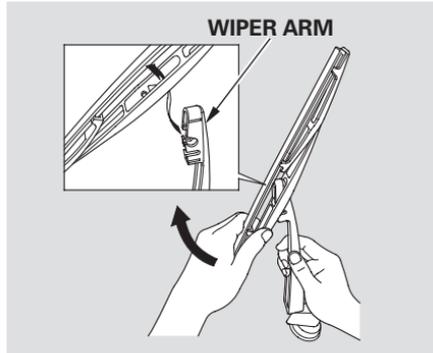


3. Remove the blade from its holder by grasping the tabbed end of the blade. Pull firmly until the tabs come out of the holder.



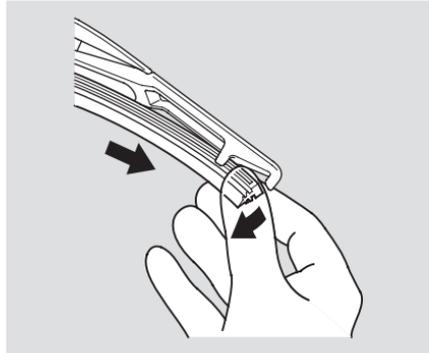
4. Examine the new wiper blades. If they have no plastic or metal reinforcement along the back edge, remove the metal reinforcement strips from the old wiper blade, and install them in the slots along the edge of the new blade.

5. Slide the new wiper blade into the holder until the tabs lock.
6. Slide the wiper blade assembly onto the wiper arm. Make sure it locks in place.
7. Lower the wiper arm against the window.  
Windshield: Lower the passenger's side first, then the driver's side.

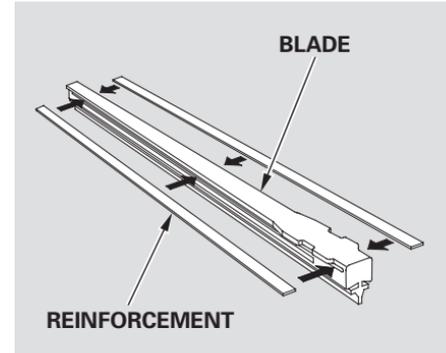


To replace the rear wiper blade:

1. Raise the wiper arm off the rear window.



2. Slide the blade out of the wiper arm.

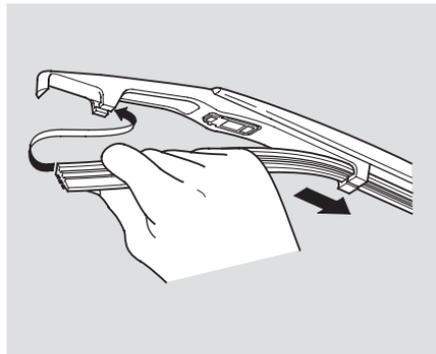


3. Examine the new wiper blades. If they have no plastic or metal reinforcement along the back edge, remove the metal reinforcement strips from the old wiper blade, and install them in the slots along the edge of the new blade.

CONTINUED

## Wiper Blades, Wheels

---



4. Slide the new blade into the wiper arm. Make sure it is engaged in the slot along its full length.
5. Lower the wiper arm.

### Wheels

Clean the wheels as you would the rest of the exterior. Wash them with the same solution, and rinse them thoroughly.

Aluminum alloy wheels have a protective clear-coat that keeps the aluminum from corroding and tarnishing. Cleaning the wheels with harsh chemicals (including some commercial wheel cleaners) or a stiff brush can damage the clear-coat. To clean the wheels, use a mild detergent and a soft brush or sponge.

To safely operate your vehicle, your tires must be the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and correctly inflated.

The following pages give more detailed information on how to take care of your tires and what to do when they need to be replaced.

### **WARNING**

Using tires that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tire inflation and maintenance.

### **Inflation Guidelines**

Keeping the tires properly inflated provides the best combination of handling, tread life, and riding comfort.

- Underinflated tires wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from being overheated.
- Overinflated tires can make your vehicle ride more harshly, are more prone to damage from road hazards, and wear unevenly.

The tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) will warn you when a tire pressure is low. See page [343](#) for information on the TPMS.

We recommend that you visually check your tires everyday. If you think a tire might be low, check it immediately with a tire gauge.

Use a gauge to measure the air pressure in each tire at least once a month. Even tires that are in good condition may lose 1 to 2 psi (10 to 20 kPa, 0.1 to 0.2 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>) per month. Remember to check the spare tire at the same time.

*CONTINUED*

# Tires

---

Check the pressure in the tires when they are cold. This means the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours, or driven less than 1 mile (1.6 km). Add or release air, if needed, to match the recommended cold tire pressure.

If you check the pressure when the tires are hot [driven for several miles (kilometers)], you will see readings 4 to 6 psi (30 to 40 kPa, 0.3 to 0.4 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>) higher than the cold reading. This is normal; do not release air to match the cold pressure.

Tubeless tires have some ability to self-seal if they are punctured. You should look closely for punctures if a tire starts losing pressure.

You should get your own tire pressure gauge and use it whenever you check your tire pressures. This will make it easier for you to tell if a pressure loss is due to a tire problem and not due to a variation between gauges.

## Recommended Tire Pressures

The following chart shows the recommended cold tire pressures for most normal and high-speed driving conditions.

Tire Size	Cold Tire Pressure for Normal Driving
P255/55R18 104H	Front/Rear: 32 psi (220 kPa , 2.2 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> )

The compact spare tire pressure is:  
60 psi (420 kPa , 4.2 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>)

For convenience, the recommended tire sizes and cold tire pressures are on a label on the driver's doorjamb.

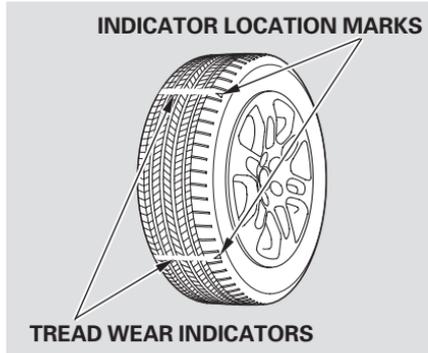
For additional information about your tires, see page [448](#).

## Tire Inspection

Every time you check inflation, you should also examine the tires for damage, foreign objects, and wear.

You should look for:

- Bumps or bulges in the tread or side of the tire. Replace the tire if you find either of these conditions.
- Cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tire. Replace the tire if you can see fabric or cord.
- Excessive tread wear.



Your tires have wear indicators molded into the tread. When the tread wears down, you will see a band 1/2 inch (12.7 mm) wide band across the tread. This shows there is less than 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) of tread left on the tire.

A tire this worn gives very little traction on wet roads. You should replace the tire if you can see three or more tread wear indicators.

## Tire Maintenance

In addition to proper inflation, correct wheel alignment helps to decrease tire wear. If you find a tire is worn unevenly, have your dealer check the wheel alignment.

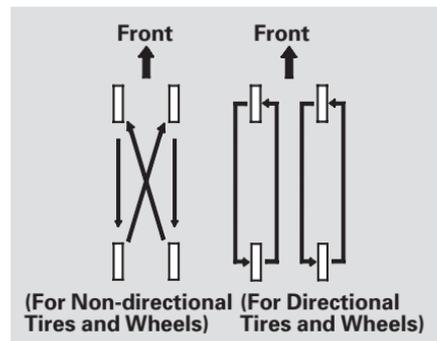
Have your dealer check the tires if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. A tire should always be rebalanced if it is removed from the wheel. When you have new tires installed, make sure they are balanced. This increases riding comfort and tire life. For best results, have the installer perform a dynamic balance.

### NOTICE

*Improper wheel weights can damage your vehicle's aluminum wheels. Use only Acura wheel weights for balancing.*

# Tires

## Tire Rotation



To help increase tire life and distribute wear more evenly, rotate the tires according to the maintenance messages displayed on the multi-information display. Move the tires to the positions shown in the diagram each time they are rotated. If you purchase directional tires, rotate only front-to-back.

## Replacing Tires and Wheels

Replace your tires with radial tires of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tire pressure rating (as shown on the tire's sidewall).

Mixing radial and bias-ply tires on your vehicle can reduce braking ability, traction, and steering accuracy. Using tires of a different size or construction can cause the ABS and vehicle stability assist system (VSA) to work inconsistently.

The ABS works by comparing the speed of the wheels. When replacing tires, use the same size originally supplied with the vehicle. Tire size and construction can affect wheel speed and may cause the system to activate.

It is best to replace all four tires at the same time. If that is not possible or necessary, replace the two front tires or two rear tires as a pair. Replacing just one tire can seriously affect your vehicle's handling.

If you ever replace a wheel, make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels.

Also be sure you use only TPMS specific wheels. If you do not, the tire pressure monitoring system will not work on that tire.

Replacement wheels are available at your Acura dealer.

## **WARNING**

Installing improper tires on your vehicle can affect handling and stability. This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always use the size and type of tires recommended in this owner's manual.

### **Wheel and Tire Specifications**

Wheel:

18 x 8 J

Tires:

P255/55R18 104H

See page [448](#) for information about DOT Tire Quality Grading, and page [450](#) for tire size and labeling information.

### **Winter Driving**

Tires marked “M + S” or “All Season” on the sidewall have an all-weather tread design suitable for most winter driving conditions.

For the best performance in snowy or icy conditions, you should install snow tires or tire chains. They may be required by local laws under certain conditions.

# Tires

---

## Snow Tires

If you mount snow tires on your vehicle, make sure they are radial tires of the same size and load range as the original tires. Mount snow tires on all four wheels. The traction provided by snow tires on dry roads may be lower than your original tires. Check with the tire dealer for maximum speed recommendations.

## Tire Chains

Mount tire chains on your tires when required by driving conditions or local laws. Install them only on the front tires.

Because your vehicle has limited tire clearance, Acura strongly recommends using the chains listed below.

SCC Super Z-6# SZ 435

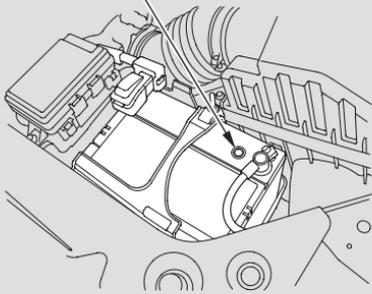
When installing cables, follow the manufacturer's instructions, and mount them as tight as you can. Make sure they are not contacting the brake lines or suspension. Drive slowly with them installed. If you hear them coming into contact with the body or chassis, stop and investigate. Remove them as soon as you begin driving on cleared roads.

## WARNING

Using the wrong chains, or not properly installing chains, can damage the brake lines and cause a crash in which you can be seriously injured or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding the selection and use of tire chains.

### TEST INDICATOR WINDOW



Check the condition of the battery monthly by looking at the test indicator window:

Green — Good condition

White — Liquid level low, replace battery

Black — Charging necessary

Check the terminals for corrosion (a white or yellowish powder). To remove it, cover the terminals with a solution of baking soda and water. It will bubble up and turn brown. When this stops, wash it off with plain water. Dry off the battery with a cloth or paper towel. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent further corrosion.

If additional battery maintenance is needed, see your dealer or a qualified technician.

**WARNING:** Battery posts, terminals, and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds.

**Wash your hands after handling.**

If you need to connect the battery to a charger, disconnect both cables to prevent damaging your vehicle's electrical system. Always disconnect the negative (–) cable first, and reconnect it last.

### **⚠ WARNING**

The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation.

A spark or flame can cause the battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.

Wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do the battery maintenance.

If the radio fuse is removed, the audio system will disable itself. The next time you turn on the radio you will see “ENTER CODE” in the frequency display. Use the preset buttons to enter the digit code (see page 231).

## Vehicle Storage

---

If you need to park your vehicle for an extended period (more than 1 month), there are several things you should do to prepare it for storage. Proper preparation helps prevent deterioration and makes it easier to get your vehicle back on the road. If possible, store your vehicle indoors.

- Fill the fuel tank.
- Change the engine oil and filter.
- Wash and dry the exterior completely.
- Clean the interior. Make sure the carpeting, floor mats, etc., are completely dry.
- Leave the parking brake off. Put the transmission in Park.

- Block the rear wheels.
- If the vehicle is to be stored for a longer period, it should be supported on jackstands so the tires are off the ground.
- Leave one window open slightly (if the vehicle is being stored indoors).
- Disconnect the battery.
- Support the front and rear wiper blade arms with a folded towel or rag so they do not touch the windshield.
- To minimize sticking, apply a silicone spray lubricant to all door and tailgate seals. Also, apply a vehicle body wax to the painted surfaces that mate with the door and tailgate seals.
- Cover the vehicle with a “breathable” cover, one made from a porous material such as cotton. Non-porous materials, such as plastic sheeting, trap moisture, which can damage the paint.
- If possible, periodically run the engine until it reaches full operating temperature (the cooling fans cycle on and off twice). Preferably, do this once a month.

This section covers the more common problems that motorists experience with their vehicles. It gives you information about how to safely evaluate the problem and what to do to correct it. If the problem has stranded you on the side of the road, you may be able to get going again. If not, you will also find instructions on getting your vehicle towed.

Compact Spare Tire.....	418
Changing a Flat Tire .....	419
If Your Engine Won't Start.....	425
Jump Starting .....	426
If the Engine Overheats .....	428
Low Oil Pressure Indicator .....	430
Charging System Indicator.....	430
Malfunction Indicator Lamp .....	431
Brake System Indicator .....	432
Opening the Fuel Fill Door	
Manually .....	433
Emergency Towing .....	433
If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck.....	434
Fuses .....	436
Fuse Locations.....	440

## Compact Spare Tire

Use the compact spare tire as a temporary replacement only. Get your regular tire repaired or replaced, and put it back on your vehicle as soon as you can.

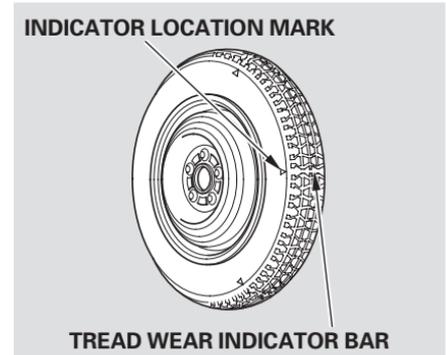
Check the inflation pressure of the compact spare tire every time you check the other tires. It should be inflated to:

60 psi (420 kPa , 4.2 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>)

Follow these precautions:

- Never exceed 50 mph (80 km/h).
- This tire gives a harsher ride and less traction on some road surfaces. Use greater caution while driving.

- Do not mount snow chains on a compact spare.
- Do not use the compact spare tire if you are towing a trailer.
- Do not use your compact spare tire on another vehicle unless it is the same make and model.
- The low tire pressure indicator stays on when you are driving with the compact spare tire. The TPMS indicator may also come on after several miles (kilometers) driving.



Replace the tire when you can see the tread wear indicator bars. The replacement should be the same size and design tire, mounted on the same wheel. The spare tire is not designed to be mounted on a regular wheel, and the spare wheel is not designed for mounting a regular tire.

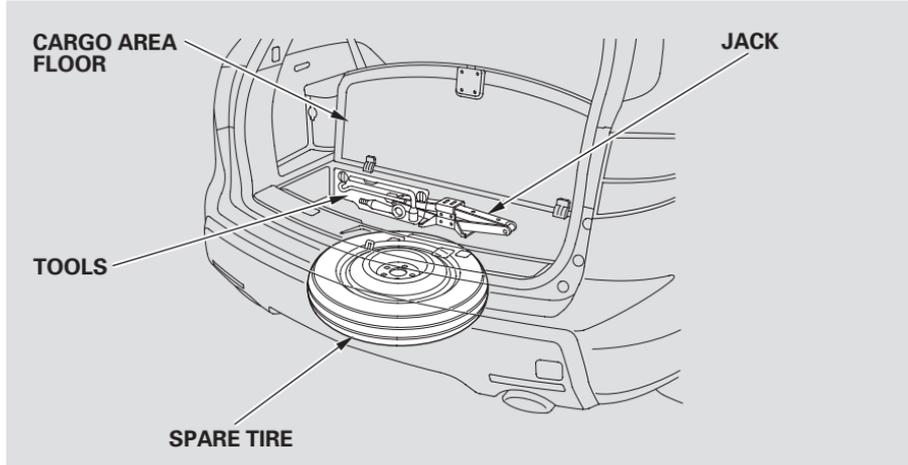
If you have a flat tire while driving, stop in a safe place to change it. Drive slowly along the shoulder until you get to an exit or an area to stop that is far away from the traffic lanes.

### **⚠️ WARNING**

The vehicle can easily roll off the jack, seriously injuring anyone underneath.

Follow the directions for changing a tire exactly, and never get under the vehicle when it is supported only by the jack.

1. Park the vehicle on firm, level, and non-slippery ground. Put the transmission in Park. Apply the parking brake.



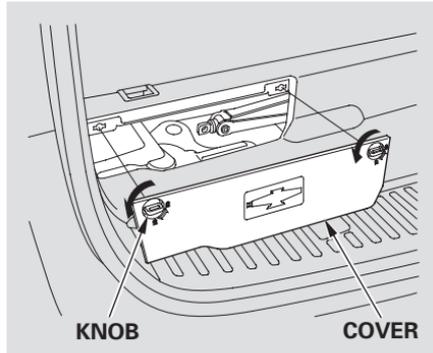
2. Turn on the hazard warning lights, and turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position. Have all passengers get out of the vehicle while you change the tire.

3. Open the tailgate.

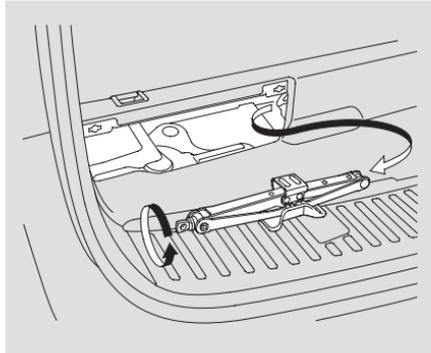
4. Push the rear edge of the handle to raise the handle loop and pull up the loop to raise the cargo area floor.

*CONTINUED*

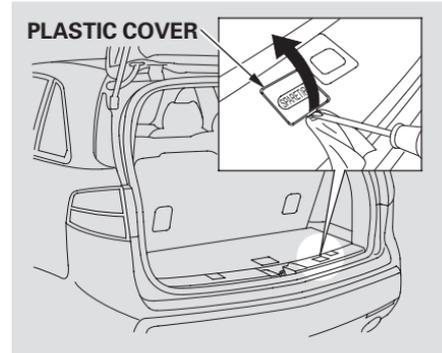
## Changing a Flat Tire



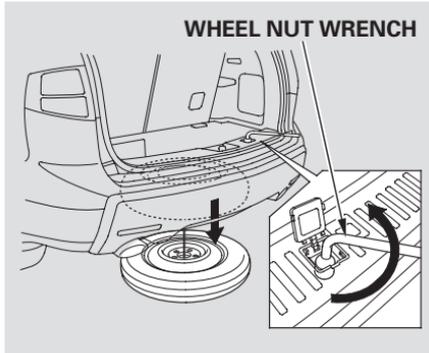
5. The tools and jack are under the cargo area behind a cover on the driver's side. Remove the cover by turning the knobs counterclockwise, then pulling out the cover.



6. Turn the jack's end bracket counterclockwise to loosen it, then remove the jack.



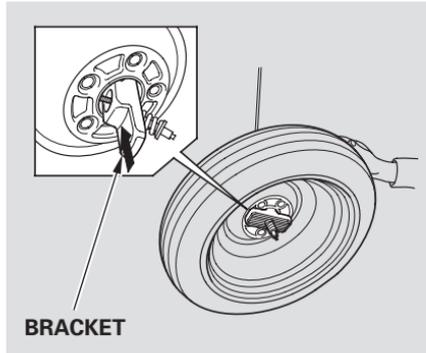
7. The spare tire is stored underneath the rear cargo area. Remove the plastic cover on the cargo area lining to access the shaft for the spare tire hoist.



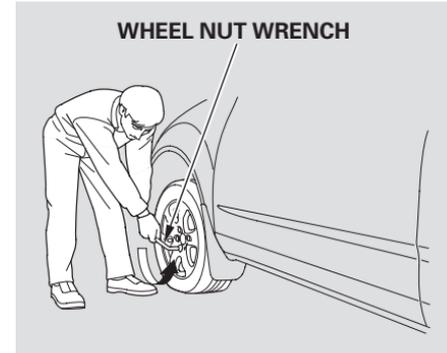
### NOTICE

*The wheel nut wrench supplied with your vehicle is specially adapted to fit the hoist shaft. Do not use any other tool.*

8. Put the wheel nut wrench on the hoist shaft. Turn the wrench counterclockwise to lower the spare tire to the ground.



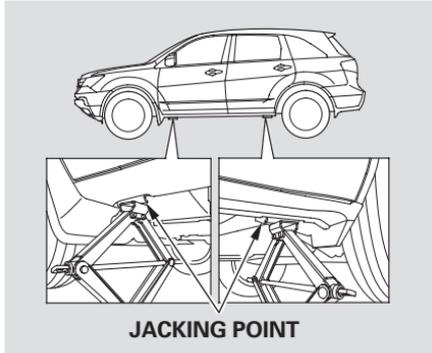
9. Keep turning the wheel nut wrench to create slack in the cable.
10. Remove the bracket from the spare tire.



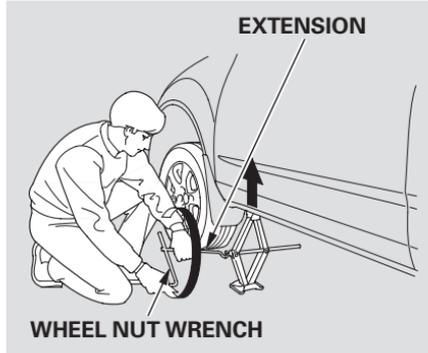
11. Loosen each wheel nut 1/2 turn with the wheel nut wrench.

CONTINUED

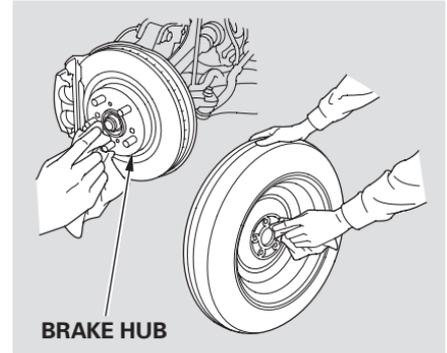
## Changing a Flat Tire



12. Place the jack under the jacking point nearest the tire you need to change. Turn the end bracket clockwise until the top of the jack contacts the jacking point. Make sure the jacking point tab is resting in the jack notch.



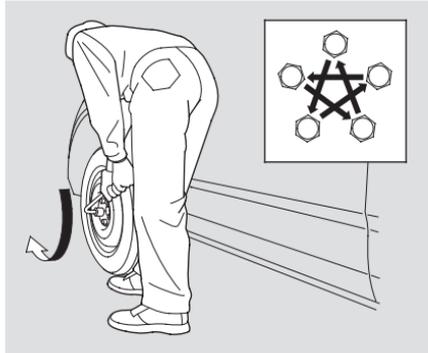
13. Use the extension and the wheel nut wrench as shown to raise the vehicle until the flat tire is off the ground.
14. Remove the wheel nuts, then remove the flat tire.



15. Before mounting the spare tire, wipe any dirt off the mounting surface of the wheel and hub with a clean cloth. Wipe the hub carefully; it may be hot from driving.

## Changing a Flat Tire

- Put on the spare tire. Put the wheel nuts back on finger-tight, then tighten them in a crisscross pattern with the wheel nut wrench until the wheel is firmly against the hub. Do not try to tighten the wheel nuts fully.
- Lower the vehicle to the ground, and remove the jack.

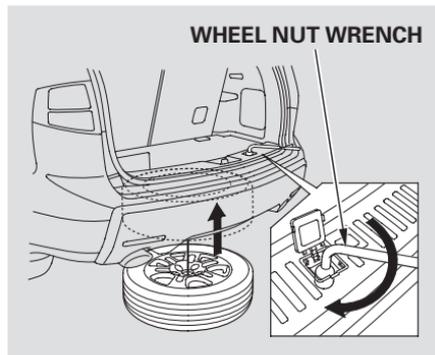


- Tighten the wheel nuts securely in the same crisscross pattern. Have the wheel nut torque checked at the nearest automotive service facility.  
Tighten the wheel nuts to:  
94 lbf·ft (127 N·m , 13 kgf·m)
- Remove the center cap from the flat tire.

- Place the flat tire face up under the hoist.
- Insert the hoist bracket into the center hole of the flat tire.

CONTINUED

## Changing a Flat Tire



22. Slowly turn the wheel nut wrench clockwise to take up the slack of the hoist cable. Make sure the bracket is seated in the center hole of the flat tire.
23. Turn the wheel nut wrench clockwise until the flat tire rests against the underbody of the vehicle and you hear the hoist click.

### NOTICE

*Always raise the spare tire hoist, even if you are not stowing a tire. If the hoist is left down, it will be damaged during driving and need to be replaced.*

24. Store the jack in its holder. Turn the jack's end bracket to lock it in place. Store the tools, and install the cover.
25. Refer to **Changing a Tire with TPMS** (see page 347).

### ⚠ WARNING

Loose items can fly around the interior in a crash and could seriously injure the occupants.

Store the wheel, jack, and tools securely before driving.

Diagnosing why the engine won't start falls into two areas, depending on what you hear when you turn the ignition switch to the START (III) position:

- You hear nothing, or almost nothing. The engine's starter motor does not operate at all, or operates very slowly.
- You can hear the starter motor operating normally, or the starter motor sounds like it is spinning faster than normal, but the engine does not start up and run.

### **Nothing Happens or the Starter Motor Operates Very Slowly**

When you turn the ignition switch to the START (III) position, you do not hear the normal noise of the engine trying to start. You may hear a clicking sound, a series of clicks, or nothing at all.

Check these things:

- Check the transmission interlock. The transmission must be in Park or neutral or the starter will not operate.
- Turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position. Turn on the headlights, and check their brightness. If the headlights are very dim or do not come on at all, the battery is discharged. See **Jump Starting** on page 426 .
- Turn the ignition switch to the START (III) position. If the headlights do not dim, check the condition of the fuses. If the fuses are OK, there is probably something wrong with the electrical circuit for the ignition switch or starter motor. You will need a qualified technician to determine the problem. See **Emergency Towing** on page 433 .

If the headlights dim noticeably or go out when you try to start the engine, either the battery is discharged or the connections are corroded. Check the condition of the battery and terminal connections (see page 415 ). You can then try jump starting the vehicle from a booster battery (see page 426 ).

### **The Starter Operates Normally**

In this case, the starter motor's speed sounds normal, or even faster than normal, when you turn the ignition switch to the START (III) position, but the engine does not run.

- Are you using a properly coded key? An improperly coded key will cause the immobilizer system indicator in the dash panel to blink rapidly (see page 69 ).

*CONTINUED*

## If the Engine Won't Start, Jump Starting

---

- Are you using the proper starting procedure? Refer to **Starting the Engine** on page 331 .
- Do you have fuel? Check the fuel gauge; the warning indicator may not be working.
- There may be an electrical problem, such as no power to the fuel pump. Check all the fuses (see page 436 ).

If you find nothing wrong, you will need a qualified technician to find the problem. See **Emergency Towing** on page 433 .

### Jump Starting

Although this seems like a simple procedure, you should take several precautions.

#### **WARNING**

A battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

You cannot start your vehicle by pushing or pulling it.

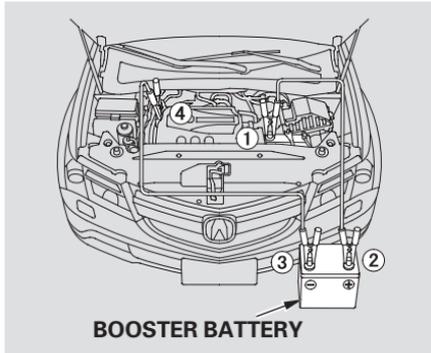
### *To Jump Start Your Vehicle:*

1. Open the hood, and check the physical condition of the battery. In very cold weather, check the condition of the electrolyte. If it seems slushy or frozen, do not try jump starting until it thaws.

#### **NOTICE**

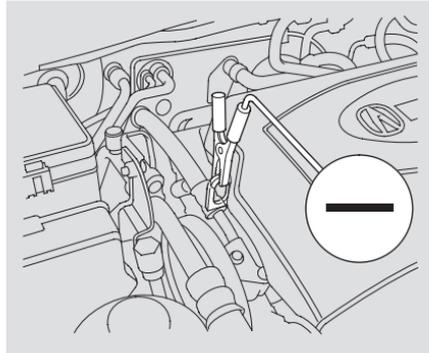
*If a battery sits in extreme cold, the electrolyte inside can freeze. Attempting to jump start with a frozen battery can cause it to rupture.*

2. Turn off all the electrical accessories: heater, A/C, climate control, audio system, lights, etc. Put the transmission in neutral or Park, and set the parking brake.



The numbers in the illustration show you the order to connect the jumper cables.

3. Connect one jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal on your vehicle's battery. Connect the other end to the positive (+) terminal on the booster battery.



4. Connect the second jumper cable to the negative (-) terminal on the booster battery. Connect the other end to the engine hanger as shown. Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part of the engine.

5. If the booster battery is in another vehicle, have an assistant start that vehicle and run it at a fast idle.
6. Start your vehicle. If the starter motor still operates slowly, check that the jumper cables have good metal-to-metal contact.
7. Once the vehicle is running, disconnect the negative cable from the engine hanger on your vehicle, then from the booster battery. Disconnect the positive cable from your vehicle, then from the booster battery.

Keep the ends of the jumper cables away from each other and any metal on the vehicle until everything is disconnected. Otherwise, you may cause an electrical short.

## If the Engine Overheats

---

The pointer of your vehicle's temperature gauge should stay in the midrange. If it climbs to the red mark, you should determine the reason.

If the vehicle overheats, you should take immediate action. The only indication may be the temperature gauge climbing to or above the red mark. Or you may see steam or spray coming from under the hood.

### NOTICE

*Driving with the temperature gauge pointer at the red mark can cause serious damage to the engine.*

### ⚠ WARNING

Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.

Do not open the hood if steam is coming out.

1. Safely pull to the side of the road. Put the transmission in Park, and set the parking brake. Turn off all accessories, and turn on the hazard warning lights.
2. If you see steam and/or spray coming from under the hood, turn off the engine. Wait until you see no more signs of steam or spray, then open the hood.
3. If you do not see steam or spray, leave the engine running, and watch the temperature gauge. If the high heat is due to overloading, the engine should start to cool down almost immediately. If it does, wait until the temperature gauge comes down to the midpoint, then continue driving.

4. If the temperature gauge stays at the red mark, turn off the engine.
5. Look for any obvious coolant leaks, such as a split radiator hose. Everything is still extremely hot, so use caution. If you find a leak, it must be repaired before you continue driving (see **Emergency Towing** on page 433).
6. If you do not find an obvious leak, check the coolant level in the radiator reserve tank. Add coolant if the level is below the MIN mark.
7. If there was no coolant in the reserve tank, you may need to add coolant to the radiator. Let the engine cool down until the pointer reaches the middle of the temperature gauge, or lower, before checking the radiator.

### ⚠ WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

8. Using gloves or a large heavy cloth, turn the radiator cap counterclockwise, without pushing down, to the first stop. After the pressure releases, push down on the cap, and turn it until it comes off.
9. Start the engine and set the temperature control dial to maximum (climate control to FULL AUTO at 90°F/32°C). Add coolant to the radiator up to the base of the filler neck. If you do not have the proper coolant mixture available, you can add plain water. Remember to have the cooling system drained and refilled with the proper mixture as soon as you can.
10. Put the radiator cap back on tightly. Run the engine, and check the temperature gauge. If it goes back to the red mark, the engine needs repair (see **Emergency Towing** on page 433).
11. If the temperature stays normal, check the coolant level in the radiator reserve tank. If it has gone down, add coolant to the MAX mark. Put the cap back on tightly.

## Low Oil Pressure Indicator, Charging System Indicator

---

### Low Oil Pressure Indicator



This indicator should never come on when the engine is running. If it starts flashing or stays on, the oil pressure has dropped very low or lost pressure. Serious engine damage is possible, and you should take immediate action.

You will also see a “CHECK ENGINE OIL LEVEL” message on the multi-information display when this indicator comes on.

#### NOTICE

*Running the engine with low oil pressure can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately. Turn off the engine as soon as you can safely get the vehicle stopped.*

1. Safely pull off the road, and shut off the engine. Turn on the hazard warning indicators.
2. Let the vehicle sit for a minute. Open the hood, and check the oil level (see page [320](#)). An engine very low on oil can lose pressure during cornering and other driving maneuvers.
3. If necessary, add oil to bring the level back to the full mark on the dipstick (see page [387](#)).
4. Start the engine, and watch the oil pressure indicator. If it does not go out within 10 seconds, turn off the engine. There is a mechanical problem that needs to be repaired before you can continue driving (see **Emergency Towing** on page [433](#)).

### Charging System Indicator



If the charging system indicator comes on brightly when the engine is running, the battery is not being charged.

You will also see a “CHECK CHARGING SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display (see page [81](#)).

Immediately turn off all electrical accessories. Try not to use other electrically operated controls such as the power windows. Keep the engine running; starting the engine will discharge the battery rapidly.

Go to a service station or garage where you can get technical assistance.

### Malfunction Indicator Lamp



If this indicator comes on while driving, it means one of the engine's emissions control systems may have a problem. Even though you may feel no difference in your vehicle's performance, it can reduce your fuel economy and cause increased emissions. Continued operation may cause serious damage.

If you have recently refueled your vehicle, the indicator coming on could be due to a loose or missing fuel fill cap. Tighten the cap until it clicks at least once. Tightening the cap will not turn the indicator off immediately; it can take several days of normal driving.

If the indicator comes on repeatedly, even though it may turn off as you continue driving, have the vehicle checked by your dealer as soon as possible.

### NOTICE

*If you keep driving with the malfunction indicator lamp on, you can damage your vehicle's emissions controls and engine. Those repairs may not be covered by your vehicle's warranties.*

You will also see a "CHECK EMISSION SYSTEM" message on the multi-information display (see page 81 ).

### Readiness Code

Your vehicle has certain "readiness codes" that are part of the on-board diagnostics for the emissions systems. In some states, part of the emissions testing is to make sure these codes are set. If they are not set, the test cannot be completed.

If your vehicle's battery has been disconnected or gone dead, these codes are erased. It can take several days of driving under various conditions to set the codes again.

To check if they are set, turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, without starting the engine. The malfunction indicator lamp will come on for 20 seconds. If it then goes off, the readiness codes are set. If it blinks five times, the readiness codes are not set. If possible, do not take your vehicle for a state emissions test until the readiness codes are set. Refer to **State Emissions Testing** for more information (see page 456 ).

# Brake System Indicator

---

## Brake System Indicator

### U.S.

**BRAKE**

The brake system indicator normally comes on when you turn the ignition switch to the ON (II) position, and as a reminder to check the parking brake. It will stay on if you do not fully release the parking brake.

### Canada



However, if the brake pedal does not feel normal, you should take immediate action. A problem in one part of the system's dual circuit design will still give you braking at two wheels. You will feel the brake pedal go down much farther before the vehicle begins to slow down, and you will have to press harder on the pedal.

If the brake system indicator comes on while driving, the brake fluid level is probably low. Press lightly on the brake pedal to see if it feels normal. If it does, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop at a service station (see page [395](#)).

You will also see a “LOW BRAKE FLUID” message on the multi-information display (see page [81](#)).

If the fluid level is low, take the vehicle to your dealer and have the brake system inspected for leaks or worn brake pads.

However, if the brake pedal does not feel normal, you should take immediate action. A problem in one part of the system's dual circuit design will still give you braking at two wheels. You will feel the brake pedal go down much farther before the vehicle begins to slow down, and you will have to press harder on the pedal.

You will also see a “CHECK BRAKE SYSTEM” message on the multi-information display (see page [81](#)).

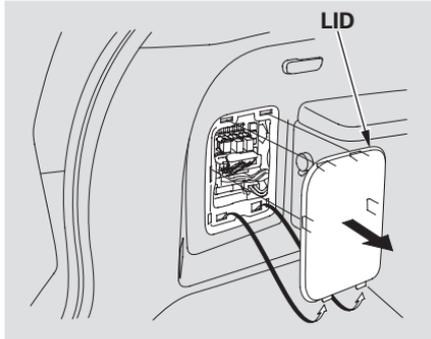
Slow down by shifting to a lower gear, and pull to the side of the road when it is safe. Because of the long distance needed to stop, it is hazardous to drive the vehicle. You should have it towed, and repaired as soon as possible.

If you must drive the vehicle a short distance in this condition, drive slowly and carefully.

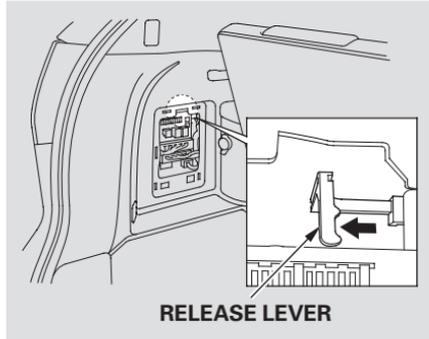
If the ABS indicator and the VSA system indicator come on with the brake system indicator, have your vehicle inspected by your dealer immediately.

## Opening the Fuel Fill Door Manually, Emergency Towing

### Opening the Fuel Fill Door Manually



If the fuel fill door release button does not work, use the release lever inside the rear fuse box lid in the cargo area.



To open the fuel fill door, pull the release lever rearward.

### Emergency Towing

If your vehicle needs to be towed, call a professional towing service or organization. Never tow your vehicle with just a rope or chain. It is very dangerous.

**The only way you can safely tow your vehicle is with flat-bed equipment.** The operator will load your vehicle on the back of a truck. Any other method of towing will damage the drive system. When you contact the towing agency, inform them a flat-bed is required.

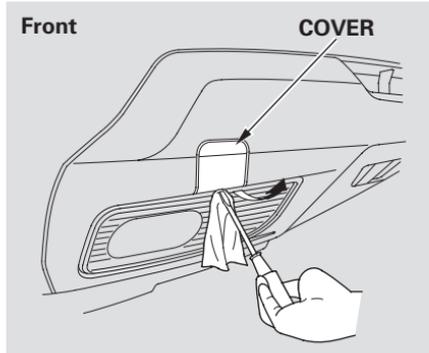
### NOTICE

*Towing with only two tires on the ground will damage parts of the all-wheel-drive system. Your vehicle should be transported on a flat-bed truck or trailer.*

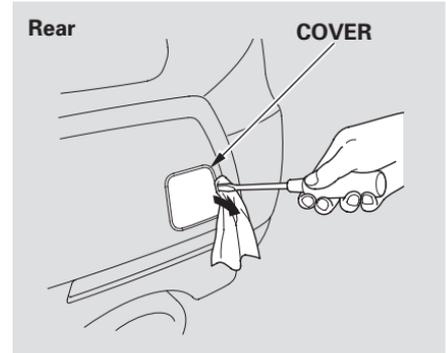
## If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck

If your vehicle gets stuck in sand, mud, or snow, call a towing service to pull it out (see the previous page).

For very short distances, such as freeing the vehicle, you can use the detachable towing hook that mounts on the anchors in the front and rear bumpers.

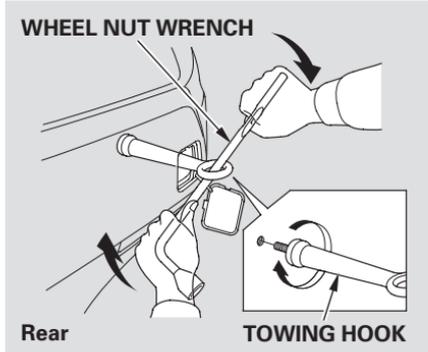
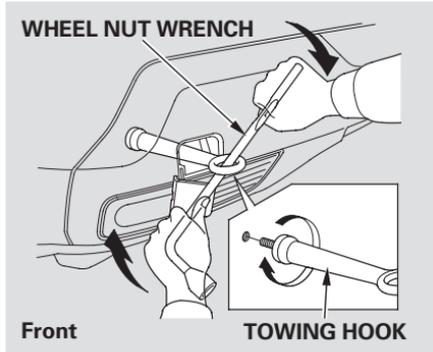


1. Remove the cover, put cloth on the edge of the cover and carefully pry with a small flat-tipped screwdriver or a metal fingernail file.



The cover is attached to the bumper with a tether.

## If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck

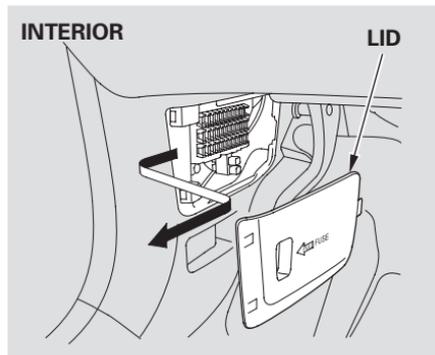


### NOTICE

*To avoid damage to your vehicle, use the towing hook for straight, flat ground towing only. Do not tow at an angle. The tow hook should not be used to tow the vehicle onto a flat bed. Do not use it as a tie down.*

2. Remove the towing hook and wheel nut wrench placed behind a cover under the cargo area.
3. Screw the towing hook into the hole, and tighten it with the wheel nut wrench.

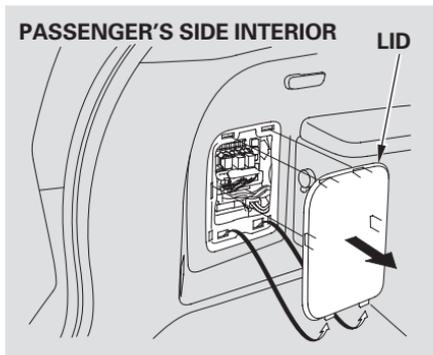
# Fuses



The vehicle's fuses are located in four fuse boxes.

The interior fuse box is underneath the dashboard on the driver's side.

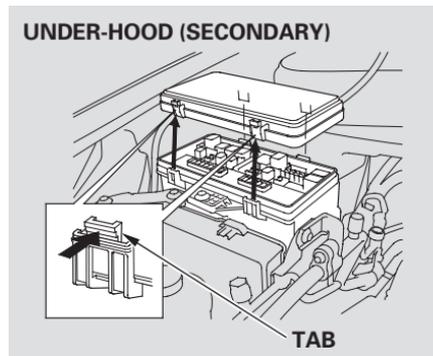
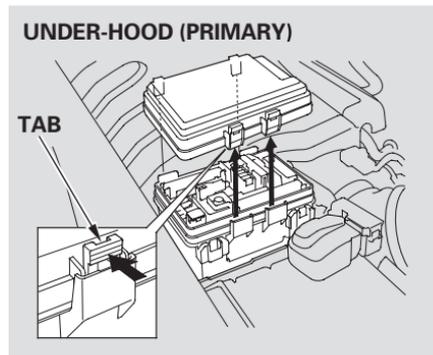
To remove the fuse box lid, put your finger in the notch on the lid, pull it toward you, and take it out of its hinges.



The rear fuse box is located at the left side of cargo area.

The primary under-hood fuse box is located on the driver's side. The secondary fuse box is next to the battery.

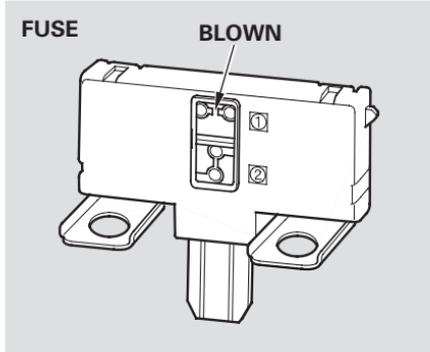
To open it, push the tabs as shown.



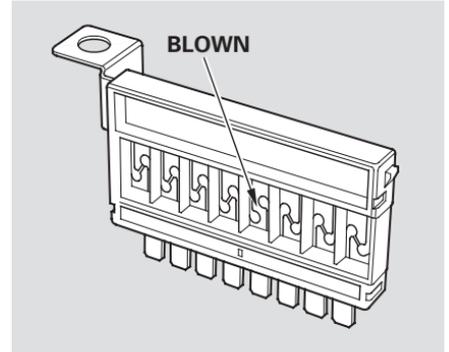
## Checking and Replacing Fuses

If something electrical in your vehicle stops working, the first thing you should check for is a blown fuse. Determine from the chart on pages 440, 441, and 442, or the diagram on the fuse box lid, which fuse or fuses control that device. Check those fuses first, but check all the fuses before deciding that a blown fuse is the cause. Replace any blown fuses, and check if the device works.

1. Turn the ignition switch to the LOCK (0) position. Make sure the headlights and all other accessories are off.
2. Remove the cover from the fuse box.

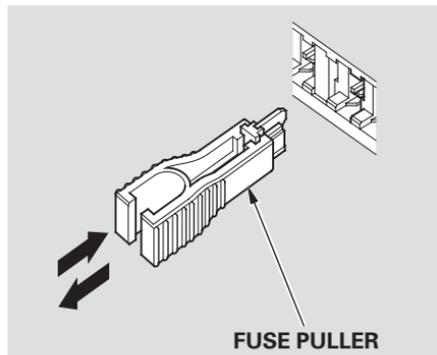


3. Check each of the large fuses in the primary under-hood fuse box by looking through the top at the wire inside. Removing these fuses requires a Phillips-head screwdriver.

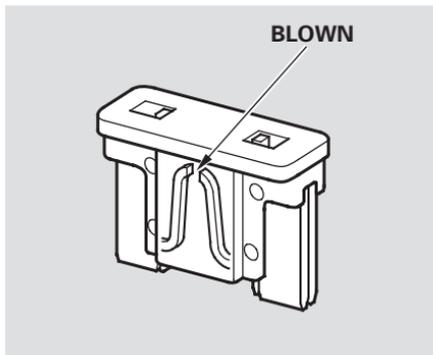


## Fuses

---



4. Check the smaller fuses in the under-hood fuse boxes and rear fuse box, and all the fuses in the interior fuse box by pulling out each one with the fuse puller provided in the primary under-hood fuse box.



5. Look for a burned wire inside the fuse. If it is burned out, replace it with one of the spare fuses of the same rating or lower.

If you cannot drive the vehicle without fixing the problem, and you do not have a spare fuse, take a fuse of the same rating or a lower rating from one of the other circuits. Make sure you can do without that circuit temporarily (such as the accessory power socket or radio).

If you replace the blown fuse with a spare fuse that has a lower rating, it might blow out again. This does not indicate anything wrong. Replace the fuse with one of the correct rating as soon as you can.

## NOTICE

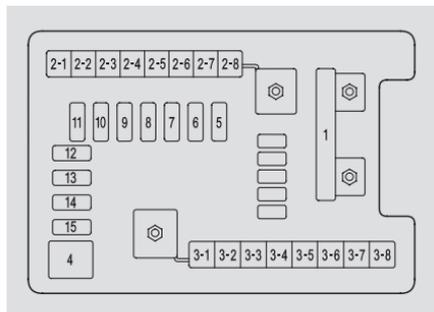
*Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system. If you do not have a replacement fuse with the proper rating for the circuit, install one with a lower rating.*

6. If the replacement fuse of the same rating blows in a short time, there is probably a serious electrical problem with your vehicle. Leave the blown fuse in that circuit, and have your vehicle checked by a qualified technician.

If the radio fuse is removed, the audio system will disable itself. The next time you turn on the radio you will see “ENTER CODE” in the frequency display. Use the preset buttons to enter the digit code (see page [231](#) ).

## Fuse Locations

### PRIMARY UNDER-HOOD FUSE BOX

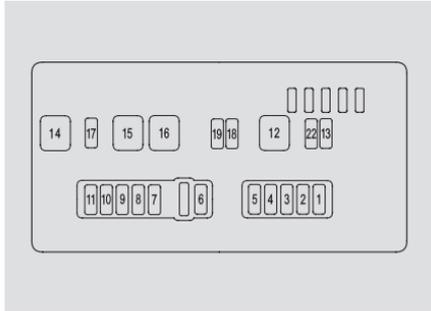


No.	Amps.	Circuits Protected
1	120 A	Main fuse
	—	Not Used
2-1	—	Not Used
2-2	—	Not Used
2-3	30 A	Rear Blower Motor
2-4	40 A	ABS VSA
2-5	40 A	Trailer Main
2-6	40 A	Power Seats, Driver's Position Memory System, Subwoofer
2-7	40 A	Front Heated Seat, TPMS, Moonroof, Driver's Lumber Support
2-8	—	Not Used
3-1	60 A	Fog Lights, Front Blower Motor
3-2	40 A	Headlights, Daytime Running Lights
3-3	60 A	Cooling Fan, Condenser Fan, MG Clutch, Headlight Washer*
3-4	50 A	Ignition Switch Main

\*: Canadian model

No.	Amps.	Circuits Protected
3-5	50 A	Power Window
3-6	60 A	SH-AWD, Power Tailgate Open/Closer, Rear ACC Socket, Cargo Area Light, Rear Defroster
3-7	30 A	ECU (PCM)
3-8	—	Not Used
4	40 A	Audio, Door Lock, Interior Lights
5	—	Not Used
6	—	Not Used
7	30 A	Active Damper Control Unit
8	30 A	Audio Amplifier
9	7.5 A	Rear Entertainment System
10	15 A	Hazard
11	15 A	Horn, Stop
12	20 A	ABS VSA
13	20 A	Trailer (Brake)
14	20 A	Rear Heated Seat
15	20 A	A/C Inverter

## SECONDARY UNDER-HOOD FUSE BOX

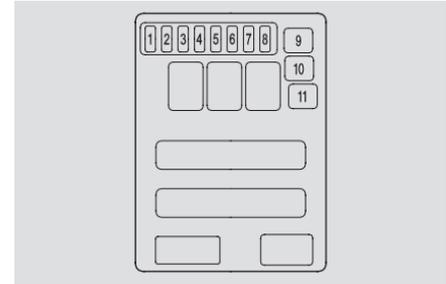


No.	Amps.	Circuits Protected
1	10 A	Left Daytime Running Light
2	10 A	Right Daytime Running Light
3	10 A	Left Headlight High
4	10 A	Right Headlight High

No.	Amps.	Circuits Protected
5	7.5 A	Small Lights (Exterior)
6	30 A	Headlight Low Main
7	7.5 A	Cooling Fan Timer
8	15 A	IGP
9	15 A	IG Coil
10	15 A	DBW
11	15 A	AFHT
12	40 A	Front Blower Motor
13	20 A	Fog lights
14	30 A	Headlight Washer*
15	30 A	Condenser Fan
16	30 A	Cooling Fan
17	7.5 A	MG Clutch
18	15 A	Left Headlight Low
19	15 A	Right Headlight Low
22	7.5 A	Small Lights (Interior)

\*: Canadian model

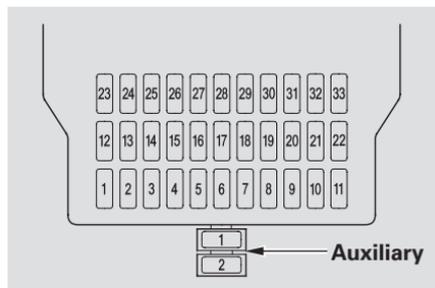
## REAR FUSE BOX



No.	Amps.	Circuits Protected
1	—	Not Used
2	—	Not Used
3	—	Not Used
4	—	Not Used
5	10 A	Rear ACC Socket
6	20 A	Power Tailgate
7	—	Not Used
8	10 A	Cargo Area Light
9	30 A	SH-AWD
10	30 A	Rear Defroster
11	40 A	Power Tailgate

# Fuse Locations

## INTERIOR FUSE BOX



No.	Amps.	Circuits Protected
1	7.5 A	TPMS
2	10 A	Driver's Lumber Support Motor
3	10 A	Moonroof
4	20 A	Front Heated Seats
5	10 A	Audio

No.	Amps.	Circuits Protected
6	7.5 A	Interior Light
7	10 A	Interior Light, Moonroof
8	20 A	Door Lock
9	15 A	ACC Socket
10	15 A	IG Coil
11	30 A	Windshield Wiper
12	10 A	Subwoofer
13	20 A	Passenger's Power Recline
14	20 A	Driver's Power Slide
15	20 A	Telescope Steering Wheel
16	20 A	Driver's Power Recline
17	20 A	Passenger's Power Slide
18	10 A	Alternator
19	20 A	Fuel Pump
20	7.5 A	SH-AWD, Active Damper Control Unit
21	7.5 A	Gauges

No.	Amps.	Circuits Protected
22	10 A	SRS
23	—	Not Used
24	20 A	Left Rear Power Window
25	20 A	Right Rear Power Window
26	30 A	Passenger's Power Window
27	30 A	Driver's Power Window
28	20 A	Tilt Steering Wheel
29	10 A	ABS VSA
30	10 A	A/C
31	15 A	Headlight Auto Leveling, Rear Wiper, Windshield/ Rear Washer
32	10 A	ACC
33	—	Not Used

### Auxiliary

No.	Amps.	Circuits Protected
1	7.5 A	Starter DIAG
2	7.5 A	STS

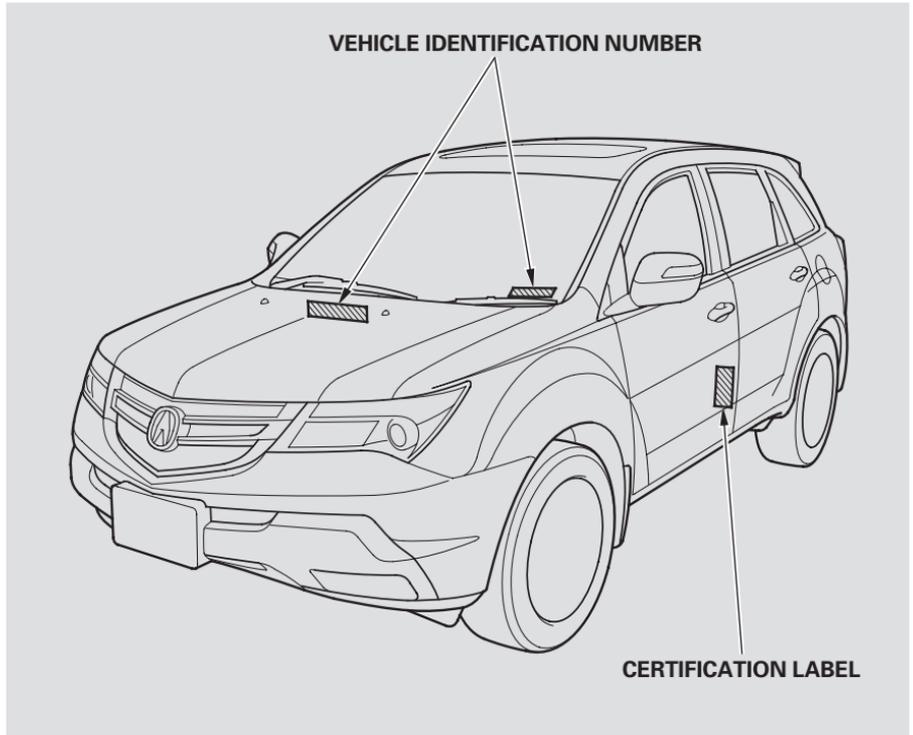
The diagrams in this section give you the dimensions and capacities of your vehicle and the locations of the identification numbers. It also includes information you should know about your vehicle's tires and emissions control systems.

Identification Numbers.....	444	Emissions Controls.....	453
Specifications .....	446	The Clean Air Act.....	453
DOT Tire Quality Grading		Crankcase Emissions Control	
(U.S. Vehicles) .....	448	System.....	453
Uniform Tire Quality		Evaporative Emissions Control	
Grading .....	448	System.....	453
Treadwear .....	448	Onboard Refueling Vapor	
Traction.....	448	Recovery .....	453
Temperature .....	449	Exhaust Emissions Controls ...	454
Tire Labeling.....	450	PGM-FI System .....	454
Tire Pressure Monitoring System		Ignition Timing Control	
(TPMS) .....	451	System.....	454
		Exhaust Gas Recirculation	
		(EGR) System.....	454
		Three Way Catalytic	
		Converter.....	454
		Replacement Parts.....	454
		Three Way Catalytic Converter..	455
		State Emissions Testing .....	456

## Identification Numbers

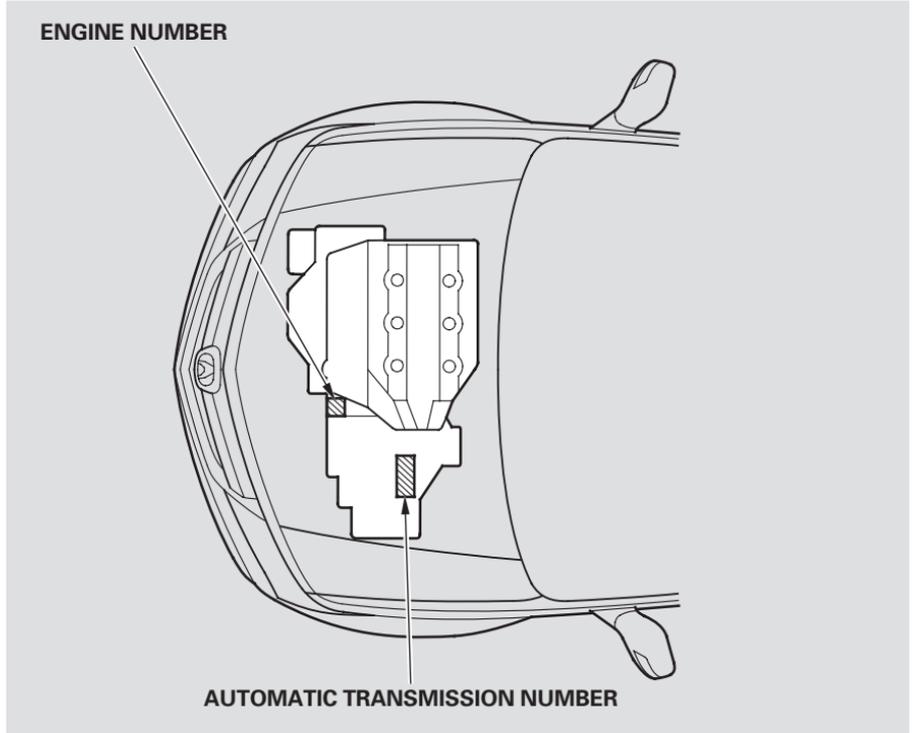
Your vehicle has several identifying numbers located in various places.

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the 17-digit number your dealer uses to register your vehicle for warranty purposes. It is also necessary for licensing and insuring your vehicle. The easiest place to find the VIN is on a plate fastened to the top of the dashboard. You can see it by looking through the windshield on the driver's side. It is also on the certification label attached to the driver's doorjamb, and is stamped on the engine compartment bulkhead. The VIN is also provided in bar code on the certification label.



The engine number is stamped into the engine block. It is on the front.

The transmission number is on a label on top of the transmission.



# Specifications

## Dimensions

Length	190.7 in (4,844 mm)
Width	77.0 in (1,955 mm)
Height	68.2 in (1,733 mm)
Wheelbase	108.3 in (2,750 mm)
Track	67.7 in (1,720 mm)
Front	
Rear	67.5 in (1,715 mm)

## Weights

Gross vehicle weight rating	See the tire information label attached to the driver's doorjamb.
Gross combined weight* <sup>1</sup> rating (GCWR)	10,053 lbs (4,560 kg)

\* 1 : The GCWR must be reduced 2 percent for every 1,000 feet (305 meters) of elevation.

## Air Conditioning

Refrigerant type	HFC-134a (R-134a)
Charge quantity	21.2 – 22.9 oz (600 – 650 g)
Lubricant type	ND-OIL8

## Capacities

Fuel tank		Approx. 21.00 US gal (79.5 ℓ)
Engine coolant	Change* <sup>1</sup>	1.93 US gal (7.3 ℓ)
	Total	2.43 US gal (9.2 ℓ)
Engine oil	Change* <sup>2</sup>	
	Including filter	4.5 US qt (4.3 ℓ)
	Without filter	4.2 US qt (4.0 ℓ)
	Total	5.3 US qt (5.0 ℓ)
Automatic transmission fluid	Change	3.0 US qt (2.8 ℓ)
	Total	8.6 US qt (8.1 ℓ)
Rear differential fluid	Change	2.6 US qt (2.5 ℓ)
	Total	2.9 US qt (2.7 ℓ)
Transfer assembly fluid	Change	0.4 US qt (0.4 ℓ)
	Total	0.4 US qt (0.4 ℓ)
Windshield washer reservoir	U.S. vehicles	4.2 US qt (4.0 ℓ)
	Canadian vehicles	6.7 US qt (6.3 ℓ)

\* 1 : Including the coolant in the reserve tank and that remaining in the engine

Reserve tank capacity:  
0.16 US gal (0.6 ℓ)

\* 2 : Excluding the oil remaining in the engine

## Lights

Headlights	High	12 V — 60 W (HB3)
	Low*	12 V — 35 W (D2S)
Daytime running light		12 V — 60 W (HB3)
Front side marker lights		12 V — 3 CP
Front turn signal lights		12 V — 21 W
Parking lights		12 V — 3 CP
Fog light		12 V — 55 W (H11)
Front foot lights		12 V — 3.4 W
Rear turn signal lights		12 V — 21 W
Rear side marker light		12 V — 3 CP
Backup lights		12 V — 18 W
License plate lights		12 V — 3 CP
Individual map lights	Front	12 V — 5 W
	Rear	12 V — 5 W
Cargo area light		12 V — 8 W
Tailgate light		12 V — 5 W
Vanity mirror light		12 V — 2 W
Door light		12 V — 3.4 W

- \* : The low beam headlights are high voltage discharged type.  
Replacement of a low beam headlight bulb should be performed by your dealer.

## Battery

Capacity	12 V — 65 AH/5 HR
	12 V — 76 AH/20 HR

## Fuses

Interior	See page 442 or the fuse label attached to the inside of the fuse box lid.
Rear	See page 441 or the fuse label attached to the inside of the fuse box lid.
Under-hood	See page 440 and 441 or the fuse box cover.

## Engine

Type	Water cooled 4-stroke SOHC VTEC V6 gasoline engine
Bore x Stroke	3.54 x 3.78 in (90.0 x 96.0 mm)
Displacement	223.5 cu-in (3,664 cm <sup>3</sup> )
Compression ratio	11.0 : 1
Spark plugs	DENSO: SKJ20DR-M11 NGK: IZFR6K-11

## Alignment

Toe-in	Front	0.00 in (0.0 mm)
	Rear	IN 0.08 in (2.0 mm)
Camber	Front	—0°30'
	Rear	—0°30'
Caster	Front	4°12'

## Tires

Size	Front/Rear	P255/55R18 104H
	Spare	T165/80D17 104M
Pressure	Front/Rear	32 psi (220 kPa , 2.2 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> )
	Spare	60 psi (420 kPa , 4.2 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> )

## DOT Tire Quality Grading (U.S. Vehicles)

---

The tires on your vehicle meet all U.S. Federal Safety Requirements. All tires are also graded for treadwear, traction, and temperature performance according to Department of Transportation (DOT) standards. The following explains these gradings.

### **Uniform Tire Quality Grading**

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire sidewall between the tread shoulder and the maximum section width. For example:

**Treadwear 200**

**Traction AA**

**Temperature A**

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

### **Treadwear**

The treadwear grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course. For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one-half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100. The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices, and differences in road characteristics and climate.

### **Traction – AA, A, B, C**

The traction grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B, and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance.

**Warning:** The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning, or peak traction characteristics.

### **Temperature – A, B, C**

The temperature grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel. Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law.

Warning: The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure.

## Tire Labeling

---

The tires that came on your vehicle have a number of markings. Those you should be aware of are described below.

### ***Tire Size***

Whenever tires are replaced, they should be replaced with tires of the same size. The following is an example of tire size with an explanation of what each component means.

P255/55R18 104H

P — Vehicle type (P indicates passenger vehicle).

255 — Tire width in millimeters.

55 — Aspect ratio (the tire's section height as a percentage of its width).

R — Tire construction code (R indicates radial).

18 — Rim diameter in inches.

104 — Load index (a numerical code associated with the maximum load the tire can carry).

H — Speed symbol (an alphabetical code indicating the maximum speed rating).

### ***Tire Identification Number***

The tire identification number (TIN) is a group of numbers and letters that look like the following example TIN. TIN is located on the sidewall of the tire.

DOT B97R FW6X 2202

DOT — This indicates that the tire meets all requirements of the U.S. Department of Transportation.

B97R — Manufacturer's identification mark.

FW6X — Tire type code.

2202 — Date of manufacture.

### ***Maximum Tire Pressure***

Max Press — The maximum air pressure the tire can hold.

### ***Maximum Tire Load***

Max Load — The maximum load the tire can carry at maximum air pressure.

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) – Required Federal Explanation

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label.

(If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tire inflation pressure for those tires.)

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tire pressure telltale



when one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated.

Accordingly, when the low tire pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure.

Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tire maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tire pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tire pressure telltale.

*CONTINUED*

## Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) – Required Federal Explanation

---

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly. The TPMS malfunction indicator is provided by a separate telltale, which displays the symbol “TPMS” when illuminated.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated,

**TPMS**

the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended.

TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tires or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly.

Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tires and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

The burning of gasoline in your vehicle's engine produces several by-products. Some of these are carbon monoxide (CO), oxides of nitrogen (NO<sub>x</sub>), and hydrocarbons (HC). Gasoline evaporating from the tank also produces hydrocarbons. Controlling the production of NO<sub>x</sub>, CO, and HC is important to the environment. Under certain conditions of sunlight and climate, NO<sub>x</sub> and HC react to form photochemical "smog." Carbon monoxide does not contribute to smog creation, but it is a poisonous gas.

### **The Clean Air Act**

The United States Clean Air Act\* sets standards for automobile emissions. It also requires that automobile manufacturers explain to owners how their emissions controls work and what to do to maintain them. This section summarizes how the emissions controls work. Scheduled maintenance is on page 382.

\* In Canada, Acura vehicles comply with the Canadian emission requirements, as specified in an agreement with Environment Canada, at the time they are manufactured.

### **Crankcase Emissions Control System**

Your vehicle has a positive crankcase ventilation system. This keeps gasses that build up in the engine's crankcase from going into the atmosphere. The positive

crankcase ventilation valve routes them from the crankcase back to the intake manifold. They are then drawn into the engine and burned.

### **Evaporative Emissions Control System**

As gasoline evaporates in the fuel tank, an evaporative emissions control canister filled with charcoal adsorbs the vapor. It is stored in this canister while the engine is off. After the engine is started and warmed up, the vapor is drawn into the engine and burned during driving.

### **Onboard Refueling Vapor Recovery**

The onboard refueling vapor recovery (ORVR) system captures the fuel vapors during refueling. The vapors are adsorbed in a canister filled with activated carbon. While driving, the fuel vapors are drawn into the engine and burned off.

## Emissions Controls

---

### **Exhaust Emissions Controls**

The exhaust emissions controls include four systems: PGM-FI, ignition timing control, exhaust gas recirculation, and three way catalytic converter. These four systems work together to control the engine's combustion and minimize the amount of HC, CO, and NOx that come out the tailpipe. The exhaust emissions control systems are separate from the crankcase and evaporative emissions control systems.

### ***PGM-FI System***

The PGM-FI system uses sequential multiport fuel injection. It has three subsystems: air intake, engine control, and fuel control. The powertrain control module (PCM) uses various sensors to determine how much air is going into the engine. It then controls how much fuel to inject under all operating conditions.

### ***Ignition Timing Control System***

This system constantly adjusts the ignition timing, reducing the amount of HC, CO, and NOx produced.

### ***Exhaust Gas Recirculation (EGR) System***

The exhaust gas recirculation (EGR) system takes some of the exhaust gas and routes it back into the intake manifold. Adding exhaust gas to the air/fuel mixture reduces the amount of NOx produced when the fuel is burned.

### ***Three Way Catalytic Converter***

The three way catalytic converter is in the exhaust system. Through chemical reactions, it converts HC, CO, and NOx in the engine's exhaust to carbon dioxide (CO<sub>2</sub>), nitrogen (N<sub>2</sub>), and water vapor.

### **Replacement Parts**

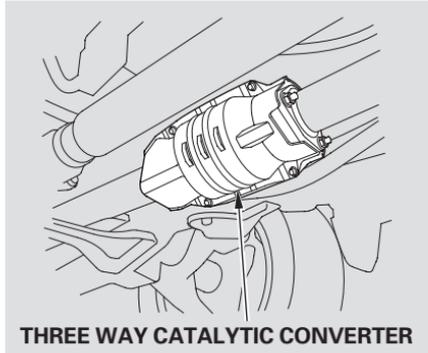
The emissions control systems are designed and certified to work together in reducing emissions to levels that comply with the Clean Air Act. To make sure the emissions remain low, you should use only new Acura replacement parts or their equivalent for repairs. Using lower quality parts may increase the emissions from your vehicle.

The emissions control systems are covered by warranties separate from the rest of your vehicle. Read your warranty manual for more information.

## Three Way Catalytic Converter

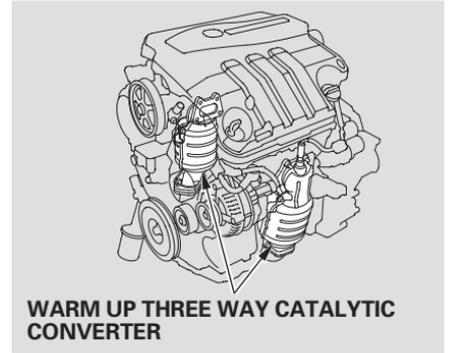
The three way catalytic converter contains precious metals that serve as catalysts, promoting chemical reactions to convert the exhaust gasses without affecting the metals. The catalytic converter is referred to as a three-way catalyst, since it acts on HC, CO, and NOx. A replacement unit must be an original Acura part or its equivalent.

The three way catalytic converter must operate at a high temperature for the chemical reactions to take place. It can set on fire any combustible materials that come near it. Park your vehicle away from high grass, dry leaves, or other flammables.



A defective three way catalytic converter contributes to air pollution, and can impair your engine's performance. Follow these guidelines to protect your vehicle's three way catalytic converter.

- Always use unleaded gasoline. Even a small amount of leaded gasoline can contaminate the catalyst metals, making the three way catalytic converter ineffective.



- Keep the engine well maintained.
- Have your vehicle diagnosed and repaired if it is misfiring, backfiring, stalling, or otherwise not running properly.

## State Emissions Testing

---

### Testing of Readiness Codes

If you take your vehicle for a state emissions test shortly after the battery has been disconnected or gone dead, it may not pass the test. This is because of certain “readiness codes” that must be set in the on-board diagnostics for the emissions systems. These codes are erased when the battery is disconnected, and set again only after several days of driving under a variety of conditions.

If the testing facility determines that the readiness codes are not set, you will be requested to return at a later date to complete the test. If you must get the vehicle retested within the next two or three days, you can condition the vehicle for retesting by doing the following.

- Make sure the gas tank is nearly, but not completely, full (around 3/4).
- Make sure the vehicle has been parked with the engine off for 6 hours or more.
- Make sure the ambient temperature is between 40° and 95° F.

- Without touching the accelerator pedal, start the engine, and let it idle for 20 seconds.
- Keep the vehicle in Park. Increase the engine speed to 2,000 rpm, and hold it there until the temperature gauge rises to at least 1/4 of the scale (about 3 minutes).

- Select a nearby lightly traveled major highway where you can maintain a speed of 50 to 60 mph for at least 20 minutes. Drive on the highway in D. Do not use the cruise control. When traffic allows, drive for 90 seconds without moving the accelerator pedal. (Vehicle speed may vary slightly; this is okay.) If you cannot do this for a continuous 90 seconds because of traffic conditions, drive for at least 30 seconds, then repeat it two more times (for a total of 90 seconds).
- Then drive in city/suburban traffic for at least 10 minutes. When traffic conditions allow, let the vehicle coast for several seconds without using the accelerator pedal or the brake pedal.
- Make sure the vehicle has been parked with the engine off for 30 minutes.

If the testing facility determines the readiness codes are still not set, see your dealer.



# Warranty and Customer Relations

---

- Customer Service Information..... 460
- Warranty Coverages ..... 461
- Reporting Safety Defects (U.S. Vehicles) ..... 462
- Authorized Manuals..... 463

## Customer Service Information

---

Acura dealership personnel are trained professionals. They should be able to answer all your questions. If you encounter a problem that your dealership does not solve to your satisfaction, please discuss it with the dealership's management. The service manager or general manager can help. Almost all problems are solved in this way.

If you are dissatisfied with the decision made by the dealership's management, contact the Acura Customer Service Office.

### U.S. Owners:

American Honda Motor Co., Inc.  
Acura Client Services  
Mail Stop 500-2N-7E  
1919 Torrance Blvd.  
Torrance, CA 90501-2746

Tel: (800) 382-2238

### Canadian Owners:

#### **CUSTOMER RELATIONS RELATIONS AVEC LA CLIENTÉLE**

Honda Canada Inc.  
715 Milner Avenue  
Toronto, ON  
M1B 2K8

Tel: 1-888-9-ACURA-9  
Fax: Toll-free 1-877-939-0909  
Toronto (416) 287-4776

### In Puerto Rico and the U.S. Virgin Islands:

Vortex Motor Corp.  
Bella International  
P.O. Box 190816  
San Juan, PR 00919-0816

Tel: (787) 620-7546

When you call or write, please give us this information:

- Vehicle Identification Number (see page [444](#))
- Name and address of the dealer who services your vehicle
- Date of purchase
- Mileage on your vehicle
- Your name, address, and telephone number
- A detailed description of the problem
- Name of the dealer who sold the vehicle to you

### U.S. Owners

Your new vehicle is covered by these warranties:

***New Vehicle Limited Warranty*** — covers your new vehicle, except for the battery, emissions control systems, and accessories, against defects in materials and workmanship.

***Emissions Control Systems Defects Warranty and Emissions Performance Warranty*** — these two warranties cover your vehicle's emissions control systems. Time, mileage, and coverage are conditional. Please read your warranty booklet for exact information.

***Original Equipment Battery Limited Warranty*** — this warranty gives up to 100 % credit toward a replacement battery.

***Seat Belt Limited Warranty*** — a seat belt that fails to function properly is covered by a limited warranty. Please read your warranty booklet for details.

***Rust Perforation Limited Warranty*** — all exterior body panels are covered for rust-through from the inside for the specified time period with no mileage limit.

***Accessory Limited Warranty*** — Acura accessories are covered under this warranty. Time and mileage limits depend on the type of accessory and other factors. Please read your warranty manual for details.

***Replacement Parts Limited Warranty*** — covers all Acura replacement parts against defects in materials and workmanship.

***Replacement Battery Limited Warranty*** — provides prorated coverage for a replacement battery purchased from your dealer.

***Replacement Muffler Lifetime Limited Warranty*** — provides coverage for as long as the purchaser of the muffler owns the vehicle.

Restrictions and exclusions apply to all these warranties. Please read the 2007 Acura warranty information booklet that came with your vehicle for precise information on warranty coverages. Your vehicle's original tires are covered by their manufacturer. Tire warranty information is in a separate booklet.

### Canadian Owners

Please refer to the 2007 warranty manual that came with your vehicle.

## Reporting Safety Defects (U.S. Vehicles)

---

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash or could cause injury or death, you should immediately inform the National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA), in addition to notifying American Honda Motor Co., Inc.

If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Acura Automobile Division, American Honda Motor Co., Inc.

To contact NHTSA, you may call the Vehicle Safety Hotline toll-free at 1-888-327-4236 (TTY: 1-800-424-9153); go to <http://www.safercar.gov>; or write to: Administrator, NHTSA, 400 Seventh Street, SW., Washington, DC 20590. You can also obtain other information about motor vehicle safety from <http://www.safercar.gov>.

## Purchasing Factory Authorized Manuals (U.S. only)

The publications shown below can be purchased from Helm Incorporated. You can order in any of three ways:

- Detach and mail the order form on the right half of this page
- Call Helm Inc. at 1-800-782-4356 (credit card orders only)
- Go online at [www.helminc.com](http://www.helminc.com)

If you are interested in other years or models, contact Helm Inc. at 1-800-782-4356.

Publication Form Number	Form Description	Price Each*
61STX00	2007 Acura MDX Service Manual	\$75.00
61STX00EL	2007 Acura MDX Electrical Troubleshooting Manual	\$50.00
61STX30	2007 Acura MDX Body Repair Manual	\$44.00
31STX601	2007 Acura MDX Owner's Manual	\$40.00
31STX800	2007 Acura MDX Navigation System Owner's Manual	\$30.00
31STXM00	2007 Acura MDX Maintenance Journal	\$12.00
31STXQ00	2007 Acura MDX Quick Start Guide	\$15.00
ACU-R	Order Form for Previous Years Indicate Year and Model Desired	FREE
* Prices are subject to change without notice and without incurring obligation.		

*Valid only for sales within the U.S. Canadian owners should contact their authorized Acura dealer.*

**ORDER TOLL FREE: 1-800-782-4356**

**(NOTE: For Credit Card Holder Orders Only)**

Monday-Friday 8:00 A.M. — 6:00 P.M. EST

**MINIMUM CREDIT CARD PURCHASE \$10.00**

**OR**

By completing this form you can order the materials desired. You can pay by check or money order, or charge to your credit card. Mail to Helm Incorporated at the address shown on the back of the order form.

2007 ACU	PUBLICATION NUMBER	VEHICLE MODEL		Qty	Price Each*	Total Price
		Name	Year			
* Prices are subject to change without notice and without incurring obligation.					TOTAL MATERIAL	
					Mich. Purchases Add 6% Sales Tax	
Orders are mailed within 10 days. Please allow adequate time for delivery.					HANDLING CHARGE	\$6.95
					GRAND TOTAL	



## A

Accessories and Modifications ....	322
ACCESSORY (Ignition Key Position) .....	129
Accessory Power Sockets.....	164
AC Power Outlet.....	165
Active Damper System .....	353
Acura Link .....	303
Additives, Engine Oil.....	388
Airbag (SRS) .....	9, 24
Air Conditioning System.....	168
Rear A/C Control .....	173
Air Outlets (Vents) .....	175
Air Pressure, Tires .....	410
Antifreeze .....	390
Anti-lock Brakes (ABS) Indicator Light .....	66, 349
Operation .....	349
Anti-theft, Audio System.....	231
Anti-theft Steering Column Lock.....	129
Audio System .....	178, 179, 198
Auto Control Mode, Starting Engine .....	331
Automatic Climate Control.....	168

Automatic Lighting.....	119
Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners .....	22
Automatic Speed Control.....	266
Automatic Transmission.....	333
Capacity, Fluid .....	446
Checking Fluid Level .....	393
Shifting .....	333
Shift Lever Position Indicators.....	333
Shift Lever Positions .....	334
Shift Lock Release.....	338

## B

Battery Charging System Indicator.....	65, 430
Jump Starting .....	426
Maintenance.....	415
Specifications .....	447
Before Driving .....	315
Belts, Seat .....	8, 20
Beverage Holders.....	161
Booster Seats .....	55
Brakes Anti-lock System (ABS) .....	349

Break-in, New Linings .....	316
Fluid .....	395
Bulb Replacement .....	400
Parking.....	151
System Indicator.....	65, 432
Wear Indicators .....	348
Braking System.....	348
Break-in, New Vehicle .....	316
Brightness Control, Instruments .....	123
Brights, Headlights .....	118
Bulb Replacement Back-up Lights.....	401
Brake Lights.....	400
Front Parking Lights.....	398
Front Side Marker Lights.....	398
Headlights .....	397
Rear Bulbs.....	400
Specifications .....	447
Turn Signal Lights.....	398
Bulbs, Halogen.....	397

CONTINUED

# Index

---

## C

Cancel Button.....	268
Capacities Chart.....	446
Carbon Monoxide Hazard .....	58
Cargo Area Light.....	158
Cargo Hook .....	327
Cargo, How to Carry .....	324
CAUTION, Explanation of .....	iii
Certification Label.....	444
Chains, Tires .....	414
Changing a Flat Tire .....	419
Changing Oil	
How to.....	388
When to.....	375
Charging System Indicator ....	65, 430
Checklist, Before Driving.....	330
Childproof Door Locks .....	131
Child Safety .....	37
Booster Seats .....	55
Child Seats.....	42, 45
Important Safety Reminders.....	40
Infants .....	42
Larger Children .....	54
LATCH.....	47
Risks with Airbags.....	38

Small Children.....	43
Tether .....	51
Where Should a Child Sit?.....	38
Child Seats.....	45
LATCH Anchorage Points .....	47
Tether Anchorage Points .....	52, 53
Cleaning Seat Belts.....	403
Climate Control System.....	168
Clock .....	232
Code, Audio System .....	231
CO in the Exhaust .....	453
Compact Spare Tire.....	418
Console Compartment .....	162
Consumer Information*.....	460
Controls, Instruments and.....	61
Coolant	
Adding.....	390
Checking.....	320
Proper Solution .....	390
Temperature Gauge.....	72
Crankcase Emissions Control	
System.....	453
Cruise Control Indicator .....	70
Cruise Control Operation .....	266
Cup Holders.....	161
Customer Service Office .....	460

Customize Settings.....	83
Door/Window Setup.....	105
Lighting Setup.....	100
Meter Setup.....	89
Position Setup.....	97
Setting to Default.....	86
Wiper Setup.....	113

## D

DANGER, Explanation of.....	iii
Dashboard .....	3, 62
Daytime Running Lights.....	120
Dead Battery .....	426
Defects, Reporting Safety.....	462
Defogger, Rear Window .....	122
Defrosting the Windows.....	172
Differential Fluid .....	446
Dimensions.....	446
Dimming the Headlights .....	118
Dipstick	
Automatic Transmission.....	393
Engine Oil.....	320
Directional Signals.....	67
Disc Brake Wear Indicators.....	348
Disc Care .....	227

Disc Changer .....	188, 216
Disc Changer Error	
Messages .....	197, 226
Disc Player .....	188, 216
Disposal of Used Oil .....	389
Doors	
Locking and Unlocking .....	130
Lockout Prevention .....	131
Monitor .....	11
Power Door Locks .....	130
DOT Tire Quality Grading .....	448
Driver and Passenger Safety .....	5
Driving .....	329
Economy .....	316
Driving Position Memory	
System .....	155
DVD Player Error Messages .....	261
DVD Player .....	236

## E

Economy, Fuel .....	316
Emergencies .....	417
Battery, Jump Starting .....	426
Brake System Indicator .....	432
Changing a Flat Tire .....	419

Charging System Indicator .....	430
Checking the Fuses .....	437
Driving with a Flat Tire .....	418
Hazard Warning Flashers .....	122
Jump Starting .....	426
Low Oil Pressure Indicator .....	430
Malfunction Indicator Lamp ....	431
Overheated Engine .....	428
Opening the Fuel Fill Door	
Manually .....	433
Towing .....	433
Emergency Brake .....	151
Emergency Flashers .....	122
Emergency Towing .....	433
Emissions Controls .....	453
Engine	
Check Starting System .....	332
Coolant Temperature Gauge ....	72
If it Won't Start .....	425
Malfunction Indicator	
Lamp .....	65, 431
Oil Life .....	375
Oil Pressure Indicator .....	65, 430
Oil, What Kind to Use .....	387
Overheating .....	428
Specifications .....	447

Speed Limiter .....	338
Starting .....	331
Evaporative Emissions Controls..	453
Exhaust Fumes .....	58
Exhaust Gas Recirculation	
System .....	454
Expectant Mothers, Use of Seat	
Belts by .....	18

## F

Fan, Interior .....	171
Features, Comfort and	
Convenience .....	167
Filling the Fuel Tank .....	317
Filters	
Oil .....	388
Flashers, Hazard Warning .....	122
Flat Tire, Changing a .....	419
Floor Mats .....	404

CONTINUED

# Index

---

Fluids	
Automatic Transmission.....	393
Brake.....	395
Power Steering.....	396
Windshield Washer.....	392
FM Stereo Radio	
Reception.....	203
Fog Lights.....	120
Folding the Second Seat.....	142
Folding the Third Seat.....	143
Four-way Flashers.....	122
Front Airbags.....	9, 27
Front Seat.....	140
Adjusting.....	140
Airbags.....	9, 27
Heaters.....	146
Fuel.....	316
Fill Door and Cap.....	317
Gauge.....	72
Octane Requirement.....	316
Opening the Fuel Fill Door	
Manually.....	433
Oxygenated.....	316
Reserve Indicator.....	71
Tank, Filling the.....	317
Tighten Fuel Cap.....	318

Fuses, Checking the.....	437
--------------------------	-----

## G

Gas Mileage, Improving.....	321
Gasoline.....	316
Gauge.....	72
Low Fuel Indicator.....	71
Octane Requirement.....	316
Tank, Refueling.....	317
Gas Station Procedures.....	317
Gauges	
Engine Coolant Temperature....	72
Fuel.....	72
Speedometer.....	72
Tachometer.....	72
GAWR (Gross Axle Weight	
Rating).....	356
GCWR (Gross Combined Weight	
Rating).....	356
Gearshift Lever Positions.....	334
Glove Box.....	162
GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight	
Rating).....	356

## H

Halogen Headlight Bulbs.....	397
HandsFreeLink™.....	276
HFL Buttons.....	277
Hazard Warning Flashers.....	122
Headlights.....	118
Aiming.....	397
Automatic Lighting.....	118
Daytime Running Lights.....	120
High Beam Indicator.....	70
High Beams, Turning on.....	118
Lights On Indicator.....	70
Low Beams, Turning on.....	118
Reminder Chime.....	118
Replacing Halogen Bulbs.....	397
Turning on.....	118
Washers.....	117
Headphones.....	262
Head Restraints.....	141
Heated Mirror.....	154
Heaters, Seats.....	146
Heating and Cooling.....	168
High-Low Beam Switch.....	118
HomeLink Universal	
Transceiver.....	272

Hood, Opening the ..... 319  
 Horn..... 115

## I

Identification Number, Vehicle.... 444  
 Ignition  
   Keys..... 126  
   Switch..... 129  
   Timing Control System..... 331  
 Immobilizer System..... 128  
 Important Safety Precautions ..... 6  
 Indicators, Instrument Panel..... 63  
   Active Damper System ..... 71, 353  
   ABS (Anti-lock Brake) ..... 66  
   A/T Temp..... 68  
   Brake (Parking and Brake System) ..... 65, 432  
   Brake Lamp..... 65, 432  
   Charging System ..... 65, 430  
   Cruise Control..... 70  
   Cruise Main ..... 70  
   DRL (Daytime Running Lights)..... 70  
   Fog Lights ..... 70  
   High Beam..... 70

Key (Immobilizer System) ..... 69  
 Lights On..... 70  
 Low Fuel ..... 71  
 Low Oil Pressure ..... 65, 430  
 Low Tire Pressure..... 68  
 Malfunction Indicator Lamp .... 431  
 Security System ..... 71  
 Side Airbag Off ..... 66  
 Seat Belt..... 64  
 SH-AWD ..... 69, 340  
 SRS ..... 66  
 System Message..... 68, 80  
 Tire Pressure Monitor ..... 68  
 Turn Signal and Hazard Warning ..... 67  
 VSA Activation ..... 67  
 VSA System..... 67  
 Individual Map Lights ..... 158  
 Infant Restraint ..... 42  
 Infant Seats..... 42  
 Inflation, Proper Tire ..... 409  
 Inside Mirror ..... 152  
 Inspection, Tire ..... 411  
 Instrument Panel ..... 4, 63  
 Instrument Panel Brightness ..... 123  
 Interface Dial ..... 198, 303

Interior Lights..... 157  
 Introduction..... i

## J

Jacking up the Vehicle ..... 422  
 Jack, Tire ..... 419  
 Jump Starting ..... 426

## K

Keys..... 126  
 Keyless Memory Settings ..... 139

## L

Label, Certification ..... 444  
 Lane Change, Signaling ..... 118  
 Lap/Shoulder Belts ..... 15, 21  
 Light Control Switch ..... 157

CONTINUED

# Index

---

- Lights  
  Bulb Replacement ..... 397  
  Indicator ..... 63  
  Interior ..... 157  
  Parking ..... 118  
Load Limit ..... 325, 356  
LOCK (Ignition Key Position) ..... 129  
Locks  
  Anti-theft Steering Column ..... 129  
  Fuel Fill Door ..... 317  
  Glove Box ..... 162  
  Lockout Prevention ..... 131  
  Power Door ..... 130  
  Tailgate ..... 131, 132  
Low Coolant Level ..... 320  
Low Fuel Indicator ..... 71  
Low Oil Pressure Indicator .... 65, 430  
Lubricant Specifications Chart .... 446  
Luggage, Storing (cargo) ..... 324
- M**
- Maintenance ..... 373  
  Owner's Maintenance  
    Checks ..... 381  
  Minder ..... 375
- Record ..... 383, 384  
  Safety ..... 374  
  Schedule ..... 382  
Malfunction Indicator Lamp ..... 431  
Memory, Driving Position ..... 155  
Message Display ..... 80  
Message Indicator ..... 68  
Meters, Gauges ..... 72  
Mirrors, Adjusting ..... 153  
Modifications ..... 323  
Modifying Your Vehicle ..... 323  
Moonroof ..... 150  
Multi-Information Display ..... 73
- N**
- Neutral Gear Position ..... 334  
New Vehicle Break-in ..... 316  
NOTICE, Explanation of ..... i  
Numbers, Identification ..... 444
- O**
- Octane Requirement, Gasoline .... 316  
Odometer ..... 75  
Odometer, Trip ..... 75
- Off-Highway Driving ..... 369  
Off-Road Precautions ..... 369
- Oil  
  Change, How to ..... 388  
  Change, When to ..... 375  
  Checking Engine ..... 320  
  Life, Engine ..... 375  
  Pressure Indicator ..... 65, 430  
  Selecting Proper Viscosity  
    Chart ..... 387  
ON (Ignition Key Position) ..... 129  
Outside Mirrors ..... 153  
Outside Temperature ..... 76  
Overheating, Engine ..... 428  
Owner's Maintenance Checks ..... 381  
Oxygenated Fuels ..... 316
- P**
- Panel Brightness Control ..... 123  
Park Gear Position ..... 334  
Parking ..... 342  
Parking Brake ..... 151  
Parking Brake and Brake  
  System Indicator ..... 65, 432  
Parking Lights ..... 118

Parking Over Things that Burn...	342
Passenger Airbag Off Indicator	34
PGM-FI System	454
Power Seat Adjustments	140
Power Socket Locations	160
Power Windows	147
Pregnancy, Using Seat Belts	18
Protecting Adults and Teens	11
Additional Safety Precautions	19
Advice for Pregnant Women	18
Protecting Children	37
General Guidelines	37
Protecting Infants	42
Protecting Larger Children	54
Protecting Small Children	43
Using Child Seats with Tethers	51
Using LATCH	47

## R

Radiator Overheating	428
Radio/Disc Sound System	179, 199
Readiness Codes	456
Rear A/C Unit	173
Rear Audio Control Panel	237

Rear Entertainment System	233
Rear Lights, Bulb Replacement	400
Rear View Camera and Monitor	314
Rear View Mirror	152
Rear Window Defogger	172
Rear Window Wiper and Washer	117
Reclining the Seat Backs	140
Reclining the Second Seats	142
Reminder Indicators	64
Remote Audio Controls	229
Remote Control (RES)	238
Remote Transmitter	135
Replacement Information	
Engine Oil and Filter	388
Fuses	437
Light Bulbs	397
Schedule	375
Timing Belt	396
Tires	412
Wiper Blades	405
Replacing Seat Belts After a Crash	23
Reserve Tank, Engine Coolant	320
Restraint, Child	37
Reverse Gear Position	334

Rotation, Tire	412
----------------	-----

## S

Safety Belts	8, 20
Safety Defects, Reporting*	462
Safety Features	7
Airbags	9
Door Locks	11
Head Restraints	14
Seat Belts	8, 15
Seats & Seat-Backs	12, 13
Safety Labels, Location of	59
Safety Messages	iii
Satellite Radio, XM	183, 208

CONTINUED

# Index

---

- Seat Belts ..... 8, 15
  - Additional Information ..... 20
  - Automatic Seat Belt
    - Tensioners ..... 22
  - Cleaning ..... 403
  - Lap/Shoulder Belt ..... 21
  - Maintenance ..... 23
  - Reminder Light and
    - Beeper ..... 20, 64
  - System Components ..... 20
  - Use During Pregnancy ..... 18
  - Wearing a Lap/Shoulder Belt .... 15
- Seats ..... 140
  - Adjusting the Second Seat ..... 142
  - Folding the Second Seat ..... 142
  - Folding the Third Seat ..... 143
  - Head Restraints ..... 141
  - Heaters ..... 146
  - Position Memory ..... 155
  - Third Row Access ..... 143
- Security System ..... 265
- Sensors
  - Driver's Seat Position Sensor .... 29
  - Front Passenger's Weight
    - Sensors ..... 29
  - Impact Sensors ..... 25, 26
- Sequential SportShift Mode ..... 335
- Serial Number ..... 444
- Service Intervals ..... 375
- Service Manual\* ..... 463
- Service Station Procedures ..... 317
- SH-AWD ..... 340
  - Indicator ..... 69
  - Torque Distribution Monitor ... 340
- Shifting the Automatic
  - Transmission ..... 333
- Shift Lever Position Indicator ..... 333
- Shift Lock Release ..... 338
- Side Airbags ..... 30
  - Off Indicator ..... 34
- Side Curtain Airbags ..... 32
- Side Marker Lights, Bulb
  - Replacement in ..... 398
- Signaling Turns ..... 67
- Snow Tires ..... 414
- Sound System ..... 179, 199
- Spare Tire
  - Inflating ..... 410, 418
  - Specifications ..... 447
- Specifications Charts ..... 446
- Speed Limiter ..... 338
- Speed Control ..... 266
- Speedometer ..... 72
- SRS, Additional Information ..... 26
  - Additional Safety Precautions .... 35
  - Airbag System Components ..... 24
  - Airbag Service ..... 35
  - How the SRS Indicator Works ... 33
  - How Your Front Airbags
    - Work ..... 27
  - How Your Side Airbags Work ... 30
  - How Your Side Curtain Airbags
    - Work ..... 32
- SRS Indicator ..... 33, 66
- START (Ignition Key Position) ... 129
- Starting the Engine ..... 331
  - Auto Control Mode ..... 331
  - In Cold Weather at High
    - Altitude ..... 332
    - With a Dead Battery ..... 425
- State Emissions Testing ..... 453
- Steam Coming from Engine ..... 428
- Steering Wheel
  - Adjustment ..... 124
  - Anti-theft Column Lock ..... 129
  - Buttons ..... 229, 266, 277
  - Position Memory ..... 155
- Stereo Sound System .... 178, 179, 198

- Storage Compartment..... 162  
 Storing Your Vehicle..... 416  
 Sun Visor..... 164  
 Supplemental Restraint System  
   Servicing..... 35  
   SRS Indicator..... 33, 66  
   System Components..... 24  
 Synthetic Oil..... 388
- T**
- Tachometer..... 72  
 Tailgate..... 131  
   Opening the..... 131  
   Open Monitor..... 11  
   Power..... 132  
 Taillights, Changing Bulbs in..... 400  
 Taking Care of the Unexpected .. 417  
 Technical Descriptions  
   DOT Tire Quality Grading..... 448  
   Emissions Control Systems..... 453  
   Three Way Catalytic  
     Converter..... 455  
 Temperature Gauge..... 72  
 Temperature, Inside Sensor..... 177  
 Temperature, Outside..... 76
- Tensioners, Seat Belts..... 22  
 Tether Anchorage Points..... 51  
 Theft Protection, Radio..... 231  
 Three Way Catalytic Converter... 455  
 Tilt/Telescopic Steering Wheel .. 124  
 Timing Belt..... 396  
 Tire Chains..... 414  
 Tire, How to Change a Flat..... 419  
 Tire Labeling..... 450  
 Tire Pressure Monitoring  
   System (TPMS)..... 343, 451  
   Low Tire Pressure  
     Indicator..... 68, 343  
   Tire Pressure Monitor..... 77, 343  
 Tires..... 409  
   Air Pressure..... 409  
   Checking Wear..... 411  
   Compact Spare..... 418  
   DOT Tire Quality Grading..... 448  
   Inflation..... 409  
   Inspection..... 411  
   Maintenance..... 411  
   Replacing..... 412  
   Rotating..... 412  
   Snow..... 414  
   Specifications..... 447
- Tire Chains..... 414  
 Tools, Tire Changing..... 419  
 Torque Distribution Monitor  
   (SH-AWD)..... 340  
 Towing  
   A Trailer..... 355  
   Emergency Wrecker..... 433  
   Equipment and Accessories..... 361  
   Weight Limit..... 356  
   Trailer Loading..... 356  
   Trailer Stability Assist..... 368  
   Trailer Towing Tips..... 364  
 Trailer Stability Assist..... 368  
 Transmission  
   Checking Fluid Level..... 393  
   Fluid Selection..... 394  
   Identification Number..... 444  
   Shifting the Automatic..... 333  
 Treadwear..... 411  
 Trip Computer..... 78  
 Trip Meter..... 75  
 Turn Signals..... 67  
 Tools, Tire Changing..... 419

CONTINUED

# Index

---

## U

- Unexpected, Taking Care of the ..... 417
- Uniform Tire Quality Grading ..... 448
- Unleaded Gasoline..... 316
- Used Oil, How to Dispose of ..... 389

## V

- Vanity Mirror ..... 164
- Vehicle Capacity Load ..... 325
- Vehicle Dimensions..... 446
- Vehicle Identification Number..... 444
- Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA)
  - System..... 351
  - VSA System Indicator ... 67, 81, 351
  - VSA Activation
    - Indicator ..... 67, 81, 351
  - VSA Off Switch ..... 352
- Vehicle Storage..... 416
- Ventilation ..... 175
- VIN ..... 444
- Viscosity, Oil..... 387

## W

- WARNING, Explanation of ..... iii
- Warning Labels, Location of ..... 59
- Warranty Coverages\* ..... 461
- Washer, Windshield
  - Checking the Fluid Level ..... 392
  - Level Indicator ..... 71
  - Operation ..... 116
- Wheels
  - Adjusting the Steering ..... 124
  - Alignment and Balance ..... 412
  - Aluminum Alloy Wheels ..... 408
  - Cleaning ..... 408
  - Compact Spare ..... 418
  - Wrench, Nut..... 421
- Windows
  - Auto Reverse ..... 148
  - Operating the Power ..... 147
  - Rear, Defogger ..... 122
- Windshield
  - Cleaning ..... 116
  - Defroster ..... 172
  - Washers..... 116
- Wipers, Windshield
  - Changing Blades..... 405

- Operation ..... 116
- Rear Windshield Wiper and Washer ..... 117
- Worn Tires ..... 411
- Wrecker, Emergency Towing..... 433

## X

- XM Satellite Radio ..... 183, 208

\* : U.S. only

## Service Information Summary

---

### **Gasoline:**

Premium unleaded gasoline, pump octane number of 91 or higher.

### **Fuel Tank Capacity:**

21.00 US gal (79.5 ℓ)

### **Recommended Engine Oil:**

API Premium grade 5W-20 detergent oil (see page [387](#)).

Oil change capacity (including filter):

4.5 US qt (4.3 ℓ)

### **Automatic Transmission Fluid:**

Honda ATF-Z1 (Automatic Transmission Fluid) preferred, or a DEXRON® III ATF as a temporary replacement (see page [394](#)).

### **Rear Differential Fluid:**

Honda ATF-Z1 (Automatic Transmission Fluid) preferred, or a DEXRON® III ATF as a temporary replacement.

Capacity:

SH-AWD differential case

2.6 US qt (2.5 ℓ)

### **Transfer Assembly Fluid:**

SAE 90 or SAE 80W-90 viscosity hypoid gear oil, API service classified GL4 or GL5 only.

### **Power Steering Fluid:**

Honda Power Steering Fluid preferred, or another brand of power steering fluid as a temporary replacement. Do not use ATF (see page [396](#)).

### **Brake Fluid:**

Honda Heavy Duty Brake Fluid DOT 3 preferred, or a DOT 3 or DOT 4 brake fluid as a temporary replacement (see page [395](#)).

### **Tire Pressure (measured cold):**

Front/Rear:

32 psi (220 kPa , 2.2 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>)

Compact Spare Tire:

60 psi (420 kPa , 4.2 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>)